As you read this manual, you will find Information that is preceded by a symbol NOTICE. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Symbols ⚠ 📖 on labels attached to your vehicle are to remind you to read this owner's manual for proper and safe operation of your vehicle.

⚠ is colour-coded to indicate "danger" (red), "warning" (orange), or "caution" (amber).

➔ **Safety Labels** P. 111

A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol ⚠ and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

⚠DANGER	You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠WARNING	You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.
⚠CAUTION	You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

Event Data Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with several devices commonly referred to as Event Data Recorders. They record various types of real time vehicle data such as SRS airbag deployment and SRS system components failure.

This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

Service Diagnostic Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance and driving conditions. The data can be used to help technicians diagnose, repair and maintain the vehicle. This data may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

Owner’s Manual Application Terms and Conditions*

General

This application allows your Display Audio to automatically search for owner’s manual updates that are specific to your vehicle and Display Audio every time the power mode of the vehicle is set to ON. This application periodically transmits a limited amount of vehicle and device information to our servers: Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Display Audio hardware serial number, preferred language, Internet Protocol (IP) address, transaction log (alerts for or views of updates, update downloads and installation, usage of the owner’s manual application), etc. When the application finds an update from the server, it prompts you to download and install.

When your Display Audio searches our servers for updates, we will automatically provide you with the opportunity to update the owner’s manual. We will also maintain a log of the updates that are installed on our servers.

Your Personal Data

Should the aforementioned information transmitted to Honda constitute personal information in your region, please note that this information will be treated in strict accordance with the rules and regulations outlined in this notice as well as applicable data protection law.

The terms of our privacy policy are incorporated into these terms by reference and your use of system updates will be subject to the privacy policy. Our privacy policy sets out information about how we and any named third parties will process any personal data we collect from you or that you provide to us, via the utility. (See the Honda website (*https://www.privacynotice.honda.eu*) for further details.)

Honda collects, uses, and stores your personal data for the reasons set out below:

Where necessary for Honda’s legitimate interests, as listed below, and where our interests are not overridden by your data protection rights.

to deliver owner’s manual updates to you;

to allow us to improve and optimize the owner’s manual application and services;

to respond to user questions and complaints; and for internal record keeping.

Protecting our legitimate business interests and legal rights. This includes, but is not limited to, use in connection with compliance, regulatory, auditing, legal claims (including disclosure of such information in connection with legal process or litigation) and other ethics and compliance reporting requirements

Honda will also convert personal data into anonymous data and use it (normally on an aggregated statistical basis) for uses such as market research and analysis, to improve the owner’s manual, to analyze trends, and to assess the success of software update releases. Aggregated personal information does not personally identify you or any other user of the owner’s manual.

Honda may share this data with Honda's world wide support organization or affiliated Honda companies or other third parties engaged by Honda for the purposes of rendering support services in connection with system support.

* Not available on all models

System Updates Terms and Conditions*

General

Your vehicle has an application that allows your Display Audio to automatically search for Honda software updates that are specific to your Display Audio and its connected devices (initially every one (1) week via Wi-Fi or every four (4) weeks via Telematics Control Unit (TCU)*, queries may occur more or less frequently due to internet outages, retries, direct user action, WAP push from the server or a change in query policy on the Honda servers). This application periodically transmits to our servers a limited amount of vehicle and device information (Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), the Model Type (MT) Identification Number, Hardware and Software Part Number, Serial Number, Software Version, preferred language, Internet Protocol (IP) address, Transaction Log (alert or update viewing, update download and installation, software status), etc.). When the application finds an update from the server, the application initially asks permission to download and install the update. Where available, in your settings menu you may elect to automatically download and install these updates or you may elect to manually update the system.

When your Display Audio searches our servers for updates or alerts, we will automatically provide you with the opportunity to update your devices or transmit the update or alert directly to your Display Audio. We will also maintain on our servers a log of the updates or alerts that are installed.

Your Personal Data

Should the aforementioned information transmitted to Honda constitute personal information in your region, please note that this information will be treated in strict accordance with the rules and regulations outlined in this notice as well as applicable data protection law.

The terms of our privacy policy are incorporated into these terms by reference and your use of system updates will be subject to the privacy policy. Our privacy policy sets out information about how we and any named third parties will process any personal data we collect from you or that you provide to us, via the application. See the Honda website for further details.

Honda collects, uses and stores your personal data for the reasons set out below:

- to deliver the system updates and related services to you;
- to allow us to improve and optimize the system updates products and services;
- to respond to user questions and complaints; and for internal record keeping.
- where necessary for Honda's legitimate interests, as listed below, and where our interests are not overridden by your data protection rights.

Protecting our legitimate business interests and legal rights includes, but is not limited to, use in connection with compliance, regulatory, auditing, legal claims (including disclosure of such information in connection with legal process or litigation) and other ethics and compliance reporting requirements.

Honda will also convert personal data into anonymous data and use it (normally on an aggregated statistical basis) for uses such as market research and analysis, to improve the system updates, to analyze trends, and to assess the success of software update releases. Aggregated personal information does not personally identify you or any other user of the system updates.

Honda may share this data with Honda's worldwide support organization or affiliated Honda companies or other third parties engaged by Honda for the purposes of rendering support services in connection with system support.

* Not available on all models

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

Images throughout this owner's manual represent features and equipment that are available on some, but not all, models. Your particular model may not have some of these features.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Although this manual is applicable to both right-hand and left-hand drive models, the illustrations contained in this manual mainly refer to the right-hand drive models.

Safe Driving P. 37

For Safe Driving P. 38 Seat Belts P. 43 Airbags P. 54

Instrument Panel P. 113

Indicators P. 114 Gauges and Driver Information Interface P. 135

Controls P. 181

Clock P. 182 Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 183
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 205
Climate Control System P. 250

Features P. 259

Audio System P. 260 Display Audio P. 261
Refuel Recommend* P. 389

Driving P. 391

Before Driving P. 392 Towing a Trailer P. 396 When Driving P. 397
Multi-View Rear Camera P. 581 Refueling P. 583

Maintenance P. 589

Before Performing Maintenance P. 590 Oil Monitor System P. 593
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 633
Climate Control System Maintenance P. 648

Handling the Unexpected P. 661

Tools P. 662 If a Tyre Goes Flat P. 664
Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 698 Overheating P. 699
If You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door P. 716

Information P. 719

Specifications P. 720 Identification Numbers P. 724

Contents

Pop-up Hood System* P. 70 Child Safety P. 73 Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 110 Safety Labels P. 111

Hatch P. 199 Security System P. 201 Windows P. 203
Mirrors P. 224 Seats P. 226 Interior Convenience Items P. 236

Audio Error Messages P. 352 General Information on the Audio System P. 353

Honda Sensing P. 456 Braking P. 555 Parking Your Vehicle P. 570
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions P. 586 Turbo Engine Vehicle P. 587

Maintenance Schedule P. 602 Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 606 Replacing Light Bulbs P. 625
Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 636 Battery P. 642 Remote Transmitter Care P. 645
Cleaning P. 651 Accessories and Modifications P. 658

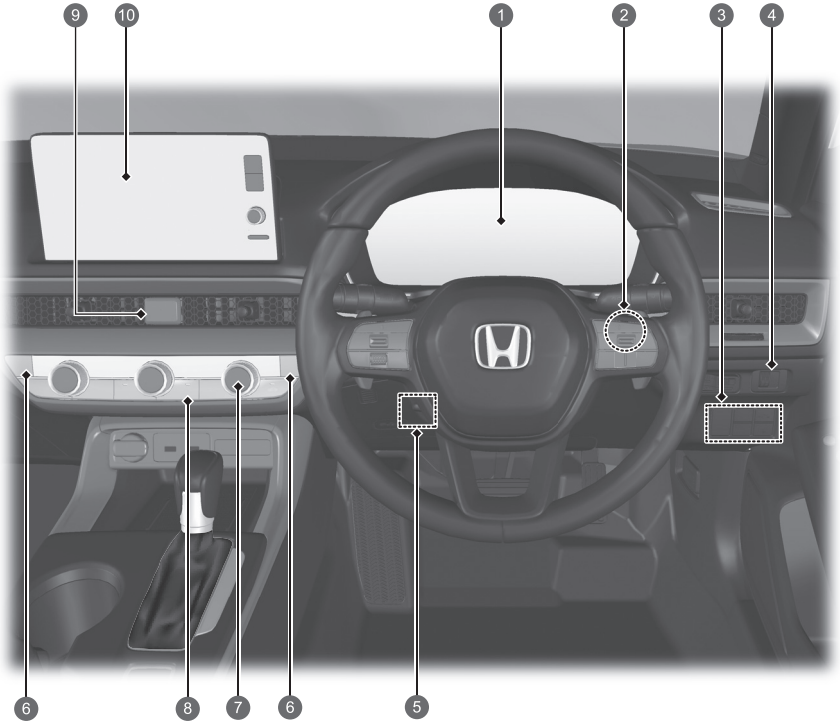
Handling of the Jack P. 688 Engine Does Not Start P. 689 If the Battery Is Dead P. 695
Indicator, Coming On/Blinking P. 703 Fuses P. 708 Emergency Towing P. 715
If You Cannot Open the Hatch P. 717

Devices that Emit Radio Waves* P. 726 Open Source Licence P. 730

Quick Reference Guide P. 6
Safe Driving P. 37
Instrument Panel P. 113
Controls P. 181
Features P. 259
Driving P. 391
Maintenance P. 589
Handling the Unexpected P. 661
Information P. 719
Index P. 731

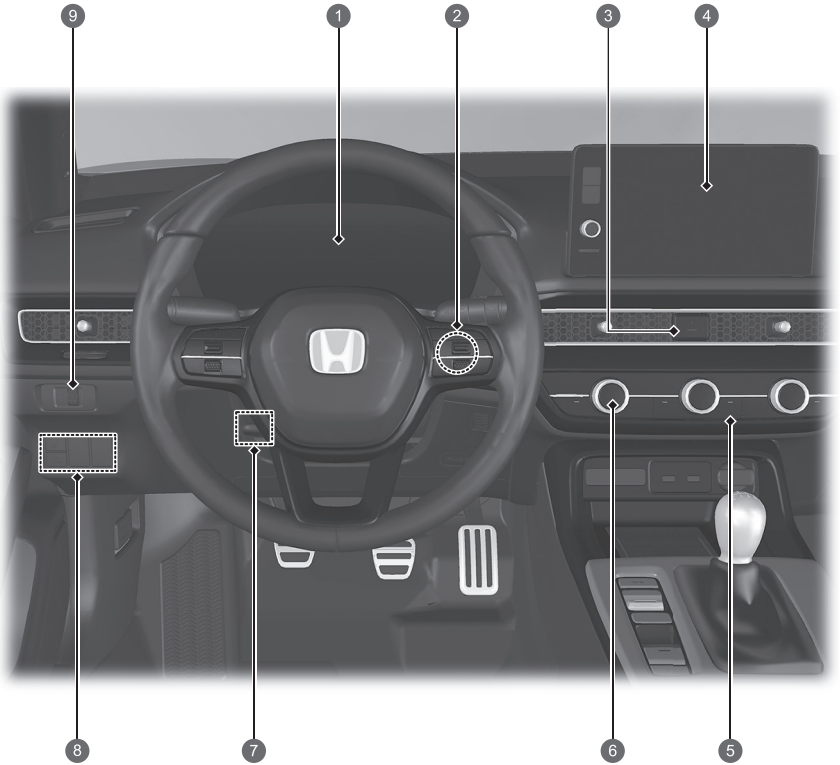
Visual Index

Right-hand Drive Type



1. **System Indicators** P. 114
   Gauges P. 135
   Driver Information Interface P. 140, 155, 160
2. **ENGINE START/STOP Button** P. 205
3. **(Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System OFF) Button** P. 445
   Safety Support Switch P. 452, 464, 537
   Parking Sensor System Button* P. 573
4. **Brightness Control** P. 220, 221
5. **Steering Wheel Adjustments** P. 223
6. **Seat Heater Buttons*** P. 249
7. **Climate Control System** P. 250
8. **Rear Demister** P. 222
   Heated Door Mirror Button* P. 222
9. **Hazard Warning Button**
10. **Audio System** P. 260
    Navigation System*
    See the Navigation System Manual

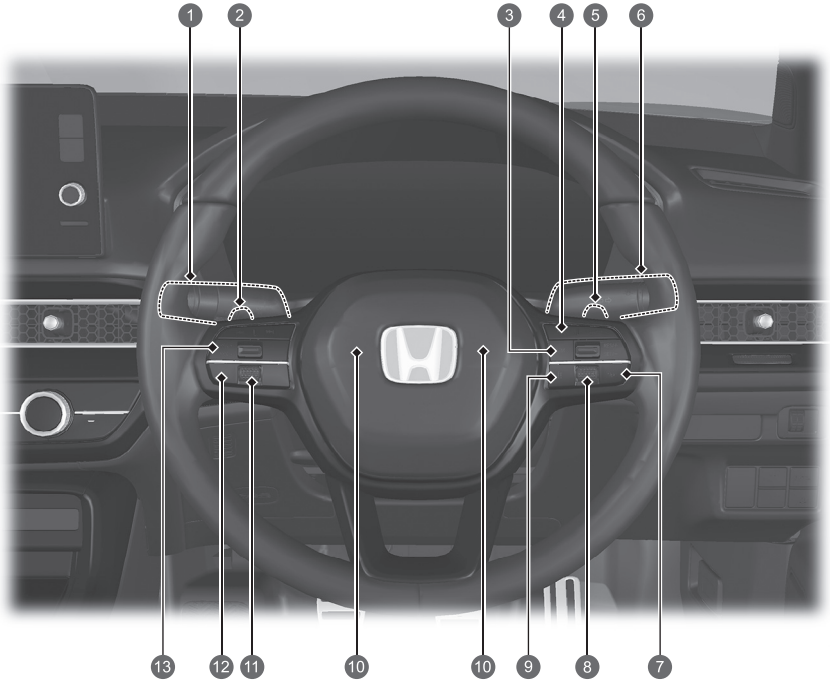
Left-hand Drive Type



1. **System Indicators** P. 114
   Gauges P. 135
   Driver Information Interface P. 155, 160
2. **ENGINE START/STOP Button** P. 205
3. **Hazard Warning Button**
4. **Audio System** P. 260
   Navigation System*
   See the Navigation System Manual
5. **Rear Demister** P. 222
6. **Climate Control System** P. 250
7. **Steering Wheel Adjustments** P. 223
8. **(Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System OFF) Button** P. 445
   Safety Support Switch P. 452, 464, 537
9. **Brightness Control** P. 221

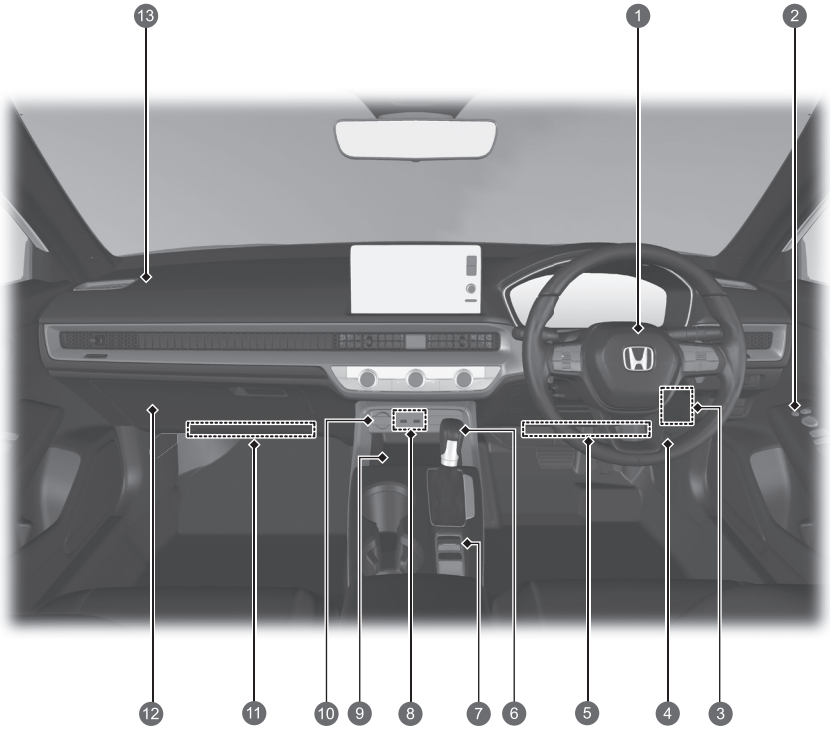
* Not available on all models

Visual Index



1. Wipers/Washers* P. 217
   Headlights/Turn Signals* P. 208,210
2. Paddle Shifter (Shift Down)* P. 409
3. LIM Button* P. 431, 437, 491
4. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Buttons* P. 473
   Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Buttons* P. 490
5. Paddle Shifter (Shift Up)* P. 409
6. Headlights/Turn Signals* P. 208, 210
   Front Fog Lights* P. 212
   Rear Fog Light* P. 212
   Wipers/Washers* P. 217
7. Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Button P. 511
8. Right Selector Wheel* P. 161
9. Interval Button P. 485
10. Horn (Press an area around .)
11. Left Selector Wheel P. 140
12. (Home) Button* P. 140
13. Audio Remote Controls P. 265
    Hands-Free Telephone System Buttons P. 332

Right-hand Drive Type

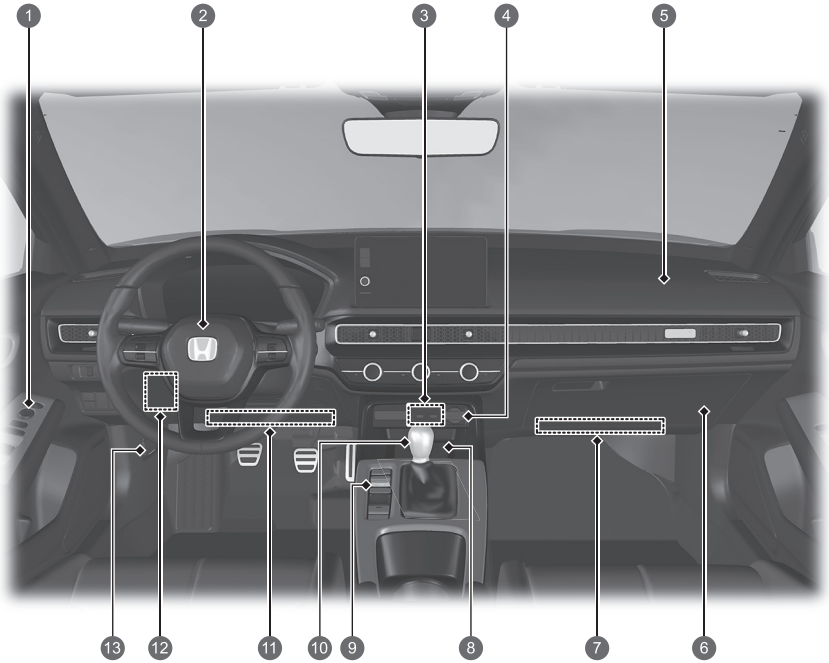


1. **Driver's Front Airbag** P. 56
2. **Door Mirror Controls** P. 225
   Master Door Lock Switch P. 196
   Power Window Switches P. 203
3. **Interior Fuse Box** P. 710
4. **Bonnet Release Handle** P. 608
5. **Driver's Knee Airbag** P. 59
6. **Shift Lever**
   Continuously Variable Transmission P. 405
   Manual Transmission P. 410
7. **Drive Mode Switch** P. 421, 424
   Auto Idle Stop OFF Button* P. 416
   +R Button* P. 425
   Electric Parking Brake Switch P. 555
   Automatic Brake Hold Button P. 561, 563
8. **USB Ports** P. 264
9. **Wireless Charger** P. 246
10. **Accessory Power Socket** P. 245
11. **Passenger's Knee Airbag** P. 59
12. **Glove Box** P. 237
13. **Passenger's Front Airbag** P. 56

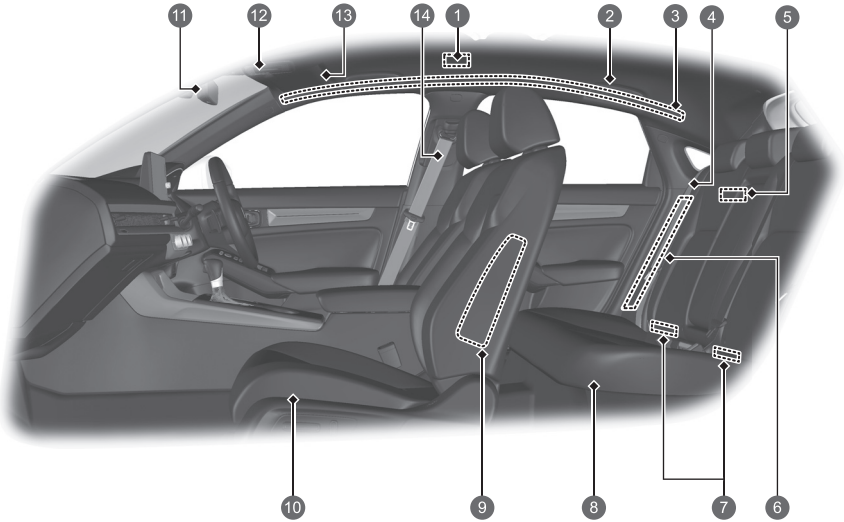
* Not available on all models

Visual Index

Left-hand Drive Type



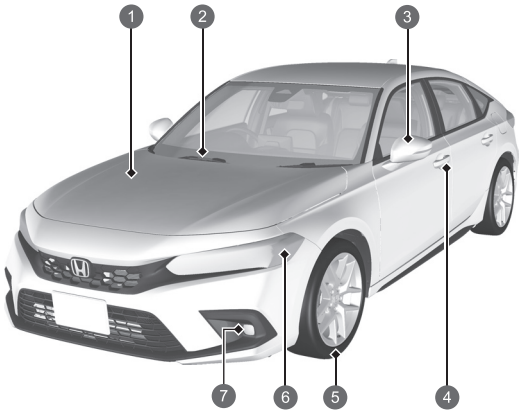
1. Door Mirror Controls P. 225
   Master Door Lock Switch P. 196
   Power Window Switches P. 203
2. Driver's Front Airbag P. 56
3. USB Ports P. 264
4. Accessory Power Socket P. 245
5. Passenger’s Front Airbag P. 56
6. Glove Box P. 237
7. Passenger's Knee Airbag P. 59
8. Wireless Charger P. 246
9. Drive Mode Switch P. 424
   +R Button P. 425
   Electric Parking Brake Switch P. 555
   Automatic Brake Hold Button P. 563
10. Shift Lever P. 410
11. Driver's Knee Airbag P. 59
12. Interior Fuse Box P. 710
13. Bonnet Release Handle P. 608



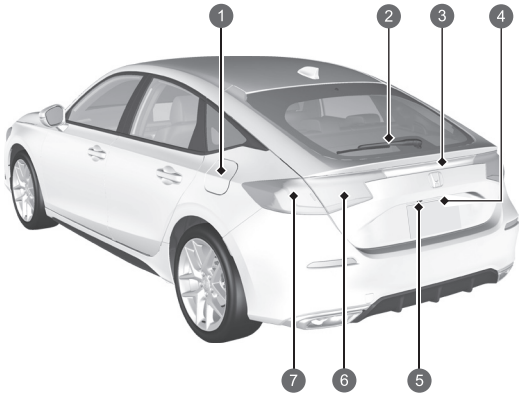
1. **Ceiling Light** P. 236
2. **Grab Handle**
   Coat Hook P. 241
3. **Side Curtain Airbags** P. 66
4. **Seat Belt (Installing a Child Restraint System)** P. 101
   Seat Belt to Secure a Child Restraint System P. 103
5. **Luggage Area Light**
6. **Rear Side Airbags*** P. 63
7. **Lower Anchorage Points to Secure a Child Restraint Systems** P. 95
8. **Rear Seat** P. 230
9. **Front Side Airbags** P. 63
10. **Front Seat** P. 226
11. **Rearview Mirror** P. 224
12. **Map Lights** P. 236
13. **Sun Visors**
    Vanity Mirrors
14. **Seat Belts** P. 43

* Not available on all models

Visual Index



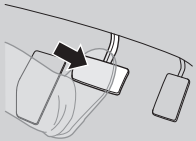
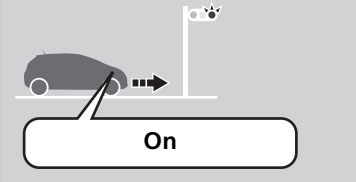
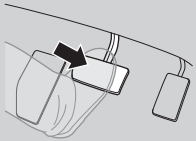
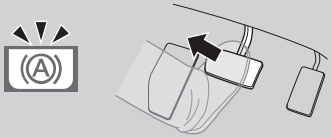
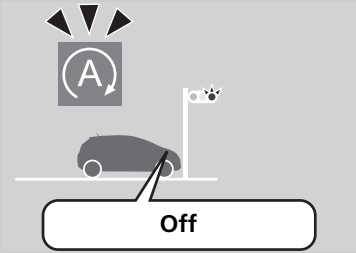
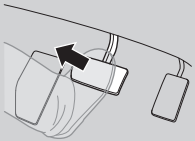
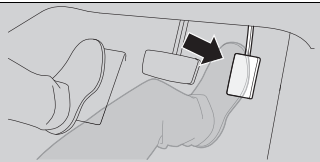
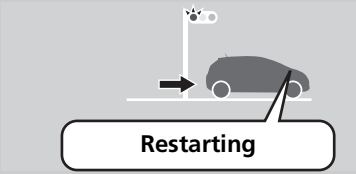
1. Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 606
2. Windscreen Wipers P. 217, 633
3. Power Door Mirrors P. 225
   Side Turn Signal Lights P. 210, 625
4. Door Lock/Unlock Control P. 187
5. Tyres P. 636, 664
6. Headlights P. 208, 625
   Position/Daytime Running Lights P. 208, 213, 625
   Front Turn Signal Lights P. 210, 625
7. Front Fog Lights* P. 212, 625



1. How to Refuel P. 584
2. Rear Wiper P. 219, 635
3. High-Mount Brake Light P. 630
4. Opening/Closing the Hatch P. 199
   Hatch Release Button P. 200
   Rear Licence Plate Light P. 630
5. Multi-View Rear Camera P. 581
6. Taillights P. 629
   Back-Up Lights P. 629
   Rear Fog Light* P. 212, 630
7. Brake/Taillights P. 626
   Rear Turn Signal Lights P. 626

Auto Idle Stop Function*

To improve fuel economy, the engine stops and then restarts as detailed below. When Auto Idle Stop is on, the Auto Idle Stop indicator (green) comes on. P. 414

At	Continuously variable transmission	Engine status
Deceleration	**Automatic Brake Hold Off** P. 561  **Automatic Brake Hold On** P. 561 Depress the brake pedal.	
Stop	 Keep the brake pedal depressed.  With the automatic brake hold system activated, you can release the brake pedal when the Ⓐ indicator (green) comes on.	
Start-up	 Release the brake pedal.  With the automatic brake hold system activated, depress the accelerator pedal.	

* Not available on all models

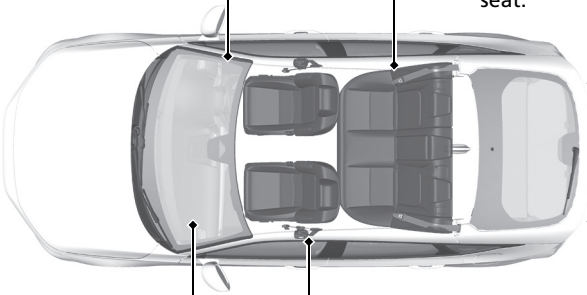
Safe Driving P. 37

Before Driving Checklist P. 392

- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints*, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.

Child Safety P. 73

- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Small children should be properly restrained in a front-facing child restraint system.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system on a rear seat.



Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 110

- Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

Seat Belts P. 43

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.

Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.

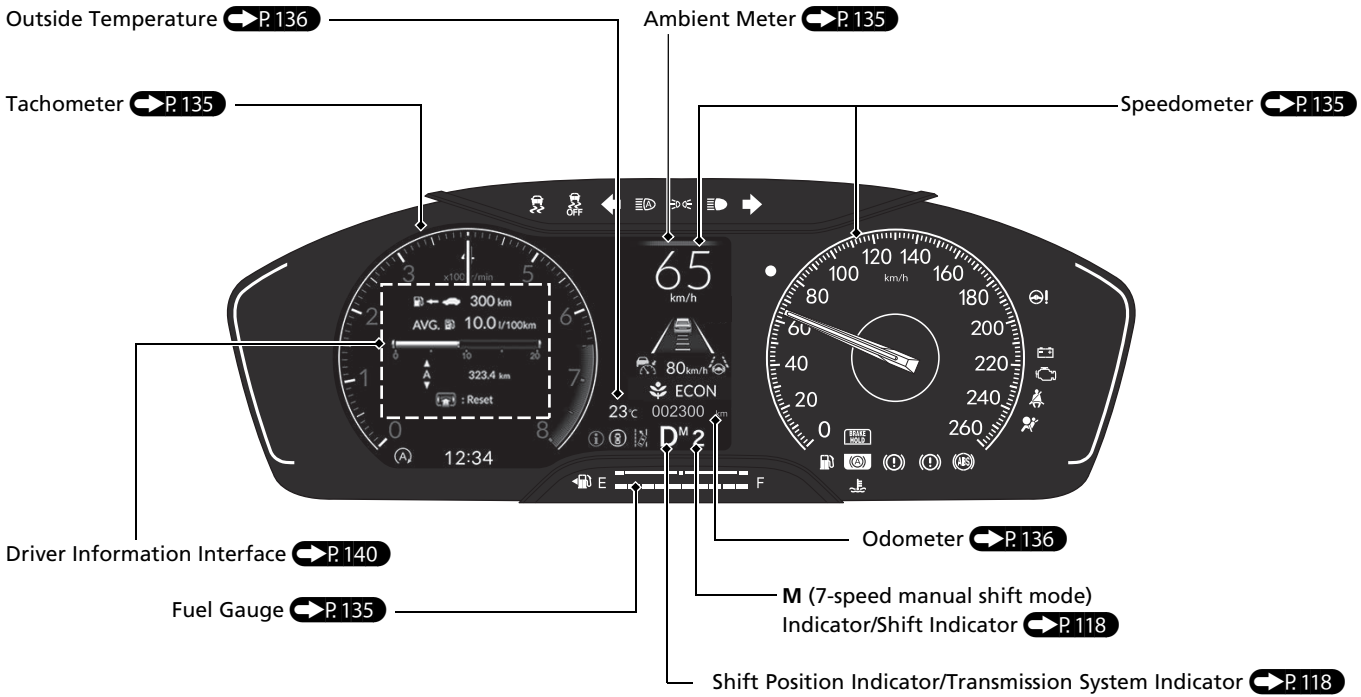
Airbags P. 54

- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help to protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.

Instrument Panel P. 113

Indicators P. 114/Gauges P. 135/Driver Information Interface P. 140, 155, 160

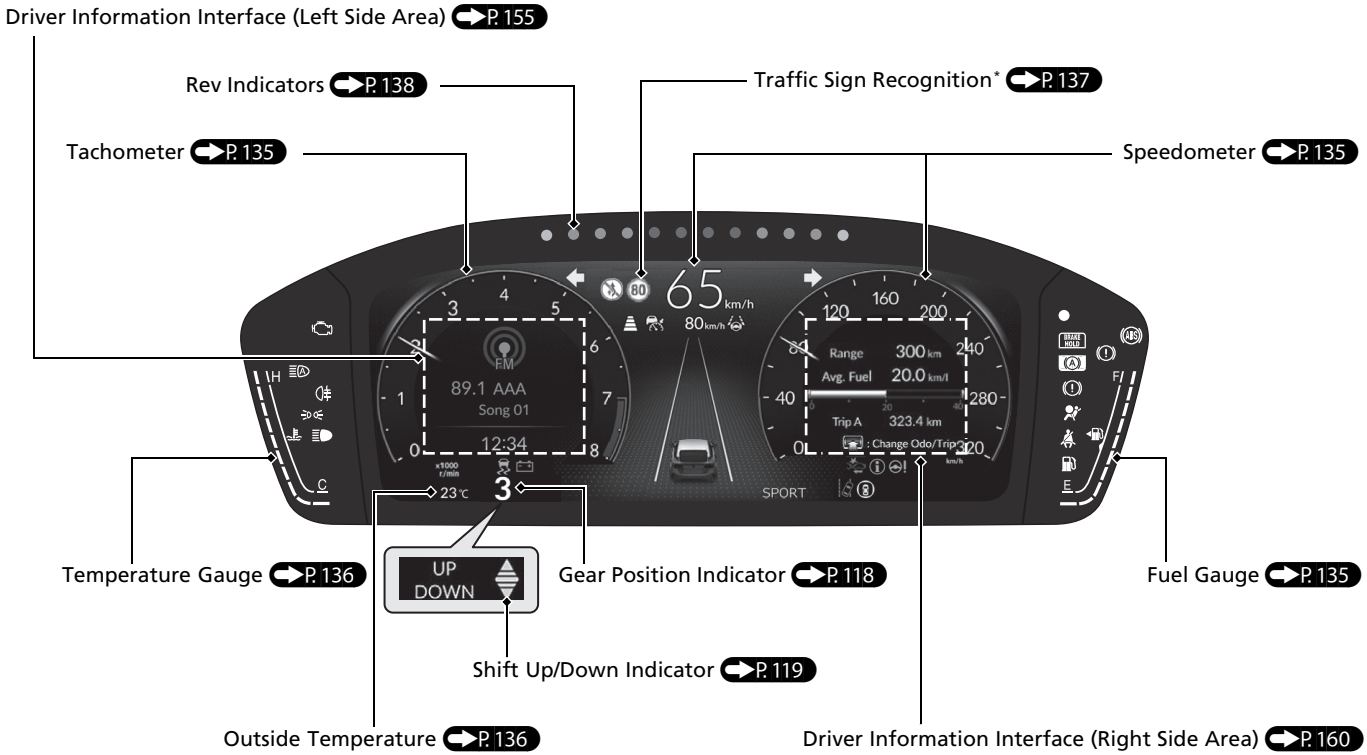
Models with A-type meter



* Not available on all models

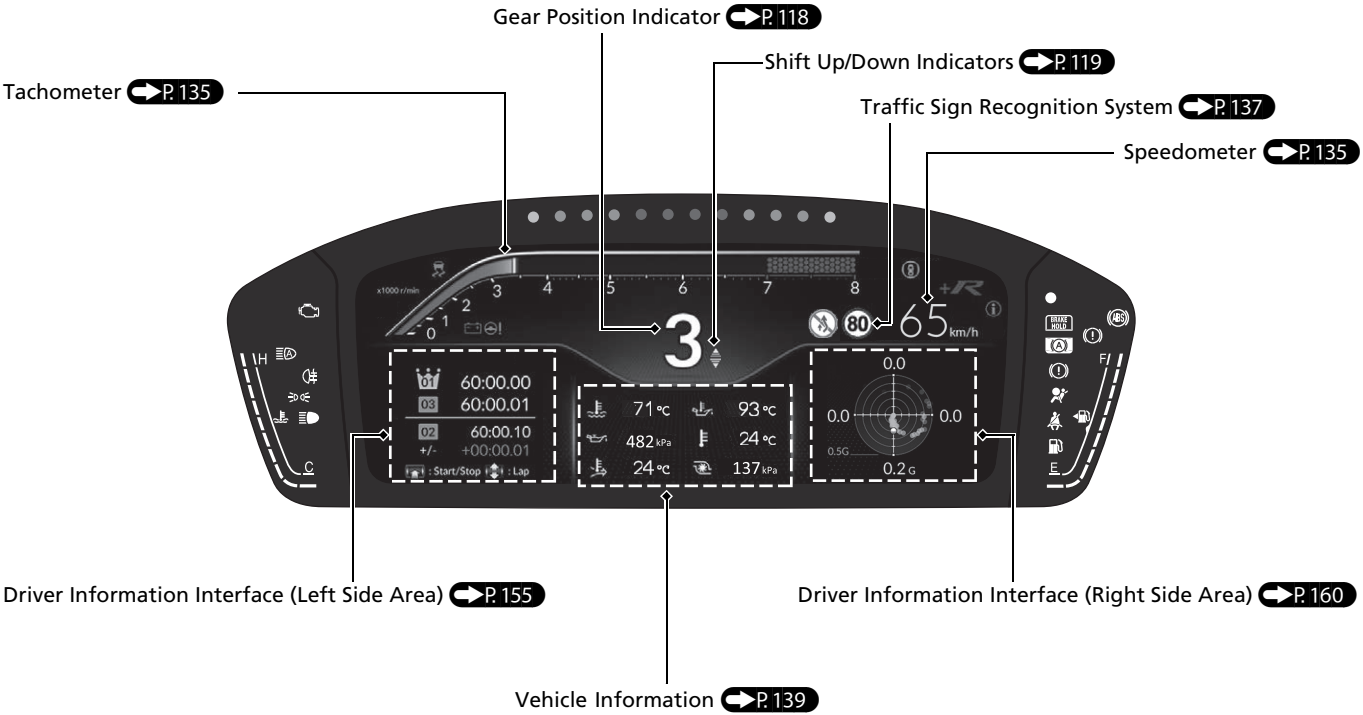
Models with B-type meter

- You can change the gauge design.
  Change gauge design P. 179



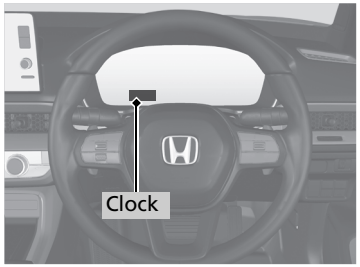
Models with B-type meter

● When using the **+R** gauge



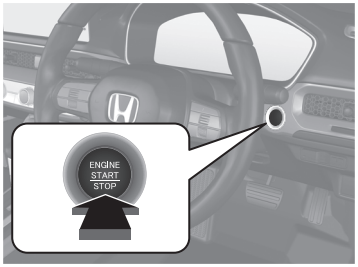
Controls P. 181

Clock P. 182



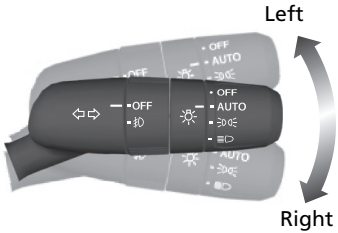
ENGINE START/STOP Button P. 205

- Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.



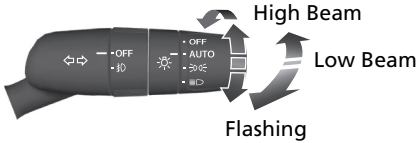
Turn Signals P. 210

Turn Signal Control Lever



Lights P. 208

Light Control Switches

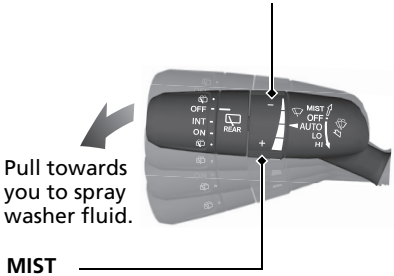


Wipers and Washers

P. 217

Wiper/Washer Control Lever

Adjustment Ring
−: Low sensitivity
+: High sensitivity



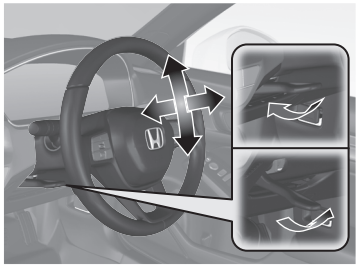
MIST
OFF
AUTO: Wiper speed varies automatically
LO: Low speed wipe
HI: High speed wipe

AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

Steering Wheel P. 223

- To adjust, push the adjustment lever down, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.



Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside

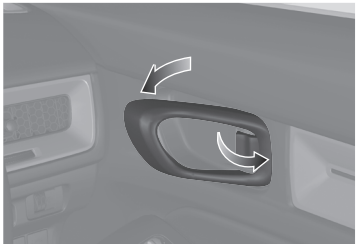
P. 195

Except Vietnamese models

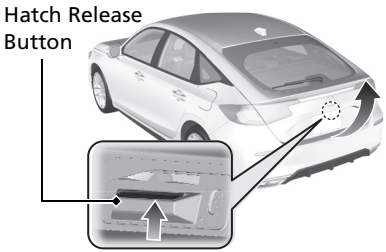
- Pull the driver's door inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.

Vietnamese models

- Pull either front door inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.



Hatch P. 199

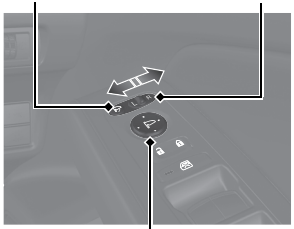


- Press the hatch release button to unlock and open the hatch when you carry the keyless remote.

Power Door Mirrors

P. 225

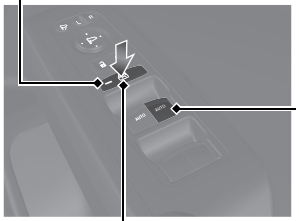
- With the power mode in ON, move the selector switch to **L** or **R**.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.
- Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.



Power Windows

P. 203

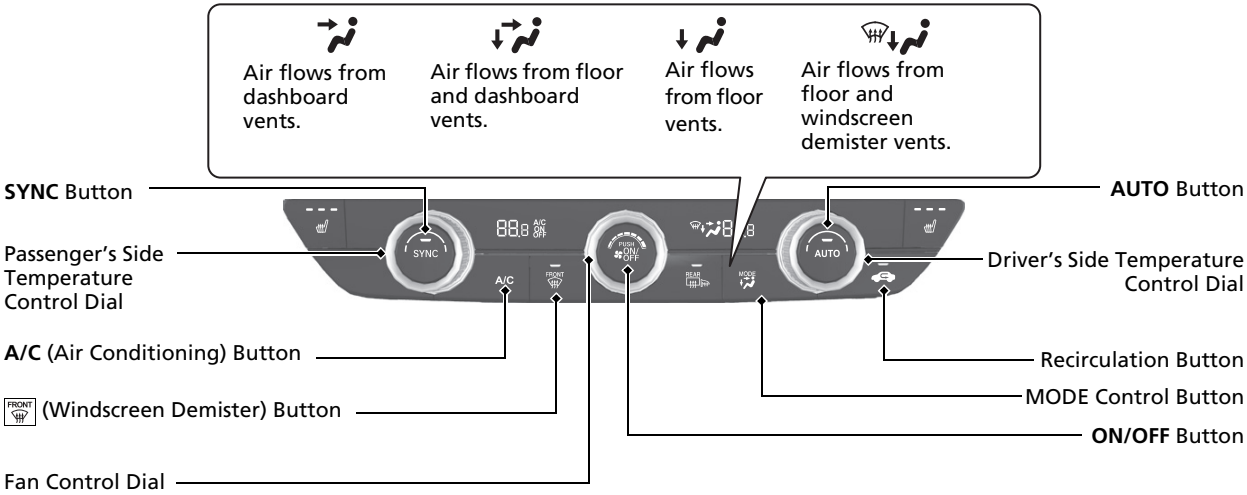
- With the power mode in ON, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the on position (indicator on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.



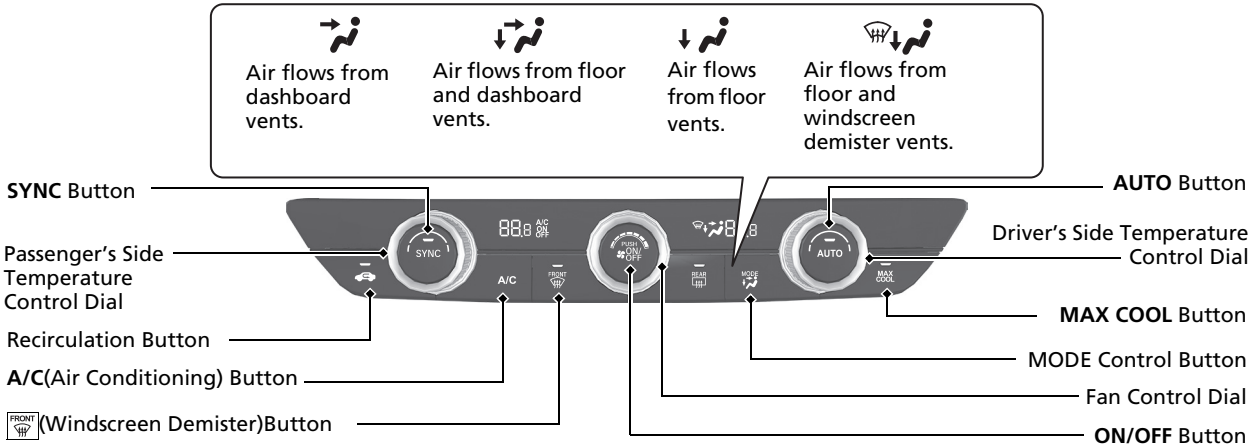
Climate Control System P. 250

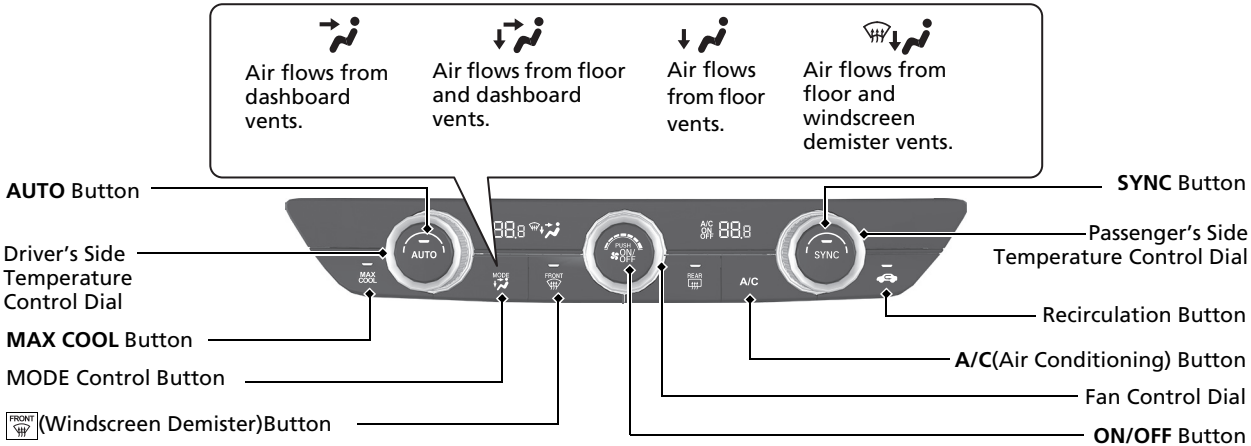
- Press the **AUTO** button to activate the climate control system.
- Press the ON/OFF button to turn the system on or off.
- Press the FRONT button to defrost the windscreen.

Models without MAX COOL button



Models with MAX COOL button and Right-hand Drive Type

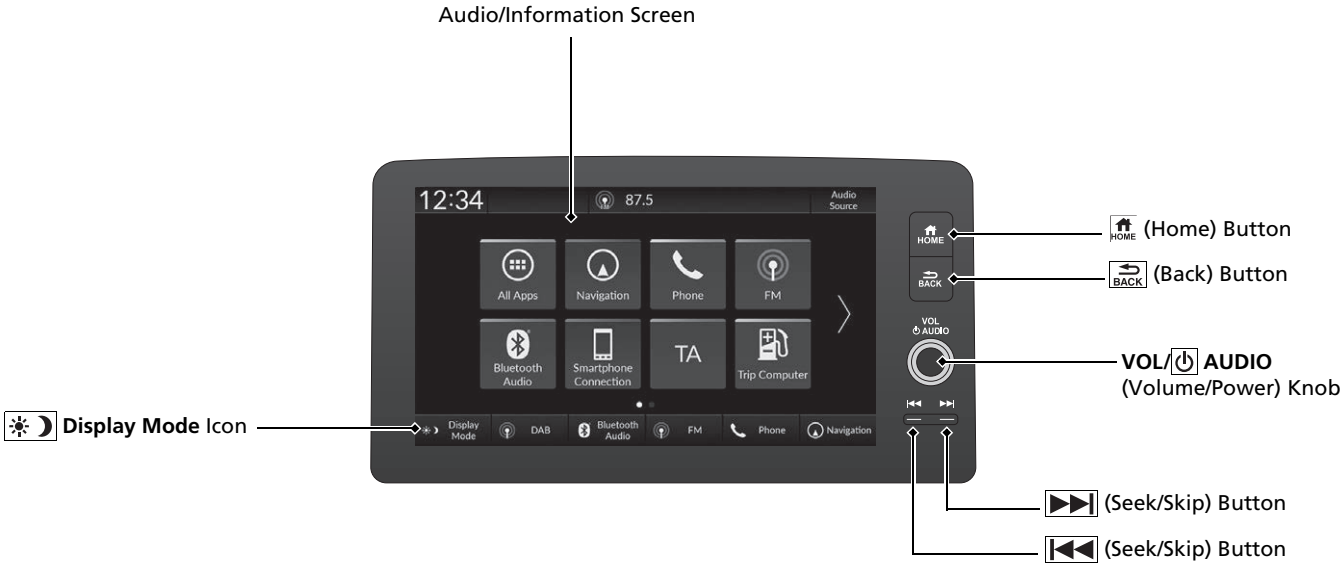



Air flows from dashboard vents.
Air flows from floor and dashboard vents.
Air flows from floor vents.
Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents.
AUTO Button
Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial
MAX COOL Button
MODE Control Button
(Windscreen Demister)Button
SYNC Button
Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial
Recirculation Button
A/C(Air Conditioning) Button
Fan Control Dial
ON/OFF Button
AUTO
MAX COOL
MODE
FRONT
FAN ON/OFF
REAR
A/C
SYNC

Features P. 259

Audio System P. 260

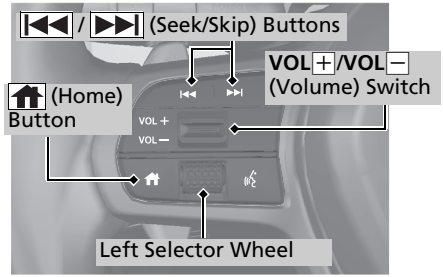
For navigation system operation See the Navigation System Manual



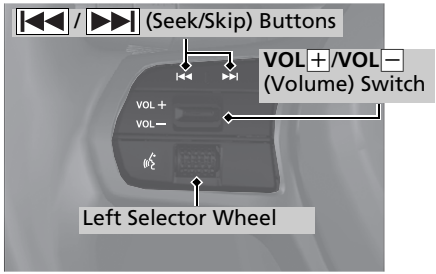
Audio Remote Controls

P. 265

Models with A-type meter



Models with B-type meter



- **VOL+/VOL−** (Volume) Switch
  Press to adjust the volume up/down.
- Left Selector Wheel

  Models with A-type meter

  When selecting the audio mode

  Press the (home) button, then roll up or down to select (audio) on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

  Roll up or down: To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel:
  FM/AM/DAB/iPod/USB/Apple CarPlay/Android Auto/*Bluetooth*® Audio

  Models with B-type meter

  Roll up or down: To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel:
  Back/Phone/FM/DAB*/AM/USB/Bluetooth/Apps/Customized display

  Depending on a connected device, the displayed modes may be changed.

- |◀◀ / ▶▶| (Seek/Skip) Buttons

  Radio: Press |◀◀ / ▶▶| to change the preset radio station.

  iPod, USB device, *Bluetooth*® Audio or Smartphone Connection:

  Press |◀◀ / ▶▶| to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song.

  Radio: Press and hold |◀◀ / ▶▶| to change the strong station.

  USB device:

  Press and hold |◀◀ / ▶▶| to change a folder.

  iPod: Press and hold |◀◀ / ▶▶| to change a song.

  Depending on a connected device, operations may be changed.

* Not available on all models

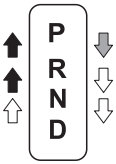
Driving P. 391

Manual Transmission* P. 410

Continuously Variable Transmission* P. 404, 405

- Shift to P and depress the brake pedal when starting the engine.

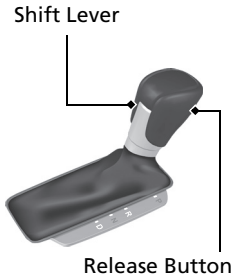
Shifting



Depress the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button to shift.

Shift without pressing the shift lever release button.

Press the shift lever release button and shift.



P **Park**
Used when parking or starting the engine.

R **Reverse**
Used when reversing.

N **Neutral**
Transmission is not locked.

D **Drive**
- For normal driving
- When temporarily driving in the 7-speed manual shift mode
- When driving in the 7-speed manual shift mode (when driving in SPORT mode)

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode P. 407

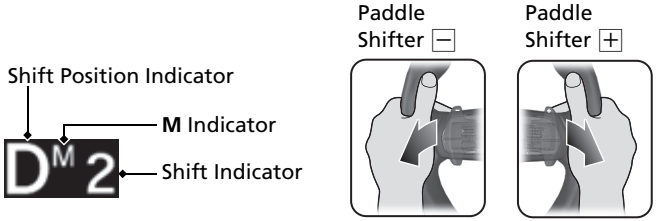
- Allows you to manually shift the transmission up or down without removing your hands from the steering wheel.

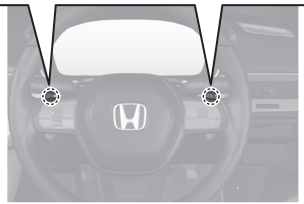
When the transmission is in D with SPORT mode

- Pulling a paddle shifter changes the mode from continuously variable transmission to 7-speed manual shift mode.
- The **M** indicator and the selected speed number are displayed in the shift indicator.

When the transmission is in D

- Pulling a paddle shifter temporarily changes the mode from continuously variable transmission to 7-speed manual shift mode. The selected speed number is displayed in the shift indicator.





CMBS On and Off P. 464

- When a possible frontal collision is likely unavoidable, the CMBS can reduce the vehicle speed and the severity of the collision.
- The CMBS is turned on every time you start the engine.
- To turn the CMBS on or off, use the safety support switch.

VSA On and Off P. 445

- The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering and helps to maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA comes on automatically every time you start the engine.
- To partially disable or fully restore VSA function, press and hold the (VSA **OFF**) button until you hear a beep.

Adjustable Speed Limiter* P. 431

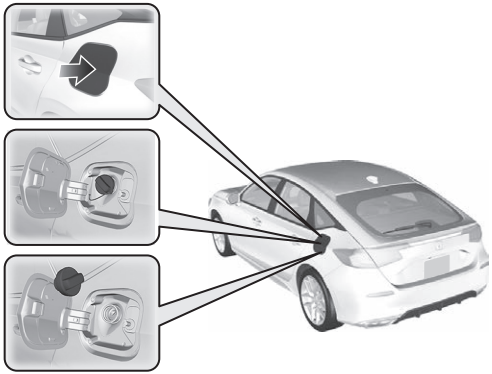
This system enables you to set a maximum speed that cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal.

- To use the adjustable speed limiter, press the button. Select the adjustable speed limiter by pressing the **LIM** button, then press the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up or down when your vehicle reaches the desired speed.
- The vehicle speed limit can be set from about 30 km/h to about 320 km/h.

Refueling P. 583

Fuel recommendation:	Continuously variable transmission models **Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher** Manual transmission models Except Thai models **Unleaded premium petrol, research octane number 95 or higher** Thai models **Unleaded premium petrol/gasohol up to E10 (90% petrol and 10% ethanol), research octane number 95 or higher**
Fuel tank capacity:	**47 L**

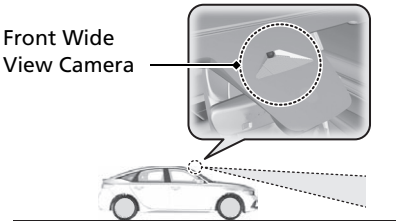
1. Unlock the driver's door. P. 195
2. Press the edge of the fuel fill door to make it pop up slightly.
3. Turn the fuel fill cap slowly to remove the cap.
4. Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.
5. After refueling, screw the cap back on until it clicks at least once.



* Not available on all models

Honda Sensing P. 456

Honda Sensing is a driver support system which employs the use of a front wide view camera mounted to the interior side of the windscreen, behind the rearview mirror.



Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

P. 460

The system can assist you when it determines there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead from behind, an oncoming vehicle in front, a pedestrian, or someone riding a bicycle (moving bicycle). The CMBS is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as assist in reducing speed, avoiding collisions, and reducing collision severity.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow* P. 473

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)* P. 490

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 508

Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile, audible and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

Traffic Jam Assist* P. 521

The Traffic Jam Assist system uses a front wide view camera mounted to the upper portion of the windscreen to detect and monitor left and right white (or yellow) traffic lane lines.
Based on inputs from the camera, the system can apply steering torque to keep your vehicle in the centre of the detected lane.

Road Departure Mitigation System P. 530

Australian and New Zealand models

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, or approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel border) or a detected oncoming vehicle.

Except Australian and New Zealand models

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

Traffic Sign Recognition System* P. 543

Reminds you of road sign information, such as the current speed limit, your vehicle has just passed through, showing it on the gauge.

Lead Car Departure Notification System*

P. 549

Informs you with visual and audible alerts when your vehicle is stopped even though the vehicle ahead of you has started moving.

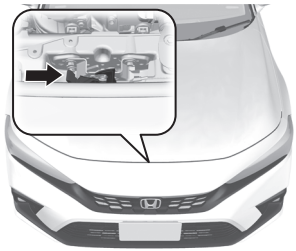
Maintenance P. 589

Under the Bonnet P.

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, and windscreen washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake/clutch* fluid.
- Check the battery condition monthly.

1. Pull the bonnet release handle under the corner of the dashboard.

2. Locate the bonnet latch lever, push it to the side, and then raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.



3. When finished, close the bonnet and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

Wiper Blades P. 633

- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windscreen or become noisy.

Lights P. 625

- Inspect all lights regularly.

Tyres P. 636

- Inspect tyres and wheels regularly.
- Check tyre pressures regularly.
- Install winter tyres for winter driving.

Handling the Unexpected P. 661

Flat Tyre P. 664

Models with temporary tyre repair kit

- Park in a safe location and repair the flat tyre using the temporary tyre repair kit.

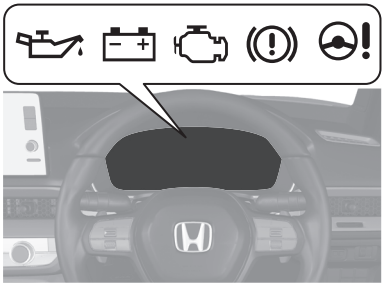
Models with a compact spare tyre

- Park in a safe location and replace the flat tyre with the spare tyre in the luggage area.

Indicators Come On

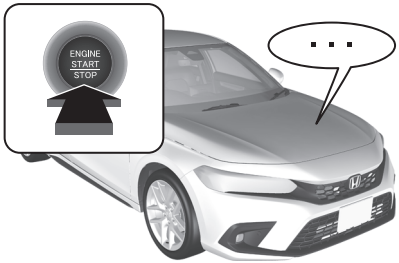
P. 703

- Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



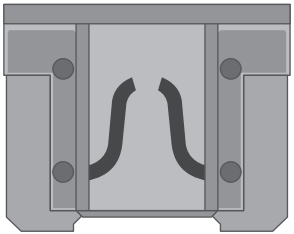
Engine Won't Start P. 689

- If the battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.



Blown Fuse P. 708

- Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.

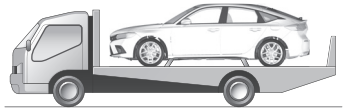


Overheating P. 699

- Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the bonnet, open the bonnet, and let the engine cool down.

Emergency Towing P. 715

- Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.



What to Do If

Q The power mode does not change from VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to ACCESSORY. Why?

A
- The steering wheel may be locked.
- Move the steering wheel left and right after pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Continuously variable transmission models

Q The power mode does not change from ACCESSORY to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). Why?

A The shift lever should be moved to P.

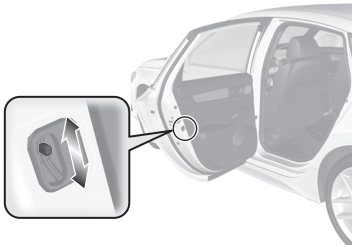
Q Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?

A This can occur when the ABS activates and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) P. 567

Q The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?

A Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle.



To cancel this function, slide the lever up to the unlock position.

Q Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors?

A If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.

Q Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?

A The beeper sounds when:
- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.
- The exterior lights are left on.
- The Auto Idle Stop* is in operation.

Q Why does a beeper sound when I walk away from the vehicle after I close the door?

A The beeper sounds if the keyless remote or card key* has moved outside the walk away auto lock operating range before all doors completely close.

Locking the doors and hatch (Walk away auto lock) P. 190

Q Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?

A The beeper sounds when the driver and/or any passenger are not wearing their seat belts.

Q Pressing the electric parking brake switch does not release the parking brake. Why?

A Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.

Q Depressing the accelerator pedal does not release the parking brake automatically. Why?

A
- Fasten the driver's seat belt.
- Check if the transmission is in P* or N. If so, select any other position.

Q Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?

A The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Q 2.0L Engine models except Hong Kong and Macanese models

Unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 95 or higher is recommended. Is it possible to use unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 91 or lower on this vehicle?

A Use of lower octane petrol can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.
Use of petrol with a research octane less than 91 can lead to engine damage.

Q Hong Kong and Macanese models

Unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 98 or higher is recommended. Is it possible to use unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 91 or lower on this vehicle?

A Use of lower octane petrol can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.
Use of petrol with a research octane less than 91 can lead to engine damage.

Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

For Safe Driving
- Important Safety Precautions 38
- Your Vehicle's Safety Features 40
- Safety Checklist 42

Seat Belts
- About Your Seat Belts 43
- Fastening a Seat Belt 48
- Seat Belt Inspection 52
- Anchorage Points 53

Airbags
- Airbag System Components 54
- Types of Airbags 56
- Front Airbags (SRS) 56
- Knee Airbags 59
- Side Airbags 63
- Side Curtain Airbags 66
- Airbag System Indicators 68
- Airbag Care 69

Pop-up Hood System*
- About the Pop-up Hood System 70
- Pop-up Hood System Care 72

Child Safety
- Protecting Child Passengers 73
- Safety of Infants and Small Children ... 76
- Safety of Larger Children 107

Exhaust Gas Hazard
- Carbon Monoxide Gas 110

Safety Labels
- Label Locations 111

* Not available on all models

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

Important Safety Precautions

■ Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

■ Restrain all children

Children aged 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child restraint system. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

■ Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

■ Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

Important Safety Precautions

Some countries prohibit the use of mobile phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

■ Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely

Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

■ Control your speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

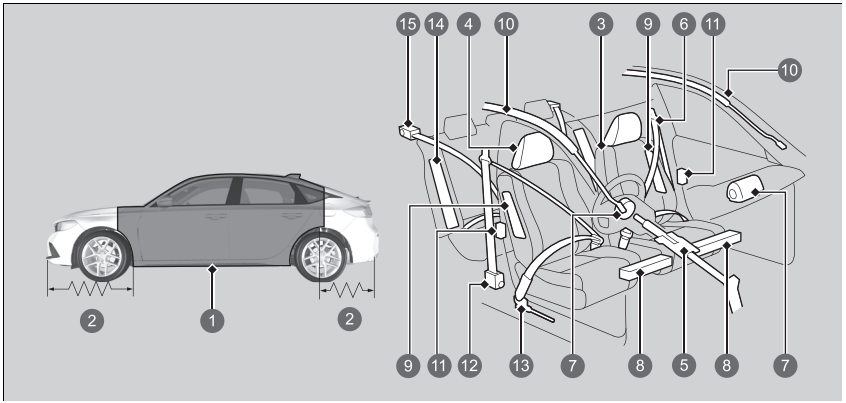
■ Keep your vehicle in safe condition

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous.
To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

■ Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle

Children, pets, and people needing assistance left unattended in the vehicle may be injured if they activate one or more of the vehicle controls. They may also cause the vehicle to move, resulting in a crash in which they and/or another person(s) can be injured or killed. Also, depending on the ambient temperature, the temperature of the interior may reach extreme levels, which can result in harm or death. Even if the climate control system is on, never leave them in the vehicle unattended as the climate control system can shut off at any time.

Your Vehicle's Safety Features



1. Safety Cage
2. Crush Zones
3. Seats and Seat-Backs
4. Head Restraints
5. Collapsible Steering Column
6. Seat Belts
7. Front Airbags
8. Knee Airbags
9. Front Side Airbags
10. Side Curtain Airbags
11. Door Locks
12. Front Seat Belt Tensioners
13. Outer Lap Pretensioners
14. Rear Side Airbags*
15. Rear Seat Belt Tensioners*

* Not available on all models

Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front and rear outer* seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

Safety Checklist

For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.
  ➔ **Seats** P. 226

Except 2.0 L engine models

- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the centre of the head restraint aligns with the centre of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.
  ➔ **Adjusting the Front Head Restraint Positions*** P. 233

- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.
  ➔ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 48

- Protect children by using seat belts or child restraint systems according to a child's age, height, and weight.
  ➔ **Child Safety** P. 73

Safety Checklist

If the door and/or hatch open message appears on the driver information interface, a door and/or the hatch is not completely closed. Close all doors and the hatch tightly until the message disappears.

➔ **Driver Information Interface (A-type Meter)** P. 140
➔ **Driver Information Interface Right Side Area (B-type-Meter)** P. 160

Except Philippine models

Philippine models

* Not available on all models

About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help to keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help to protect you in almost every type of crash, including:
- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

About Your Seat Belts

WARNING

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

WARNING: Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

WARNING: Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

WARNING: Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

WARNING: Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

Continued

■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

All four or five seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop the retractor locks to restrain your body.

The seat belt must be properly secured when using a front-facing child restraint system.

➡ **Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt** P. 101

■ Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

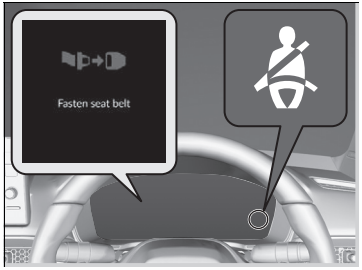
About Your Seat Belts

If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place. If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most countries require you to wear seat belts. Take time to familiarise with the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.

Seat Belt Reminder



Front seats

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver or a front passenger or both to fasten their seat belts. If you set the power mode to ON and a seat belt is not fastened, the indicator will come on.

The beeper will periodically sound and the indicator will blink while the vehicle is moving until the seat belt is fastened.

Seat Belt Reminder

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the power mode is set to ON.

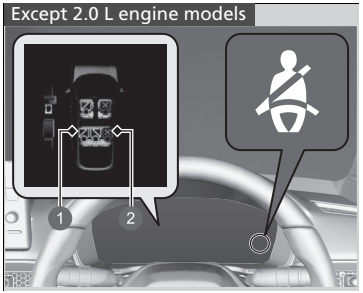
When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound.

If the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds with no one sitting in the front passenger's seat.
Check if:
- There is nothing heavy placed on the front passenger seat.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.

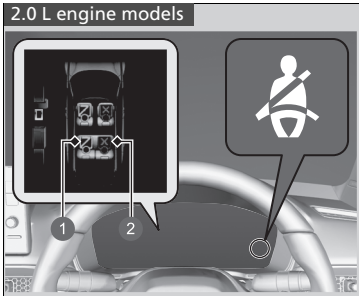
If the indicator does not light when the passenger is seated and is not fastened, something may be interfering with the occupant detection sensor.
Check if:
- A cushion is placed on the seat.
- The front passenger is not sitting properly.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Continued



❶ Fastened
❷ Unfastened



❶ Fastened
❷ Unfastened

■ Rear seats

Your vehicle monitors rear seat belt use. A driver information interface notifies you if any of the rear seat belts are not used.

The display appears when:

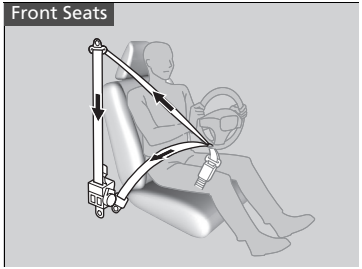
- Any of the rear passengers' seat belts are unfastened when the power mode is turned to ON.
- A rear door is opened and then closed.
- Any of the rear passengers fastens or unfastens their seat belt.

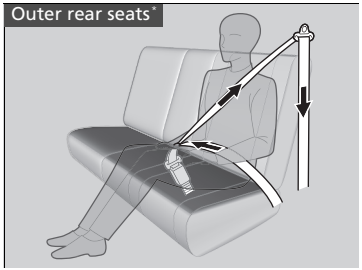
The seat belt reminder indicator blinks and beeper sounds if any rear passenger's seat belt is unfastened while driving.

Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The front seats and the outer rear seats* are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts and the outer rear seat belts* during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags or the driver's and passenger's knee airbag.





Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The seat belt tensioners can only operate once.
If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

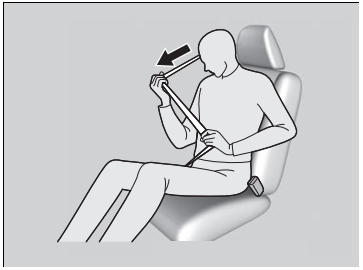
During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioner on both sides of the vehicle also activates.

* Not available on all models

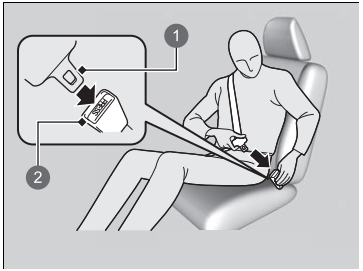
Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat:

➡ **Seats** P. 226



1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.



2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

▶ Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

❶ Latch Plate
❷ Buckle

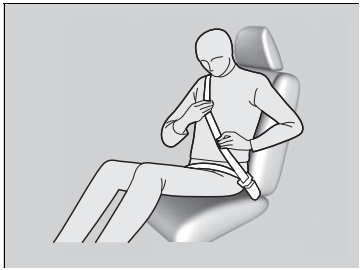
Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.

If the seat belt appears to be locked in a fully retracted position, firmly pull out on the shoulder belt once, then push it back in.
Then smoothly pull it out of the retractor and fasten.
If you are unable to release the seat belt from a fully retracted position, do not allow anyone to sit in the seat, and take your vehicle to a dealer for repair.

➡ **About Your Seat Belts** P. 43
➡ **Seat Belt Inspection** P. 52



3. Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips (see illustration), then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.
4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

Fastening a Seat Belt

⚠WARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.
When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.

Continued

Adjusting the Shoulder Anchorage

The front seats have adjustable shoulder anchorages to accommodate taller and shorter occupants.

1. Move the anchorage up and down while holding the release button.
2. Position the anchorage so that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder.

Adjusting the Shoulder Anchorage

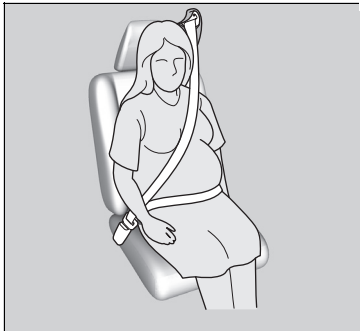
After an adjustment, make sure that the shoulder anchorage position is secure.

The shoulder anchorage height can be adjusted to four levels. If the belt contacts your neck, lower the height one level at a time.

■ Advice for Pregnant Women

Consider alternative:

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt. When positioning the seat belt, wear the shoulder belt section across the chest, avoiding the abdomen, and keep the lap belt portion as low as possible across the hips. (See illustration.)



Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
  ▶ If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.
A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

Seat Belt Inspection

⚠WARNING

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

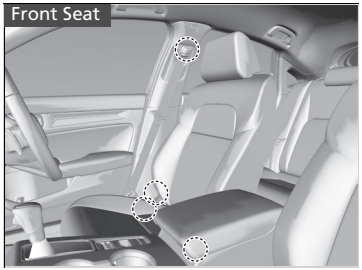
Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

WARNING: No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

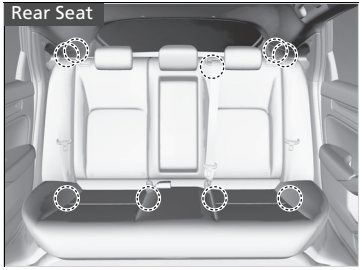
WARNING: It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

WARNING: Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

Anchorage Points

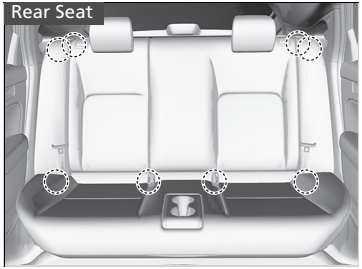


When replacing the seat belts, use the anchorage points shown in the images.
The front seat has a lap/shoulder belt.



Except 2.0 L engine models

The rear seat has three lap/shoulder belts.



2.0 L engine models

The rear seat has two lap/shoulder belts.

Airbag System Components

The front, driver's knee, front passenger's knee, side*, and side curtain airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. The airbag system includes:

- Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.
- Two knee airbags. The driver's knee airbag is stored under the steering column; the front passenger's knee airbag is stored under the glove box. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

Except Australian and New Zealand models with 2.0L engine

- Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for the front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

Australian and New Zealand models with 2.0L engine

- Four side airbags, one for the driver, one for the front passenger and two for the rear outboard. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. All are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.
- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG**.
- An electronic control unit that, when the power mode is in ON, continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, seat and buckle sensors, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, and other vehicle information. During a crash event the unit can record such information.
- Automatic seat belt tensioners for the front seats and outer rear seats*.
- Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.

* Not available on all models

Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help to save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

What you should do: Always wear your seat belt properly and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag. Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

Do not attach or place objects on the front, driver's knee and front passenger's knee airbag covers. Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

Important Facts About Your Airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with four types of airbags:

- **Front airbags:** Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- **Knee airbags:** Airbags under the steering column and under the glove box.
- **Side airbags:** Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's outer seat-backs and next to the outer rear seating positions*.
- **Side curtain airbags:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the power mode is in ON.

After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help to protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the centre of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

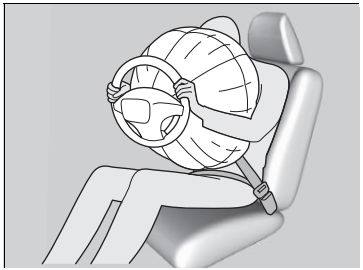
* Not available on all models

Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.
The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

Continued

■ When front airbags should not deploy

Minor frontal crashes: Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help to save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

Side impacts: Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags have been specifically designed to help to reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

Rear impacts: Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

Rollovers: Seat belts and side curtain airbags offer the best protection in a rollover. Because front airbags could provide little if any protection, they are not designed to deploy during a rollover.

■ When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

■ When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

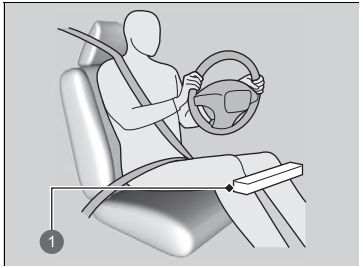
Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

Knee Airbags

The knee SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help to keep the driver and/or front passenger in the proper position and to help to maximise the benefit provided by the vehicle's other safety features.

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbag is designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

Housing Locations



❶ Driver's Knee Airbag Location

The knee airbag for the driver and the one for the front passenger are housed under the steering column and the glove box respectively.

Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

Knee Airbags

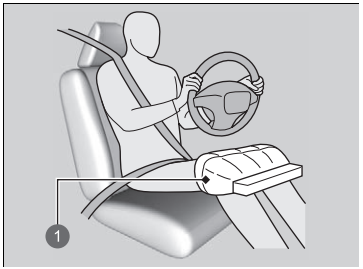
Do not attach accessories on or near a knee airbag as they can interfere with the proper operation of the airbag, or even hurt someone if the airbag inflates.

The driver and front passenger should not store any items under the seat or behind their feet. The items can interfere with proper airbag deployment in the event of a moderate to severe frontal collision and may result in inadequate protection.

Continued

1 Passenger's Knee Airbag Location

Operation

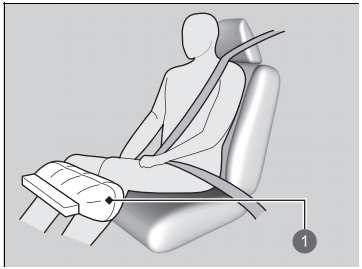


1 Deployed Driver's Knee Airbag

The driver's and front passenger's knee airbag deploy at the same time as the driver's and front passenger's airbag respectively.

2.0 L engine models

Even if the collision is not severe enough to deploy the front airbag, the knee airbag may inflate alone.



1 Deployed Passenger's Knee Airbag

Continued

■ When knee airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

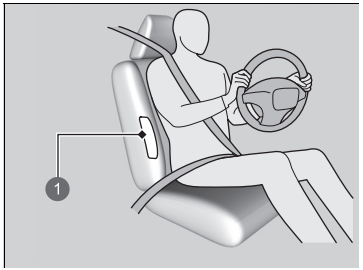
■ When knee airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

Side Airbags

The side airbags help to protect the torso and pelvis of the driver, front passenger, or an outer rear seat occupant* during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

Housing Locations



1 Side Airbag Location

Australian and New Zealand models with 2.0L engine

1 Side Airbag Location

The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seatbacks and next to the outer rear seating positions*.

Each are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

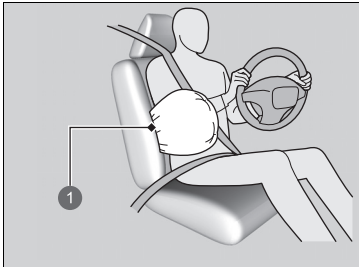
Side Airbags

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Operation



❶ Deployed Side Airbag

When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

Australian and New Zealand models with 2.0L engine

❶ Deployed Side Airbag

Side Airbags

Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer.
Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

Do not let the front passenger lean sideways with their head in the deployment path of the side airbag. An inflating side airbag can strike with strong force and seriously injure the passenger.

■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

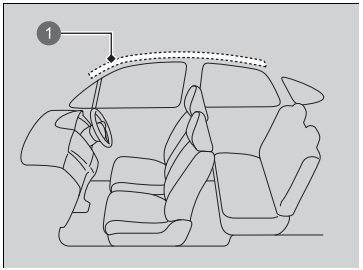
■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag not to deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags help to protect the heads of the driver and passengers in outer seating positions during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

■ Housing Locations



The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

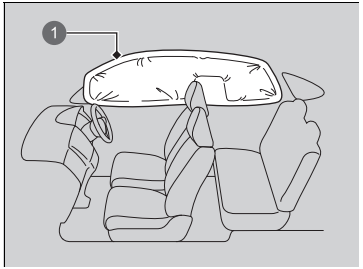
❶ Side Curtain Airbag Location

Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags are most effective when an occupant is wearing their seat belt properly and sitting upright, well back in their seat.

Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.
Do not put a coat hanger or hard objects on a coat hook. This could result in injuries if your side curtain airbag inflates.

■ Operation



The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a moderate-to-severe side impact.

❶ Deployed Side Curtain Airbag

■ When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

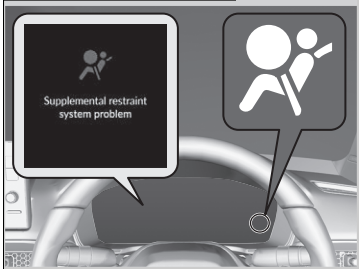
One or both side curtain airbags may also inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

Airbag System Indicators

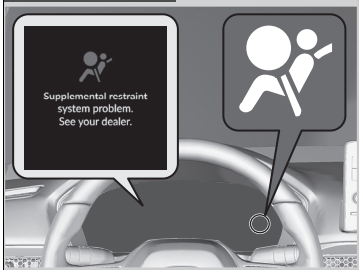
If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the driver information interface.

■ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

Except Philippine models



Philippine models



■ When the power mode is set to ON

The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

⚠WARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: the seat belt tensioners for the front seats and outer rear seats*, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

Airbag Care

The removal of airbag components from the vehicle is prohibited.

In case of malfunction, or shutdown, or after the airbag inflation/seat belt tensioner operation, ask a qualified personnel for handling.

We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

* Not available on all models

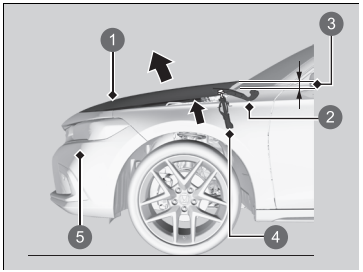
About the Pop-up Hood System

The pop-up hood system is designed to help to reduce the possible head injuries of a pedestrian if they experience a frontal impact with your vehicle.

The System Activates When

Your vehicle strikes a pedestrian or other objects at moderate or higher speed.

How the System Works



1. Bonnet
2. Hinge
3. Raises about 100mm
4. Power Unit Component
5. Pedestrian Impact Sensors

When the pedestrian impact sensors detect a certain amount of impact, the pop-up hood system is activated and the rear of the bonnet will raise.

The raised bonnet can help to reduce pedestrian head injuries.

The power units are located in the vehicle front side of the hinges.

About the Pop-up Hood System

WARNING

After the pop-up hood is activated, the power unit components become extremely hot and can cause burns. Do not touch the power unit components until they have cooled.

NOTICE

Do not attempt to open the bonnet after the pop-up hood system has been activated. After the system activation, make sure the raised bonnet does not interfere with visibility, and then drive slowly and carefully.

If the bonnet is not fully closed, it may not work properly. Make sure the bonnet is fully closed before driving.

* Not available on all models

The following conditions may also activate the system.
- A severe impact on the underside of your vehicle.
- Driving over speed bumps at high speed, or over a large pothole.
- When the objects impact the pedestrian impact sensors.

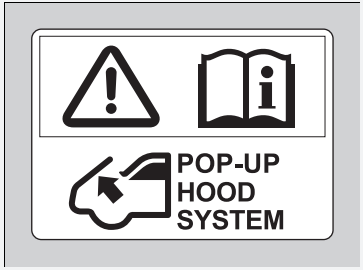
The system may not activate if your vehicle is:
- Impacted from the rear or side.
- Tipped over or rolled over.
- A pedestrian is struck at an angle.

Other factors, such as where, at which angle, or at what vehicle speed the impact has occurred, may prevent the pop-up hood system from activating.

About the Pop-up Hood System

For the pop-up hood system to work properly:
- Always use the same size tyres as the original. The system may not read your vehicle speed correctly with the different size tyres.
- Never apply force to the system's power unit. It can be damaged if you slam the bonnet shut.
- Do not impact the pedestrian impact sensors in the front bumper.

Pop-up Hood System label is found under the bonnet:
Label Locations P. 111



Continued

■ System Warning Message for Pop-up Hood

■ When the power mode is set to ON

A system warning message appears on the driver information interface if there is a potential problem with the pop-up hood system.

System Warning Message for Pop-up Hood

⚠WARNING

Ignoring the pop-up hood message can result in a malfunction of the pop-up hood. This can result in serious injury or death if your vehicle impacts a pedestrian.

If the pop-up hood message comes on, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

Pop-up Hood System Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any pop-up hood system components yourself.
However, if the pop-up hood system has ever activated, you need to have the control unit, and other related parts replaced by a dealer.

Pop-up Hood System Care

If the front bumper is damaged, have the vehicle checked by a dealer even if the pop-up hood system did not activate.

Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children aged 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, infants and children should be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

Protecting Child Passengers

Front Passenger's Sun Visor

WARNING

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

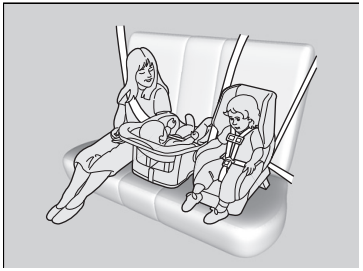
WARNING

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

Continued

Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat. This is because:



- An inflating front airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.

Protecting Child Passengers

In many countries, the law requires all children aged 12 and under, and whose height are shorter than 150 cm be properly restrained in a rear seat.

In many countries, it is required to use an officially approved and suitable child restraint system for transporting a child on any passenger seat. Check your local legal requirement.

We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries.

➔ **Selecting a Child Restraint System** P. 79

Malaysian and Vietnamese models

Front Passenger's Doorjamb

⚠WARNING

Extreme Hazard!

DO NOT use a rear-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!

- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt must be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system that is properly secured to the vehicle using the seat belt or the child restraint anchorage system.
- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows, or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

Protecting Child Passengers

WARNING: Use the power window lock button to prevent children from opening the windows. Using this feature will prevent children from playing with the windows, which could expose them to hazards or distract the driver.

➡ **Opening/Closing the Power Windows** P. 203

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

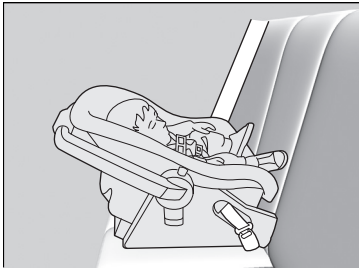
To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazard and child safety, your vehicle has the warning labels on the passenger's side sun visor.
Please read and follow the instructions on this label.

➡ **Safety Labels** P. 111

Safety of Infants and Small Children

■ Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system until the infant reaches the child restraint system manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat.



■ Positioning a rear-facing child restraint system

Child restraint system must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

- ▶ We recommend that you install the child restraint system directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied.
- ▶ Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.

If there is, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child restraint system.

Protecting Infants

⚠WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

Always place a rear-facing child restraint system in the back seat, not the front.

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing child restraint system for a child up to two years old if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing child restraint system.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child restraint system may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

Protecting Infants

Rear-facing child restraint systems should never be installed in a front-facing position.

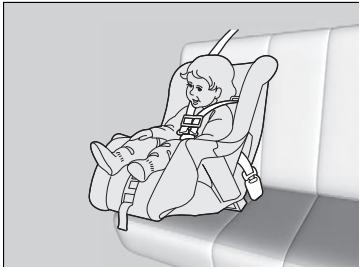
Always refer to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions before installation.

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with great force, which can dislodge or strike the system, and seriously injure the child.

Continued

Protecting Smaller Children

If a child has exceeded the weight and height limitations of a rear-facing child restraint system, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured front-facing child restraint system until they exceed the weight and height limitations for the front-facing child restraint system.



Front-facing child restraint system placement

We strongly recommend placing a front-facing child restraint system in a rear seating position.

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can be hazardous. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

Protecting Smaller Children

⚠WARNING

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a front-facing child restraint system in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child restraint system use where you are driving, and follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

Selecting a Child Restraint System

Some child restraint systems are lower anchorage compatible. Some have a rigid-type connector while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child restraint systems can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child restraint system manufacturer's use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximising your child's safety.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with lower anchorages, install a child restraint system using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child restraint systems must be secured with the seat belt when the lower anchorage system is not in use. In addition, the child restraint system manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach an ISOFIX restraint system once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child restraint system owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

Important consideration when selecting a child restraint system

Make sure the child restraint system meets the following three requirements:

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child restraint system is compliant with safety standards. We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries. Look for the approval mark on the system and the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box.

Continued

Selecting a Child Restraint System

Installation of a lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system is simple.

Lower anchorage-compatible child restraint systems have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

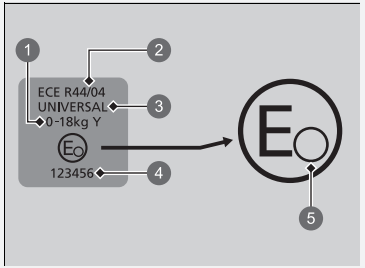
We recommend a rear-facing or a front-facing Honda genuine ISOFIX child restraint system for infants or small children, respectively. Ask your dealer.

■ Child Restraint Systems Standards

If a child restraint system (whether an i-Size /ISOFIX type or one that is fitted with a seat belt) meets the relevant UN Regulation, it will be affixed with an approval label as shown in the adjacent table. Before purchasing or using any child restraint system, make sure to check the approval label and ensure that it is compatible with your vehicle and the child, and that it complies with the relevant UN Regulation.

Selecting a Child Restraint System

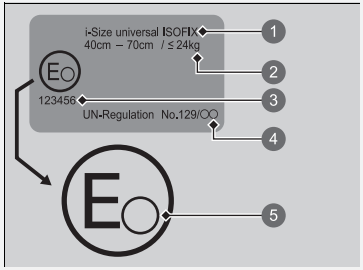
Example of UN Regulation No. 44 approval label



1. "Mass group"
2. Regulation number
3. Category
4. Approval number
5. Country code

Selecting a Child Restraint System

Example of UN Regulation No. 129 approval label



1. Category
2. Size and weight indication
3. Approval number
4. Regulation number
5. Country code

Continued

■ Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

Except 2.0 L engine models

U	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
UF	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

*1 When installing a child restraint system, adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position.
If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision.
Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked. If you cannot fix the booster seat stably, adjust the seat back angle to be parallel with the back still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.

*2 Only forward facing child restraint system can be installed.

*3 For installing the universal child restraint system installed with safety belt, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.

*4 If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position.

- Child restraint systems with support leg can be installed in seating position where i-Size cannot be installed. However, the centre seat is excluded.
- The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.

Continued

Except 2.0 L engine models

Detail information for CRS installation

	Seating position and Seat position number					
	Size groups Weight Stature		①	②	③	④
			Front passenger*1*2	2nd row*4		
				Left	Centre	Right
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg				
	Group I	9-18kg	Yes*3	Yes	Yes	Yes
	Group II	15-25kg				
	Group III	22-36kg				
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	≤ 150cm		No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS	Refer to genuine CRS list		No	No	No	No
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	—		No	No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	R3	No	R3
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg				
	Group I	9-18kg				
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9-18kg	No	F3	No	F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	≤ 150cm		B3	B3	B3	B3

Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

When purchasing a child restraint systems, make sure to check the ISOFIX size class or the fixture to ensure that the seat is compatible with your vehicle.

Fixture (CRF)	Description
ISO/L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
ISO/R2X	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R2	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R3	Full-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/B2	Reduced width forward-facing booster seat
ISO/B3	Full width forward-facing booster seat

*1 When installing a child restraint system, adjust the seat slide to the rearmost position.
If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position. If this interference is unavoidable even after raising, remove the head restraint. Please note that the removed head restraint should be stored in the luggage compartment so that it will not fly during sudden braking or collision.
Also, if you remove the child restraint system, attach the head restraint to the original seat and make sure it is locked.
If you cannot fix the booster seat stably, adjust the seat back angle to be parallel with the back still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.
*2 Only forward facing child restraint system can be installed.
*3 For installing the universal child restraint system installed with safety belt, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.
*4 If the child restraint system interferes with the head restraint and cannot be installed stably, raise the head restraint to the highest position.

- Child restraint systems with support leg can be installed in seating position where i-Size cannot be installed. However, the centre seat is excluded.
- The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up to date details relating to our recommended CRSs. Other CRS may also be suitable - please consult CRS manufacturers for recommended vehicle lists.

Continued

2.0 L engine models

Right-hand drive type except Malaysian models

U	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
UF	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

*1 When installing a child restraint system, adjust the seat slide to the most rear position.
If you cannot fix the booster child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.

*2 For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.

● **Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions.**

2.0 L engine models

Right-hand drive type except Malaysian models

Detail information for CRS installation

	Seating position and Seat position number				
	Size groups Weight Stature		①	②	③
			Front passenger*1	2nd row	
				Left	Right
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	Yes	Yes
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg			
	Group I	9-18kg	Yes*2	Yes	Yes
	Group II	15-25kg			
	Group III	22-36kg			
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	≤150cm		No	Yes	Yes
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS	—		No	No	No
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	—		No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	R3	R3
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg			
	Group I	9-18kg			
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9-18kg	No	F3	F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	≤150cm		No	B3	B3

Continued

*1 When installing a child restraint system, adjust the seat slide to the most rear position.
Only forward facing child restraint system can be installed.
If you cannot fix the booster child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.

*2 For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.

- Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions.

Malaysian models

U	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
UF	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

*1 Forward facing only.
When installing a child restraint system, adjust the seat slide to the most rear position.
If you cannot fix the booster child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.

*2 For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.

● **Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions.**

Continued

Malaysian models

Detail information for CRS installation

	Seating position and Seat position number				
	Size groups Weight Stature		①	②	③
			Front passenger*1	2nd row	
				Left	Right
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	Yes	Yes
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg			
	Group I	9-18kg	Yes*2	Yes	Yes
	Group II	15-25kg			
	Group III	22-36kg			
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	≤150cm		No	Yes	Yes
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS	—		No	No	No
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	—		No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	R3	R3
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg			
	Group I	9-18kg			
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9-18kg	No	F3	F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	≤150cm		No	B3	B3

*1 Forward facing only.
When installing a child restraint system, adjust the seat slide to the most rear position.
If you cannot fix the booster child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.

*2 For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.

- Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions.

Continued

Left-hand drive type

U	Suitable for universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
UF	Suitable for forward facing universal restraint systems installed with vehicle safety belts.
	Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraints systems.
	Suitable for forward facing restraint systems only.
	Never use a rearward facing child restraint system.
	Seat position equipped with Top Tether anchorages.

*1 When installing a child restraint system, adjust the seat slide to the most rear position.
If you cannot fix the booster child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.

*2 For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.

● **Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions.**

Left-hand Drive Type

Detail information for CRS installation

	Seating position and Seat position number				
	Size groups Weight Stature		①	②	③
			Front passenger*1	2nd row	
				Left	Right
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	Yes	Yes
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg			
	Group I	9-18kg	Yes*2	Yes	Yes
	Group II	15-25kg			
	Group III	22-36kg			
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	≤150cm		No	Yes	Yes
Seating position suitable for recommended genuine CRS	—		No	No	No
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	—		No	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	Group 0	Up to 10kg	No	R3	R3
	Group 0+	Up to 13kg			
	Group I	9-18kg			
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3)	Group I	9-18kg	No	F3	F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	≤150cm		No	B3	B3

Continued

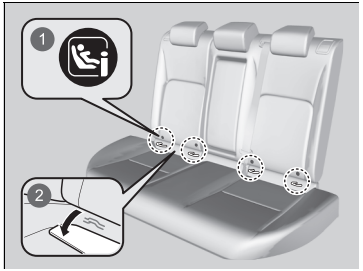
*1 When installing a child restraint system, adjust the seat slide to the most rear position.
Only forward facing child restraint system can be installed.
If you cannot fix the booster child restraint system stably, adjust the seat-back angle to be parallel with the back still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchorage.

*2 For installing the universal belted type, adjust the seat back to the most front lock position.

- Child restraint systems with support legs can be installed on non i-Size seating positions.

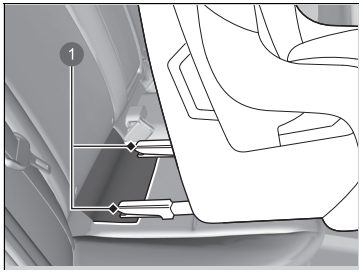
Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

A lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system can be installed in either of the two outer rear seats. A child restraint system is attached to the lower anchorages with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors.



1. Locate the anchorage marks affixed to the base of the seat cushion.
2. Pull out the anchorage covers under the marks to expose the lower anchorages.

❶ Marks
❷ Cover



3. Place the child restraint system so that the probes are on the cover.

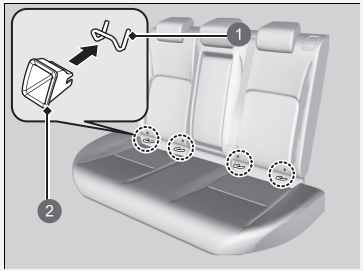
❶ Probes

Continued

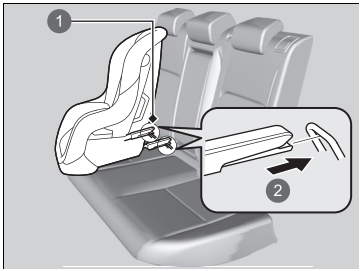
⚠WARNING

Never attach two child restraint systems to the same anchorage. In a collision, one anchorage may not be strong enough to hold two child restraint system attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

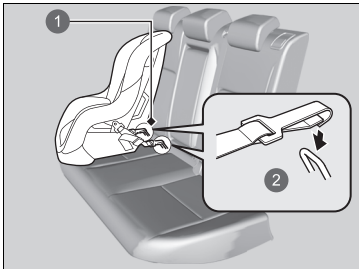
Some child restraint systems come with optional guide-cups, which avoid possible damage to the seat surface. Follow the manufacturer's instructions when using the guide-cups, and attach them to the lower anchorages as shown in the image.



❶ Lower Anchorage
❷ Guide-cup



❶ Lower Anchorages
❷ Rigid Type

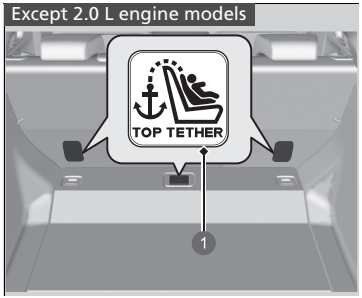


❶ Lower Anchorages
❷ Flexible Type

4. Attach the child restraint system to the lower anchorages according to the instructions that came with the child restraint system.

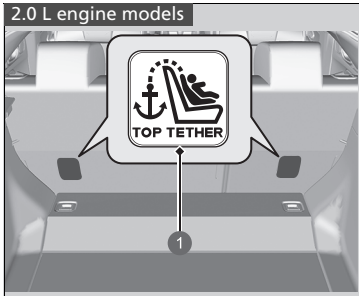
▶ When installing the child restraint system, make sure that the lower anchorages are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.

Except 2.0 L engine models



❶ Top Tether Anchorage Symbol

2.0 L engine models



❶ Top Tether Anchorage Symbol

Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

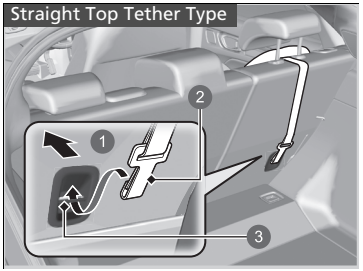
WARNING: Never use a hook that does not come with a Top Tether Anchorage Symbol when securing an installed child restraint system.

For your child's safety, when using a child restraint system installed using the lower anchorage system, make sure that the child restraint system is properly secured to the vehicle.
A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

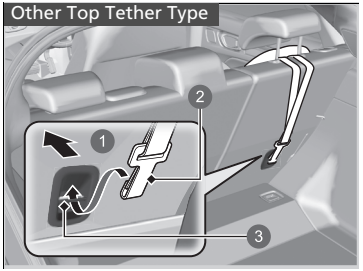
Continued

Straight Top Tether Type



❶ Ahead of the Vehicle
❷ Tether Strap Hook
❸ Anchorage

Other Top Tether Type



❶ Ahead of the Vehicle
❷ Tether Strap Hook
❸ Anchorage

Except 2.0 L engine models

5. Raise the head restraint to its highest position.
▶ Retract the luggage area cover.
➔ **Luggage Area Cover*** P. 243

6. Route the tether strap between the head restraint legs. Make sure the strap is not twisted.

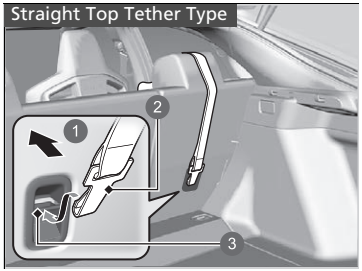
7. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.

8. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

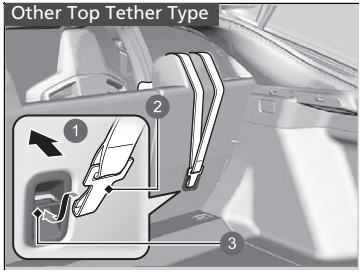
9. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.

10. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.

* Not available on all models



❶ Ahead of the Vehicle
❷ Tether Strap Hook
❸ Anchorage



❶ Ahead of the Vehicle
❷ Tether Strap Hook
❸ Anchorage

2.0 L engine models

5. Retract the luggage area cover*.
➡ **Luggage Area Cover*** P. 243

6. Route the tether strap over the head restraint.
▶ Make sure the strap is not twisted.

7. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.

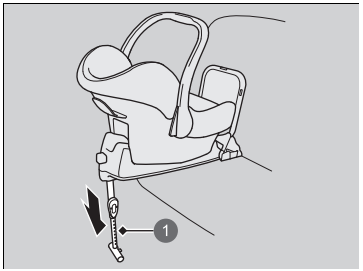
8. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

9. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.

10. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.

* Not available on all models

Continued



❶ Support Leg

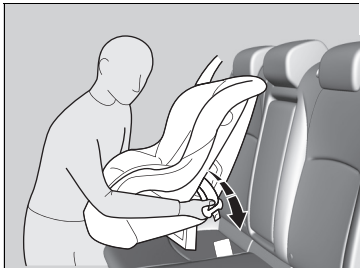
Child restraint system with support leg

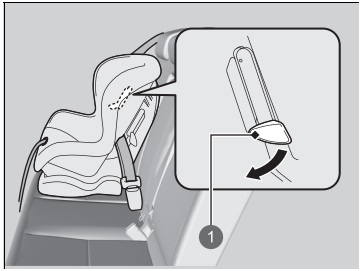
4. Extend the support leg until it touches the floor as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

▶ Confirm that the section of the floor on which the support leg rests is level. If the section is not level, the support leg will not provide adequate support.

▶ Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.

Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt





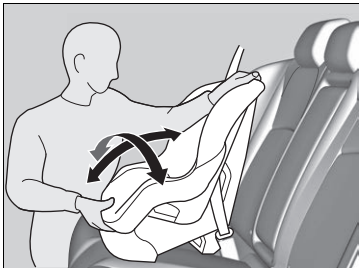
❶ Tab

1. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat.
2. Route the seat belt through the child restraint system according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
   ▶ Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.
3. Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint.
4. Grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
   ▶ When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.
5. Position the belt properly and push up the tab. Make sure the belt is not twisted.
   ▶ When pushing up the tab, pull up the upper shoulder part of the belt to remove any slack from the belt.

Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

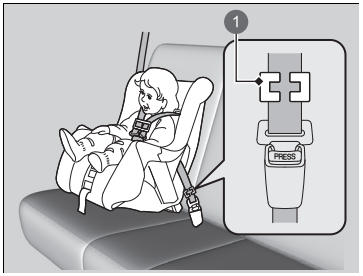
Continued



6. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
7. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.

If your child restraint system does not come with a mechanism that secures the belt, install a locking clip on the seat belt.

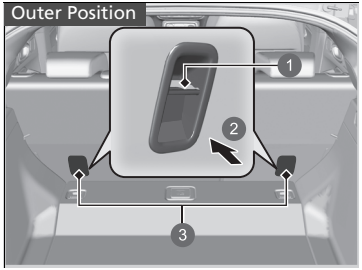
After going through the step 1 and 2, pull up the shoulder part of the belt and make sure there is no slack in the lap portion.



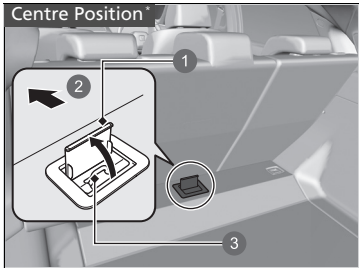
1. Tightly grasp the belt near the latch plate. Pinch both parts of the belt together so they do not slip through the latch plate. Unbuckle the seat belt.
4. Install the locking clip as shown in the image. Position the clip as close as possible to the latch plate.
5. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Go to step 6 and 7.

1 Locking Clip

Adding Security with a Tether



❶ Anchorage
❷ Ahead of the Vehicle
❸ Tether Anchorage Points



❶ Cover
❷ Ahead of the Vehicle
❸ Anchorage

A tether anchorage point is provided behind each rear seating position.
If you have a child restraint system that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.

Adding Security with a Tether

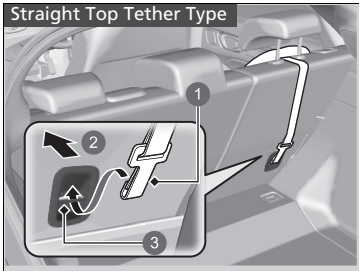
WARNING: Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Always use a tether for front-facing child restraint system whether using the seat belt or lower anchorages.

* Not available on all models

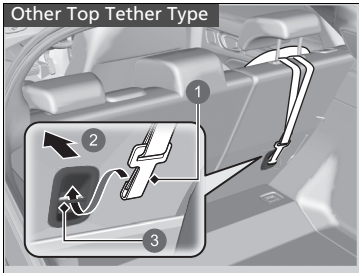
Continued

Straight Top Tether Type



❶ Tether Strap Hook
❷ Ahead of the Vehicle
❸ Anchorage

Other Top Tether Type



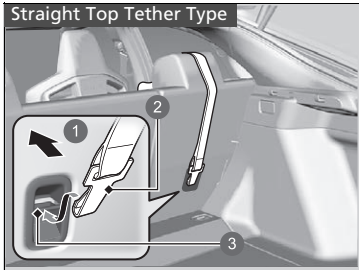
❶ Tether Strap Hook
❷ Ahead of the Vehicle
❸ Anchorage

Except 2.0 L engine models

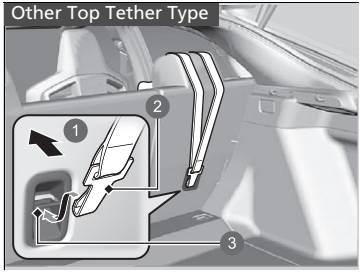
■ Using an outer anchorage

1. Retract the luggage area cover.
   ➡ **Luggage Area Cover*** P. 243
2. Locate the appropriate tether anchorage point.
3. Raise the head restraint to its highest position, then route the tether strap between the head restraint legs.
   ▶ Make sure the strap is not twisted.
4. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
5. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

 * Not available on all models



❶ Ahead of the Vehicle
❷ Tether Strap Hook
❸ Anchorage



❶ Ahead of the Vehicle
❷ Tether Strap Hook
❸ Anchorage

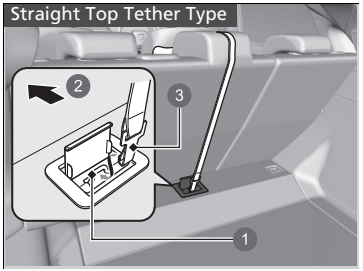
2.0 L engine models

1. Retract the luggage area cover*.
   ➡ **Luggage Area Cover*** P. 243
2. Locate the appropriate tether anchorage point.
3. Route the tether strap over the head restraint. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
4. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
5. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

* Not available on all models

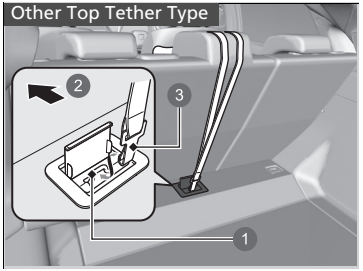
Continued

Straight Top Tether Type



❶ Anchorage
❷ Ahead of the Vehicle
❸ Tether Strap Hook

Other Top Tether Type



❶ Anchorage
❷ Ahead of the Vehicle
❸ Tether Strap Hook

Except 2.0 L engine models

■ Using the centre anchorage

1. Retract the luggage area cover.
   ➡ **Luggage Area Cover*** P. 243
2. Locate the appropriate tether anchorage point and lift the cover.
3. Route the tether strap over the head restraint.
   ▶ Make sure the strap is not twisted.
4. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
5. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

 * Not available on all models

Safety of Larger Children

■ Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

■ Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child restraint system, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.

■ Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

Safety of Larger Children

⚠WARNING

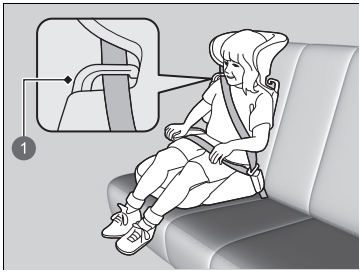
Allowing a child aged 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, using a booster seat if needed.

Continued

Booster Seats

If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.



A backrest is available for a specific booster seat. Install the backrest to the booster seat and adjust it to the vehicle seat according to the booster seat manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt is properly routed through the guide at the shoulder of the backrest and the belt does not touch and cross the child's neck.

1 Guide

Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.
There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

We recommend a booster seat with a backrest as it is easier to adjust the shoulder belt.

Protecting Larger Children - Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.

Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

■ Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever

- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the hatch open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the hatch open, open all the windows and set the climate control system as shown below.

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the climate control system in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

Carbon Monoxide Gas

⚠WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic.

Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

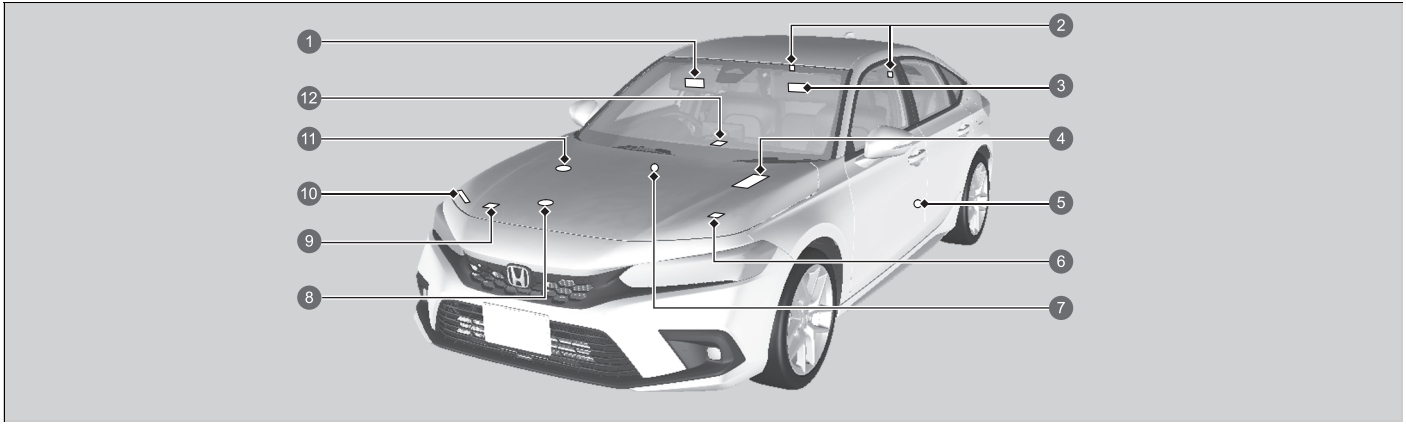
Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas.
Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.

Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact a dealer for a replacement.



1. Protecting Child Passenger (Left-hand drive type) ➔ P. 73
2. Rear Outer Head restraint* ➔ P. 234
3. Protecting Child Passenger (Right-hand drive type) ➔ P. 73
4. Battery
5. Child Safety* (Right-hand drive type) ➔ P. 74
6. Pop-up Hood* ➔ P. 71
7. Child Safety* (Left-hand drive type) ➔ P. 74
8. Radiator Cap*
9. Air Conditioner* ➔ P. 648
10. Front Bulkhead Cover ➔ P. 609

* Not available on all models

Continued

⓫ Reserve Tank Cap* ➔ P. 619
⓬ Wireless Charger ➔ P. 248

 * Not available on all models

Instrument Panel

This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.

Indicators 114
Gauges and Driver Information Interface 135
Gauges 135
Driver Information Interface (A-type Meter) 140
Driver Information Interface Left Side Area (B-type-Meter) 155
Driver Information Interface Right Side Area (B-type-Meter) 160

Indicators come on/blink depending on the condition of the vehicle. Messages may display on the driver information interface at the same time. Please take the appropriate action outlined in the message, such as contacting a dealer.

*1	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	→P. 116
*1	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	→P. 117
*1	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	→P. 117
*1	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	→P. 117
*1	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	→P. 117
*1	Charging System Indicator	→P. 117
	Transmission System Indicator*	→P. 118
	M (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator*/Shift Indicator*	→P. 118
	Shift Position Indicator*	→P. 119
	Gear Position Indicator*	→P. 118
	Shift Up Indicator*	→P.119
	Shift Down Indicator*	→P.119
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	→P. 119
	Low Fuel Indicator	→P. 119
*1	Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) Indicator	→P. 119
*1	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	→P. 120
*1	Low Temperature Indicator*	→P. 120
*1	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	→P. 120
*1	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) **OFF** Indicator	→P. 121
*1	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	→P. 121
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	→P. 121
	Lights On Indicator	→P. 121
	High Beam Indicator	→P. 122
*1	Auto High-Beam Indicator	→P. 122
	Front Fog Light Indicator*	→P.122
	Rear Fog Light Indicator*	→P.122

*1: When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the engine has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.

 * Not available on all models

ECON	**ECON** Mode Indicator*	→P. 126
NORMAL	**NORMAL** Mode Indicator*	→P. 126
SPORT	**SPORT** Mode Indicator	→P. 126
INDIVIDUAL	**INDIVIDUAL** Mode Indicator*	→P. 126
COMFORT	**COMFORT** Mode Indicator*	→P. 126
+R	**+R** Mode Indicator*	→P. 126
	System Message Indicator	→P. 127
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Interval Indicator*	→P. 130
	Road Departure Mitigation Ready to Assist Indicator*	→P. 131
OFF	Auto Idle Stop **OFF** Indicator*	→P.124
	Auto Idle Stop Suspend Indicator*	→P.125

*1	Auto Idle Stop System Indicator (Amber)*	→P.124
	Auto Idle Stop Indicator (Green)*	→P.124
	Immobilizer System Indicator	→P.123
	Security System Alarm Indicator	→P.123
LIM	Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (White/Green)*	→P.128
LIM	Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator (White/Green)*	→P.128
*1	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow* Indicator (Amber)	→P.129
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow* Indicator (White/Green)	→P.129
*1	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)	→P.130
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White/Green)	→P.130

*1	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)*	→P.131
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey)*	→P.131
*1	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)*	→P.131
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey)*	→P.131
	Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator*	→P.132
*1	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	→P.132
	Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)	→P.134

*1: When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the engine has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
(Red)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	• Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released.	• The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake applied. • Comes on for about 30 seconds when you apply the electric parking brake while the power mode is in ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then goes off. • Stays on for about 30 seconds when you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF while the electric parking brake is applied, then goes off.
		• Comes on when the brake fluid level is low.	• **Comes on while driving** - Make sure the parking brake is released. Stop in a safe place and check the brake fluid level. ➡ **What to do when the indicator comes on while driving** P. 705
		• Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system.	• **Comes on along with the ABS indicator** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks** P. 705 • **Blinks and the Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (amber) comes on at the same time** - There is a problem with the electric parking brake system. The parking brake may not be set. Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. ➡ **If the brake system indicator (red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, release the parking brake manually or automatically.** P. 707

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
(Amber)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system.	• **Comes on while driving** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability.
		• Comes on if there is a problem with the electric parking brake system and/or the automatic brake hold system.	• **Stays on constantly** - Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.
BRAKE HOLD	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	• Comes on when the automatic brake hold system is on.	➔ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 561
	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	• Comes on when the automatic brake hold is activated.	➔ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 561
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	• Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems. • Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected.	➔ **If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks** P. 704
	Charging System Indicator	• Comes on when there is a problem with the charging system.	• Stop in a safe place and contact a dealer immediately. ➔ **Checking the Battery** P. 642 ➔ **If the Charging System Indicator Comes On** P. 704

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Transmission System Indicator*	• Blinks if the transmission system has a problem.	• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.
M 2	**M** (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator*/Shift Indicator*	• Comes on when the 7-speed manual shift mode is applied.	➔ **7-Speed Manual Shift Mode** P. 407
D	Shift Position Indicator*	• Indicates the current shift position.	➔ **Shifting** P. 405
6	Gear Position Indicator*	• Indicates 1st to 6th gear position and N.	• If you shift gears very slowly, a different gear position may be displayed for a moment. ➔ **Shifting** P. 410 • When the power mode is turned on, N is not displayed until it is shifted into R or 1st to 6th gear position. • 1st to 6th gear positions are not displayed when the vehicle is stopped. • The display can be turned ON/OFF in customized features in the audio/information screen. ➔ **Customized Features** P. 313

 * Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Shift Up Indicator*	• Comes on when shifting up is recommended.	➡ **Shift Up/Down Indicators** P. 412
	Shift Down Indicator*	• Comes on when shifting down is recommended.	➡ **Shift Up/Down Indicators** P. 412
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	• Comes on if you are not wearing a seat belt when you set the power mode to ON. • If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later. • Comes on for a while when the rear seat belt is unfastened while the power mode in ON. • Blinks while driving if you and/or any passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals.	• The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the passengers fasten their seat belts. • **Stays on after you and/or the passengers have fastened the seat belt(s)** - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 45
	Low Fuel Indicator	• Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 7.0 Litres left).	• **Comes on** - Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible.
		• Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge.	• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Anti-lock Brake System (**ABS**) Indicator	• Comes on if there is a problem with the ABS.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function. ➡ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 567

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	• Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected: - Supplemental Restraint System - Side airbag system - Side curtain airbag system - Seat belt tensioner	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Low Temperature Indicator*	• Comes on when the engine coolant temperature is low.	• If the indicator stays on after the engine has reached normal operating temperature, there may be a problem with the temperature sensors. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	• Blinks when VSA is active.	—
		• Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA system, brake assist system, hill start assist system, starting assist brake function*, or agile handling assist.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System** P. 444 ➡ **Hill start assist system** P. 399
		• Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

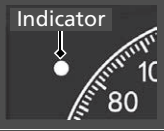
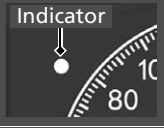
 * Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
OFF	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) **OFF** Indicator	• Comes on when you partially disable VSA.	➔ **VSA On and Off** P. 445
		Models with B-type meter • Comes on when you press and hold the (VSA **OFF**) button while **+R** mode is selected.	➔ **When in +R Drive mode** P. 446
		Models with A-type meter • Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	• Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • **Do not drive displays on the driver information interface** - Immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer. ➔ **If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On** P. 706
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	• Blinks when you operate the turn signal lever. • Blinks along with all turn signals when you press the hazard warning button.	• **Does not blink or blinks rapidly** ➔ **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 625
		Models with A-type meter • Blinks along with all turn signals when you depress the brake pedal while the high speed driving.	➔ **Emergency Stop Signal** P. 569
	Lights On Indicator	• Comes on when the position, tail, and other external lights are on.	➔ **Lights** P. 208

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	High Beam Indicator	• Comes on when the high beam headlights are on.	—
	Auto High-Beam Indicator	• Comes on when all the operating conditions of the auto high-beam are met.	**Auto High-Beam** P. 214
	Front Fog Light Indicator*	• Comes on when the front fog lights are on.	**Front Fog Lights*** P. 212
	Rear Fog Light Indicator*	• Comes on when the rear fog light is on.	**Front Fog Lights*** P. 212

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
Models with A-type meter  Models with B-type meter 	Immobilizer System Indicator	• Blinks if the immobilizer system cannot recognise the key information.	• **Blinks** - You cannot start the engine. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, then select the ON mode again. • **Repeatedly blinks** - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. • Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur.
Models with A-type meter  Models with B-type meter 	Security System Alarm Indicator	• Blinks when the security system alarm has been set.	➔ **Security System Alarm** P. 202

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
A OFF	Auto Idle Stop **OFF** Indicator*	• Comes on when the Auto Idle Stop system has been turned off by the Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button.	➡ **Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF** P. 416
A	Auto Idle Stop System Indicator (Amber)*	• Blinks if there is a problem with the Auto Idle Stop system.	• **Blinks** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
A	Auto Idle Stop Indicator (Green)*	• Comes on when Auto Idle Stop is in operation. The engine automatically shuts off.	➡ **Auto Idle Stop*** P. 414

 * Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Auto Idle Stop Suspend Indicator*	• Comes on while Auto Idle Stop is temporarily suspended in the following situations.	—
		- Brake pedal is not fully pressed	• Depress the brake pedal firmly.
		- The transmission is in a position other than D	➔ **Auto Idle Stop*** P. 414
		- System charging is prioritised	
		- Climate control system is prioritised	
		- Engine coolant temperature is not in operating range	
		- **SPORT** mode is selected.	➔ **Auto Idle Stop*** P. 414 ➔ **Drive Mode Switch** P. 421
		- The battery temperature is too low. - Auto Idle Stop does not activate for some reason.	➔ **Auto Idle Stop*** P. 414
		—	• If you press and hold the Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button, you can select whether to display the status messages or not.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
ECON	**ECON** Mode Indicator*	• Comes on when you set the drive mode to **ECON**.	➔ **Drive Mode Switch** P. 421
NORMAL	**NORMAL** Mode Indicator*	• Comes on when you set the driving mode to **NORMAL**.	➔ **Drive Mode Switch** P. 421
SPORT	**SPORT** Mode Indicator	• Comes on when you set the drive mode to **SPORT**.	Models with A-type meter • The ambient meter remains lit up in red as long as **SPORT** mode is selected. ➔ **Drive Mode Switch** P. 421, 424
INDIVIDUAL	**INDIVIDUAL** Mode Indicator*	• Comes on when you set the drive mode to **INDIVIDUAL**.	➔ **Drive Mode Switch** P. 421
COMFORT	**COMFORT** Mode Indicator*	• Comes on when you set the drive mode to **COMFORT**.	➔ **Drive Mode Switch** P. 421
+R	**+R** Mode Indicator*	• Comes on when you set the drive mode to **+R**.	➔ **Drive Mode Switch** P. 421

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
ⓘ	System Message Indicator	• Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the driver information interface appears at the same time.	• Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the driver information interface. Take the appropriate action for the message. **Models with A-type meter** • While the indicator is on, press the (home) button, and select **Warnings** to see the message again. ➡ **Switching the Display** P. 140 • The driver information interface will not return to the normal screen unless the warning is cancelled, or the (home) button is pressed. **Models with B-type meter** • While the indicator is on, roll the right selector wheel to see the message again. ➡ **Switching the Display** P. 161 • The driver information interface will not return to the normal screen unless the warning is cancelled, or the right selector wheel is rolled.

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
LIM	Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (White/Green)*	• Lights up in white when you press the button. If a different indicator comes on, subsequently press the **LIM** button. • Lights up in green when the adjustable speed limiter is set.	➔ **Adjustable Speed Limiter*** P. 431
LIM	Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator (White/Green)*	• Lights up in white when you press the button. If a different indicator comes on, subsequently press the **LIM** button. • Lights up in green when you press the **RES/+/ SET/–** switch up or down.	➔ **Intelligent Speed Limiter*** P. 437

 * Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow* Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with ACC with Low Speed Follow*.	• **Comes on while driving** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Comes on if the ACC with Low Speed Follow* is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded. • ACC with Low Speed Follow* has been automatically cancelled.	• Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. ➡ **Load Limit** P. 395 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow* Indicator (White/Green)	Australian and New Zealand models with 2.0 L engine • Lights up in white when you press the button. If a different indicator comes on, subsequently press the **LIM** button. Except Australian and New Zealand models with 2.0 L engine • Lights up in white when you press the button. All models • Lights up in green when you press the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up or down.	➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*** P. 473 ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*** P. 490

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded.	• Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. ➡ **Load Limit** P. 395 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White/Green)	• Lights up in white when you press the LKAS button. • Lights up in green when the LKAS is in operation.	➡ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 508
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Interval Indicator*	• Comes on when Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) indicator comes on.	• Each time you press the interval button, the following interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through **Furthest***1/**Extra long***2, **Far***1/**Long***2, **Mid***1/**Middle***2, and **Nearest***1/**Short***2 following intervals. ➡ **To Set or Change Following-interval** P. 485

*1:Philippine models
*2:Except Philippine models

 * Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Road Departure Mitigation Ready to Assist Indicator*	• Comes on when all activation conditions for the Road Departure Mitigation system are satisfied and lane markers are detected.	**Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 530
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)*	• Comes on if there is a problem with the CMBS or it cannot be used temporarily due to issues such as dirt on the windscreen near the camera.	• The Safety Support Indicator (Amber) comes on at the same time. **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)** P. 132
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey)*	• Comes on when the CMBS is off.	**Safety Support** P. 152, 177
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)*	• Comes on if there is a problem with the Road Departure Mitigation System or it cannot be used temporarily due to issues such as dirt on the windscreen near the camera.	• The Safety Support Indicator (Amber) comes on at the same time. **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)** P. 132
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey)*	• Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation System is off.	**Safety Support** P. 152, 177

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator*	• Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation System steering assist is automatically turned off.	➔ **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 530
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on if there is a problem with the Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS, or blind spot information system*.	• **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Indicator may come on temporarily when the maximum permissible weight is exceeded.	• Make sure the total load is within the maximum permissible weight. ➔ **Load Limit** P. 395 • **Stays on constantly** - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
		• Comes on if the Road Departure Mitigation system and CMBS are deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected and then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Safety Support Indicator (Amber)	• Comes on when the Road Departure Mitigation system and/or CMBS shuts itself off.	• **Stays on** - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down. ➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 553
			• **Stays on** - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place and wipe the debris off with a soft cloth. • Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message are still displayed even after you have cleaned the area around the camera. ➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 553 • It may come on when the ambient conditions are dark, such as when driving in a tunnel, or at night, dawn, or dusk.
		Models with blind spot information system • Comes on when mud, snow, or ice accumulates in the vicinity of the blind spot information system sensor. • Comes on when the temperature of the blind spot information system sensor is high.	• **Comes on while driving** - Something may be interfering with the blind spot information system sensor. Check the vicinity of the blind spot information system sensor and remove any obstacles. • The system will return to normal when the temperature cools down. ➡ **Blind Spot Information System*** P. 449

* Not available on all models

Continued

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation
	Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)	• Lights up in green when the Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS and blind spot information system* are on. • Lights up in green and grey when the Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS or blind spot information system*, or any two of these systems are off. • Lights up in grey when the Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS, and blind spot information system* are off.	**Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off** P. 537 **Blind Spot Information System On and Off** P. 452 **CMBS On and Off** P. 464

* Not available on all models

Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, fuel gauge, and other related indicators. They are displayed when the power mode is in ON.

Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in km/h.

Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

Fuel Gauge

NOTICE

You should refuel when the reading approaches E. Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

The actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

Tachometer

Shows the number of engine revolutions per minute.

Tachometer

Models with A-type meter

You can turn the tachometer display on or off.

Customized Features P. 313

Models with B-type meter

The shift up alarm sounds when the tachometer reading approaches the red zone.

You can turn the shift up alarm feature on and off.

Customized Features P. 313

Models with A-type meter

Ambient Meter

Changes to green to indicate that the vehicle is being driven in a fuel efficient manner with SPORT mode off.

Continued

Models with B-type meter

■ Temperature Gauge

Displays the temperature of the engine coolant.

Models with A-type meter

■ Odometer

Shows the total number of kilometres that your vehicle has accumulated.

■ Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Celsius.
If the outside temperature has been below 3°C at the time you set the power mode to ON, the **Outside temperature low** message appears on the driver information interface.

■ Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading by up to ±3°C if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

Temperature Gauge

NOTICE
Driving with the temperature gauge reading in the upper zone can cause serious engine damage. Pull safely to the side of the road and allow engine temperature to return to normal.
➡ **Overheating** P. 699

Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h.

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilised.

Adjusting the outside temperature display

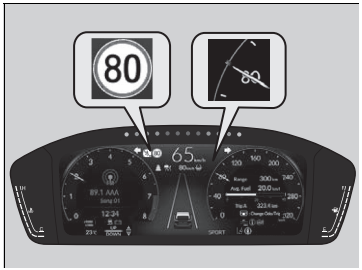
You can adjust the temperature reading.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 313

■ Traffic Sign Recognition System*

Shows certain detected traffic signs while driving.

The indicator blinks when the maximum speed of the traffic sign detected by the Traffic Sign Recognition System is exceeded.

➡ **Traffic Sign Recognition System*** P. 543



* Not available on all models

Continued

Current Mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow*, the LKAS, and Traffic Jam Assist*

Shows the current mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow*, LKAS, and Traffic Jam Assist*.

- **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*** P. 473
- **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*** P. 490
- **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 508
- **Traffic Jam Assist*** P. 521

Models with A-type meter

Clock

Shows the clock.

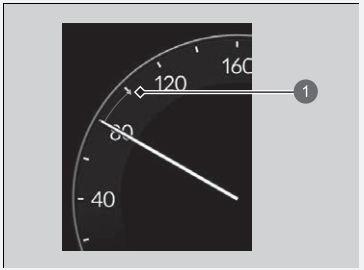
Rev Indicators*

Light up from outside to centre according to engine speed.

Current Mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow*, the LKAS, and Traffic Jam Assist*

Models with B-type meter

If the gauge design is set to **Round** or **Bar**, when you set speed for ACC, a set speed mark will be displayed on the speedometer.



Clock

You can adjust the time manually and change the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

- **Clock** P. 182

Rev Indicators*

You can turn the rev indicators on and off.

- **Customized Features** P. 313

* Not available on all models

Models with B-type meter

Vehicle Information

When using the **+R** gauge, the following vehicle information can be displayed.

➡ **Honda LogR*** P. 363

- **Water Temp.**
- **Oil Temp.**
- **Oil Pressure**
- **Ext. Air Temp.**
- **Intake Air Temp.**
- **Boost Pressure**
- **Steering Angle**
- **Accel. Ped. Pos.**
- **Brake Pressure**
- **Clutch Ped. Pos.**
- **Yaw Rate**
- **Atmos. Pressure**

Vehicle Information

Up to 6 items can be selected and displayed at once.

➡ **Honda LogR*** P. 363

You can set a limit for **Water Temp.** and **Oil Temp.**. When the limit is reached, the display will turn amber.

➡ **Honda LogR*** P. 363

When the ACC or LKAS are turned on, vehicle information is not displayed.

* Not available on all models

Driver Information Interface (A-type Meter)

The driver information interface shows information such as the estimated travelable distance and fuel economy of the vehicle. It also displays messages such as warnings and other helpful information.
When a warning message displays, please check the message and contact a dealer to have the vehicle inspected if necessary. Please refer to the pages below if the **Engine oil pressure low** or **Engine temperature too hot** message is displayed.

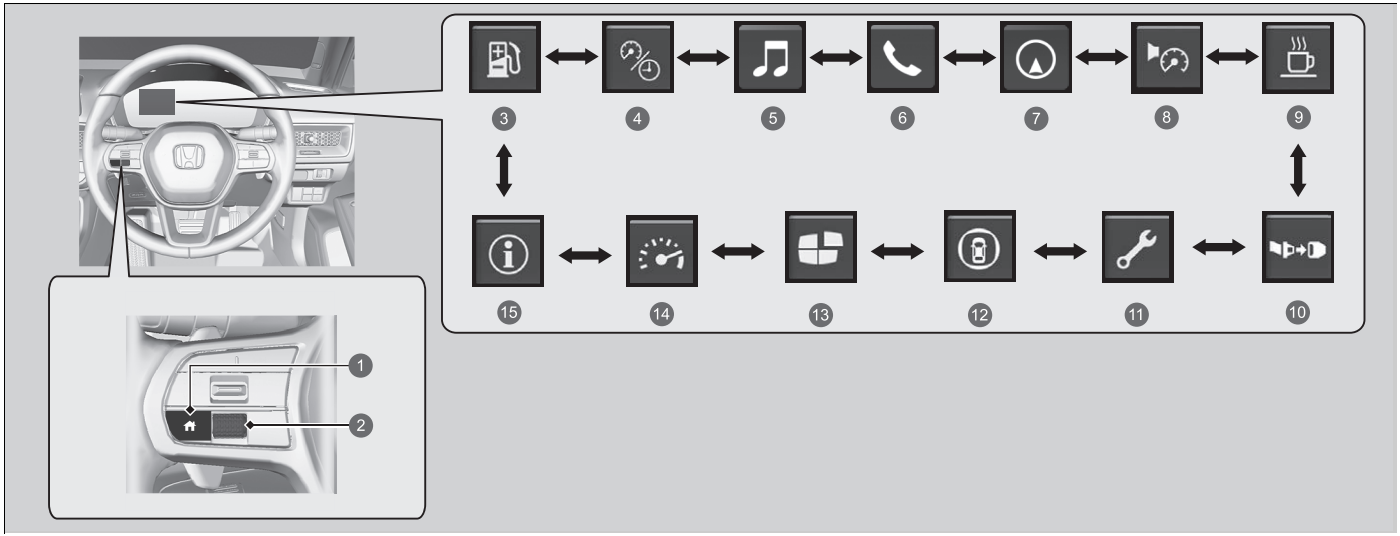
➡ **If the Engine oil pressure low Warning Appears** P. 703
➡ **Overheating** P. 699

■ Switching the Display

Press the (home) button, then roll the left selector wheel to scroll to the content you want to see. Press the left selector wheel to see detailed information.

Switching the Display

You can add or delete the meter contents.
➡ **Customize Display** P. 153

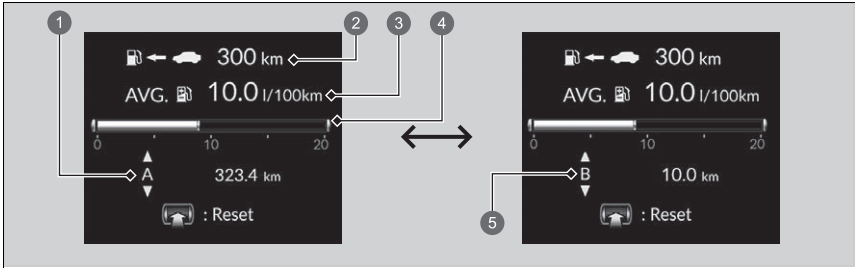


1. (Home) Button
2. Left Selector Wheel
3. **Range & fuel** P. 142
4. **Speed & time** P. 144
5. **Audio** P. 145
6. **Phone** P. 145
7. **Navigation** P. 145
8. **Speed alarm** P. 146
9. **Driver attention** P. 147
10. **Seat belts** P. 151
11. **Maintenance** P. 151
12. **Safety support** P. 152
13. **Customize display** P. 153
14. **No content** P. 154
15. **Information** P. 154

Continued

Range/Fuel/Trip Meter

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



1. Trip Meter A
2. Range
3. Average Fuel Economy
4. Instant Fuel Economy
5. Trip Meter B

■ Trip meter

Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

Resetting a trip meter

To reset the trip meter, display it, press the left selector wheel and then select **Reset**.

▶ The trip meter is reset to 0.0.

■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This estimated distance is based on the vehicle's current fuel economy.

■ Average fuel economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in l/100 km.
The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

■ Instant fuel economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in l/100 km.

Range

The driving range displayed is only an estimate and may differ to the actual distance the vehicle can travel.

Average fuel economy

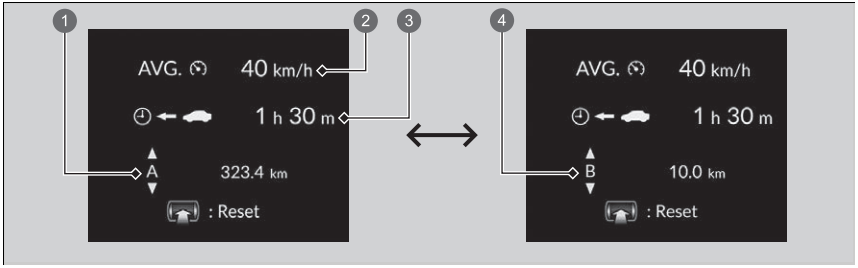
You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 313

Continued

■ Speed/Time/Trip Meter

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip meter A and trip meter B.



1. Trip Meter A
2. Average Speed
3. Elapsed Time
4. Trip Meter B

■ Trip meter

➡ **Trip meter** P. 143

■ Average speed

Shows the average speed in km/h since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

■ Elapsed time

Shows the time elapsed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

Average speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 313

Elapsed time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 313

Audio

Shows the current audio information.

➡ **Basic Operation** P. 262

Phone

Shows the current phone information.

➡ **Hands-Free Telephone System** P. 332

Navigation

Compass

Shows the compass screen.

Turn-by-Turn Directions

When driving guidance is provided by the navigation system, Android Auto or Apple CarPlay, turn-by-turn directions to your destination appear.

➡ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**
➡ **Android Auto™** P. 309
➡ **Apple CarPlay** P. 305

Navigation

You can select whether to have the turn-by-turn display come on or not during the route guidance.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 313

When the compass or turn-by-turn directions are displayed, you can control some navigation system functions on the driver information interface by scrolling the left selector wheel.

➡ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

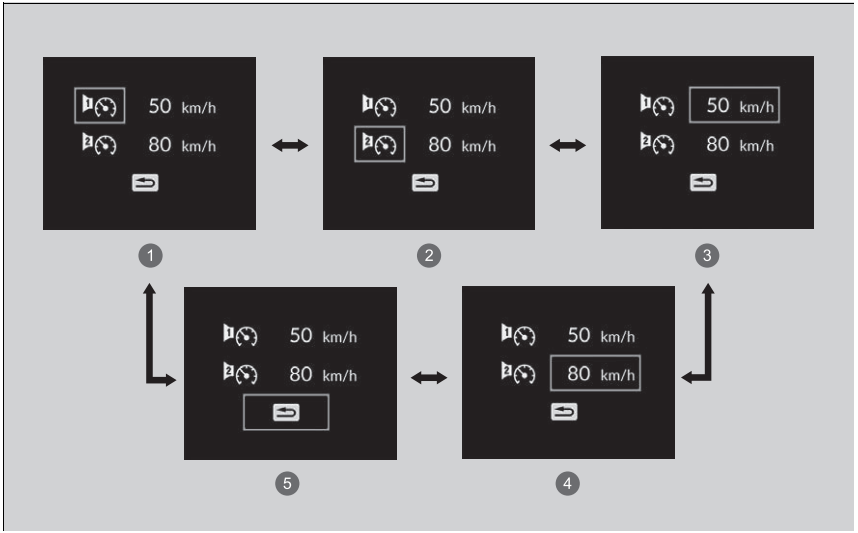
Turn-by-turn directions may not be available for all apps.

Continued

Speed Alarm

Sets the speed alarm on and changes the speed alarm setting.

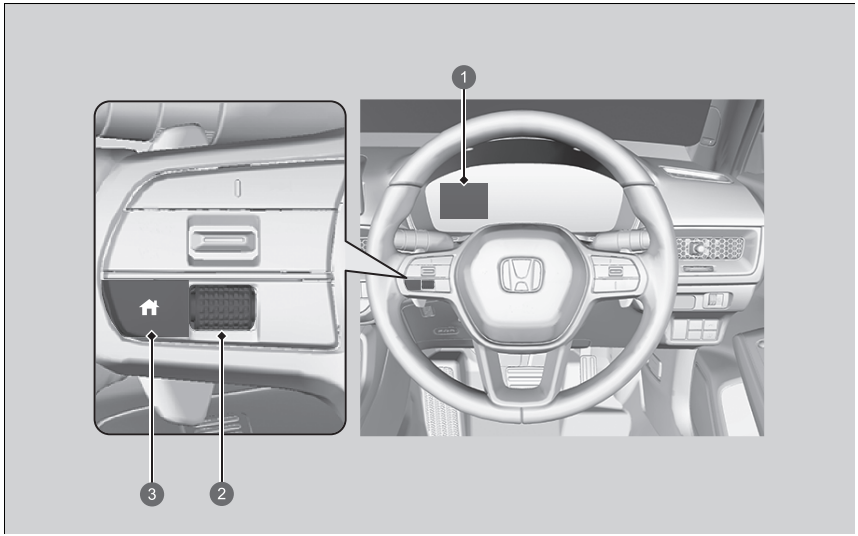
Roll the left selector wheel, the speed alarm setting changes as follows:



❶ Speed Alarm 1 On/Off*1
❷ Speed Alarm 2 On/Off*1
❸ Speed Alarm 1 Speed Setting (50 km/h*1)
❹ Speed Alarm 2 Speed Setting (80 km/h*1)
❺ Back
*1:Default Setting

Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor analyses steering inputs to determine if the vehicle is being driven in a manner consistent with drowsy or inattentive driving. If it determines that the vehicle is being driven in such a manner, it will display the degree of the driver's attention on the driver information interface.

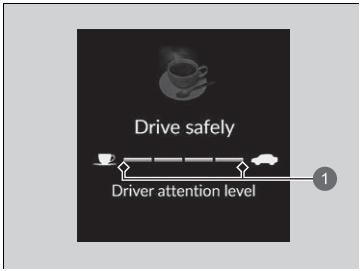


1. Driver Information Interface
2. Left Selector Wheel
3. (Home) Button

Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor cannot always detect if the driver is tired or inattentive.
Regardless of the system's feedback, if you are feeling tired, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.

Continued



When you select **Driver attention** on the driver information interface, bars on it light up in white to indicate the degree of the driver's attention.

➡ **Switching the Display** P. 140

1 Level

If two bars light up, the **Driver attention level low** message will appear.

If one bar lights up, the **Driver attention level low. Take a rest** message will appear, a beep will sound, and the steering wheel will vibrate.
If this message appears, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.
The message will disappear when the left selector wheel is pressed or when the system has determined that the driver is driving normally.
If the driver does not take a break and the monitor continues to detect that the driver is very tired, the message will appear again after approximately 15 minutes, accompanied by a beep and steering wheel vibrations.
The message does not appear when the travelling time is 30 minutes or less.

Continued

■ The Driver Attention Monitor resets when:

- The engine is turned off.
- The driver unfastens the seat belt and opens the door while the vehicle is stopped.

■ For the Driver Attention Monitor to function:

- The vehicle must be travelling above 40 km/h.
- The electric power steering (EPS) system indicator must be off.

■ Depending on driving conditions or other factors, the Driver Attention Monitor may not function in the following circumstances:

- The steering assist function of the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) is active.
  ➡ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 508
- The condition of the road is poor; e.g., the surface is unpaved or bumpy.
- It is windy.
- The driver is frequently operating the vehicle in an assertive manner, such as changing lanes or accelerating.

■ Customizing

You can change the Driver Attention Monitor settings. Select **Tactile and audible alert**, **Tactile alert only**, or **OFF**.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 313

For the Driver Attention Monitor to function:

The bars on the driver information interface remain greyed out unless the Driver Attention Monitor is functioning.

Seat Belts

Occurs, under specified conditions, when seat belts are latched or unlatched.

➡ **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 45

Maintenance

Shows the oil monitor system.

➡ **Oil Monitor System** P. 593

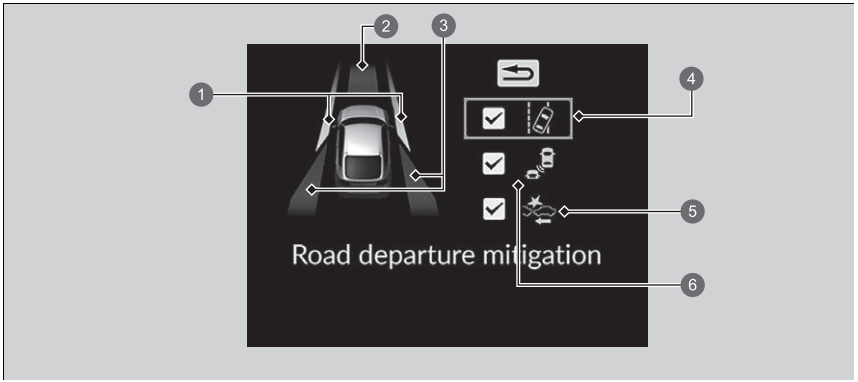
Continued

Safety Support

Indicates the status of the Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS, and blind spot information system such as On, Off, or Failure, by colour and letters.

The following colours indicate the status of any of the above-mentioned systems:

- Green: The system is on.
- Grey: The system is off.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.



1. Area Info for Road Departure Mitigation System
2. Area Info for CMBS
3. Area Info for Blind Spot Information System
4. Road Departure Mitigation System Icon and Status Info
5. CMBS Icon and Status Info
6. Blind Spot Information System Icon and Status Info

Safety Support

If a system is indicated by the colour amber, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

To turn on or off each system, first rotate the left selector wheel to switch displays. From the next display you can select which system to turn on or off.

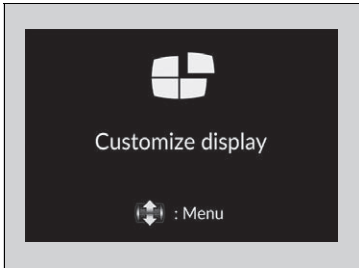
➔ **Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off** P. 537
➔ **Blind Spot Information System On and Off** P. 452
➔ **CMBS On and Off** P. 464

You can also confirm the status of each function by the colour of indicator.

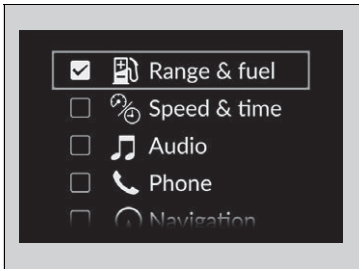
➔ **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)** P. 133
➔ **Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)** P. 134

Customize Display

You can choose which icons to display on the home screen.



1. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select **Customize display**, then press the left selector wheel.
2. Roll the left selector wheel.



3. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll between icons, then press the left selector wheel to check or uncheck them.

Customize Display

Icons that are grey cannot be removed from the home screen.

When you customize settings, shift to P.

Continued

No Content

Tachometer P. 135

Information

You can check if there are any active warning messages.

No Content

The tachometer can be turned on and off using the audio/information screen.

Customized Features P. 313

Even if you have turned off the tachometer using the audio/information screen, if **No content** is selected on the driver information interface, it will change to a tachometer-only display.

Switching the Display P. 161

Information

If there are multiple warnings or informations, you can roll the left selector wheel to see other warnings.

Driver Information Interface Left Side Area (B-type-Meter)

Shows the current mode for audio and phone information, etc.

➔ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 265
➔ **Hands-Free Telephone System** P. 332

■ Clock

Shows the clock.

Clock

You can adjust the time manually and change the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

➔ **Clock** P. 182

You can choose whether the clock is displayed on the driver information interface.

➔ **Customize Display** P. 178

Continued

■ Stopwatch

Measures the lap time, and displays the previously measured times and the fastest lap time.

■ Measuring LAP Time

1. Change the display content on the left side area to **Stopwatch**.
   ➡ **Select the display content on the left side area** P. 159
2. Press the left selector wheel to display the stopwatch menu screen.
3. Select **Lap Timer** and press the left selector wheel to display the lap time measurement screen.
4. Press the left selector wheel to start measurement.
5. Press the left selector wheel to stop measurement.
   ▶ To measure the time per lap, roll the left selector wheel at the end of each lap.
   ▶ To return to the stopwatch menu screen, press and hold the left selector wheel.

Stopwatch

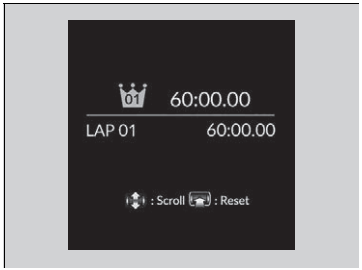
Be sure to use this measurement function only where and when it is safe to do so.

Lap time is displayed from 00:00.00 to 99:59.99.

A maximum of 20 lap times can be stored at a time.

When measuring lap time with Honda LogR, times are displayed on the driver information interface.
➡ **Honda LogR*** P. 363

* Not available on all models



■ Checking/Clearing history

To check or clear the history, select **History/ Reset** on the stopwatch menu screen and press the left selector wheel.

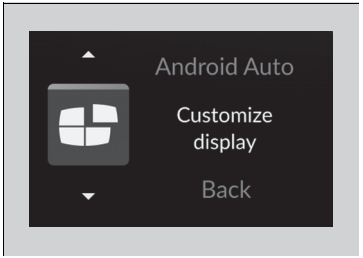
- ▶ To scroll through the lap times, roll the left selector wheel.
- ▶ To clear the history, press the left selector wheel on the stopwatch history screen while the lap time is not being measured, then select and press **Reset**.
- ▶ To return to the stopwatch menu screen, press and hold the left selector wheel.

Continued

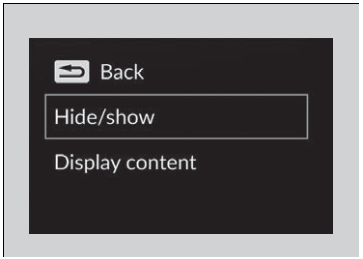
Customize Display

Arrange audio source on the left side area

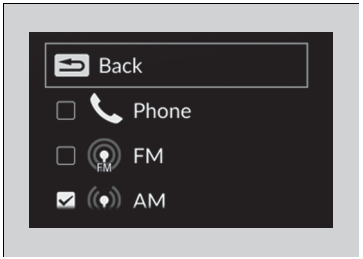
You can choose which sources to display on the audio source screen.



1. Roll the left selector wheel until **Customize display** is selected, then press the left selector wheel.



2. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select **Hide/show**, then press the left selector wheel.



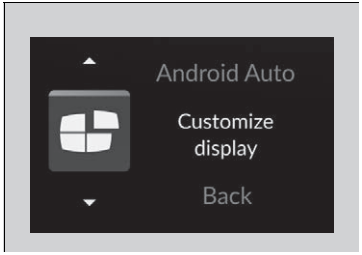
3. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll between audio sources, then press the left selector wheel to check or uncheck them.

Customize Display

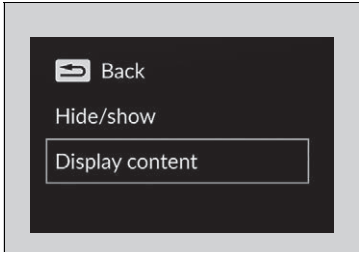
When you customize settings, set the parking brake.

■ Select the display content on the left side area

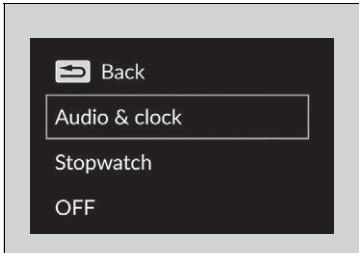
You can change the display content on the left side area. Select **Audio & clock**, **Stopwatch**, or **OFF**.



1. Roll the left selector wheel until **Customize display** is selected, then press the left selector wheel.



2. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select **Display content**, then press the left selector wheel.



3. Roll the left selector wheel to scroll to select your desired content, then press the left selector wheel.

Driver Information Interface Right Side Area (B-type-Meter)

The driver information interface shows information such as the estimated travelable distance and fuel economy of the vehicle. It also displays messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

When a warning message displays, please check the message and contact a dealer to have the vehicle inspected if necessary. Please refer to the pages below if the **Engine oil pressure low** or **Engine temperature too hot** message is displayed.

➡ **If the Engine oil pressure low Warning Appears** P. 703

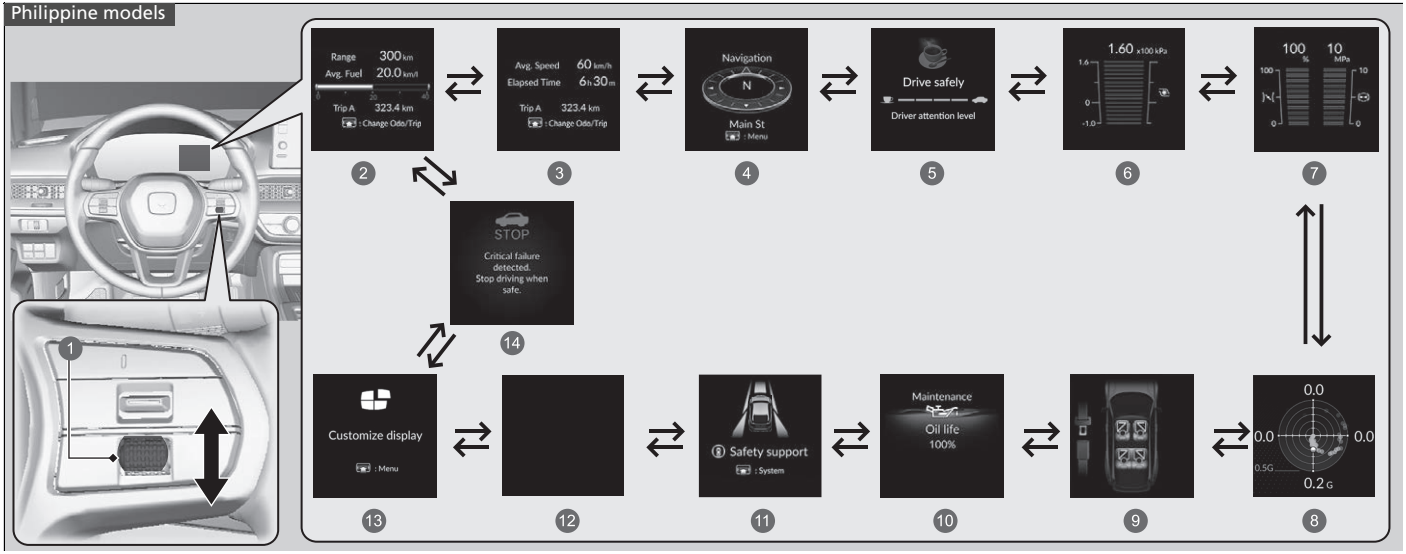
➡ **Overheating** P. 699

■ Switching the Display

Roll the right selector wheel to view different types of content.

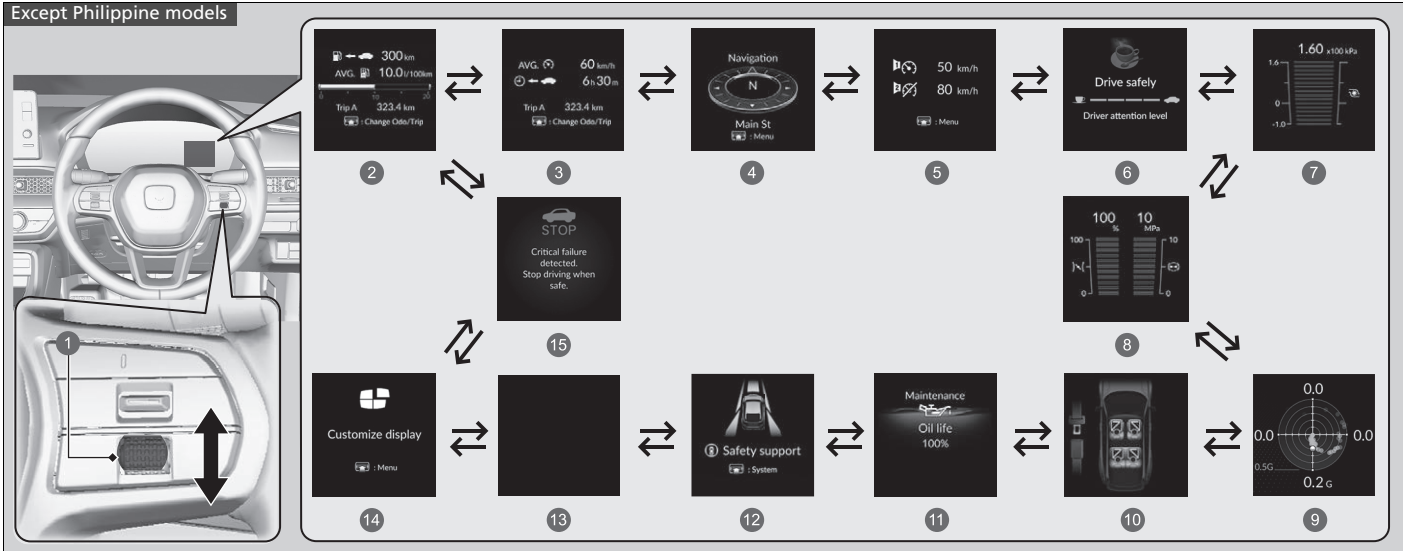
Switching the Display

You can add or delete the meter contents.
➡ **Customize Display** P. 178



1. Right Selector Wheel
2. Range/Fuel/Odometer/Trip Meter ➡ P. 163
3. Speed/Time/Odometer/Trip Meter ➡ P. 166
4. Navigation ➡ P. 168
5. Driver Attention Monitor ➡ P. 170
6. Turbo Gauge ➡ P. 174
7. Accelerator Position/Braking Pressure Meter ➡ P. 174
8. G-Meter ➡ P. 175
9. Seat Belts ➡ P. 176
10. Maintenance ➡ P. 176
11. Safety Support ➡ P. 177
12. No Content
13. Customize Display ➡ P. 178
14. Warnings Message ➡ P. 180

Continued

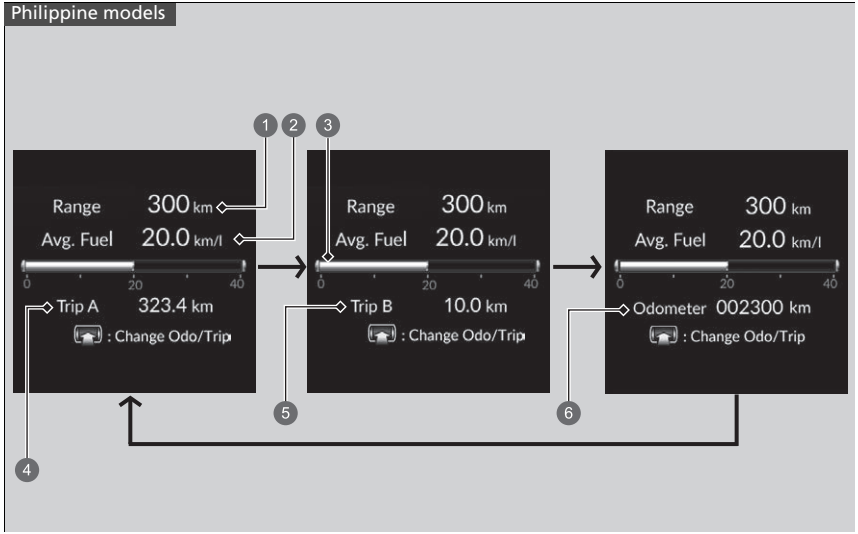


1. Right Selector Wheel
2. Range/Fuel/Odometer/Trip Meter ➔ P. 163
3. Speed/Time/Odometer/Trip Meter ➔ P. 166
4. Navigation ➔ P. 168
5. Speed Alarm* ➔ P. 169
6. Driver Attention Monitor ➔ P. 170
7. Turbo Gauge ➔ P. 174
8. Accelerator Position/Braking Pressure Meter ➔ P. 174
9. G-Meter ➔ P. 175
10. Seat Belts ➔ P. 176
11. Maintenance ➔ P. 176
12. Safety Support ➔ P. 177
13. No Content
14. Customize Display ➔ P. 178
15. Warnings Message ➔ P. 180

* Not available on all models

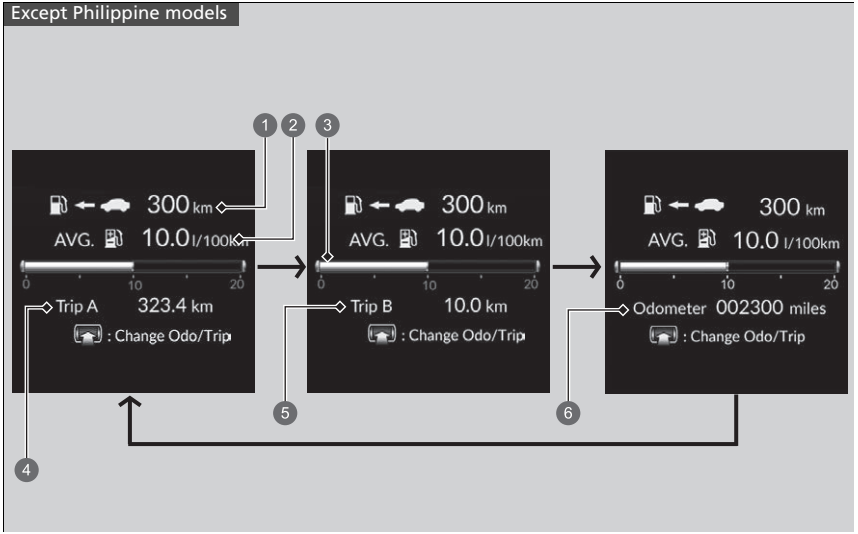
■ Range/Fuel/Odometer/Trip Meter

Press the right selector wheel to switch trip meter A, trip meter B, and odometer.



1. Range
2. Average Fuel Economy
3. Instant Fuel Economy
4. Trip Meter A
5. Trip Meter B
6. Odometer

Continued



1. Range
2. Average Fuel Economy
3. Instant Fuel Economy
4. Trip Meter A
5. Trip Meter B
6. Odometer

■ Odometer
Shows the total number of kilometres that your vehicle has accumulated.

■ Trip meter
Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

Resetting a trip meter
To reset the trip meter, display it, press and hold the right selector wheel and then select **Reset**.

▶ The trip meter is reset to 0.0.

■ Range
Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This estimated distance is based on the vehicle's current fuel economy.

■ Average fuel economy
Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in km/l* or l/100 km*. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

■ Instant fuel economy
Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in km/l* or l/100 km*.

Range

The driving range displayed is only an estimate and may differ to the actual distance the vehicle can travel.

Average fuel economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

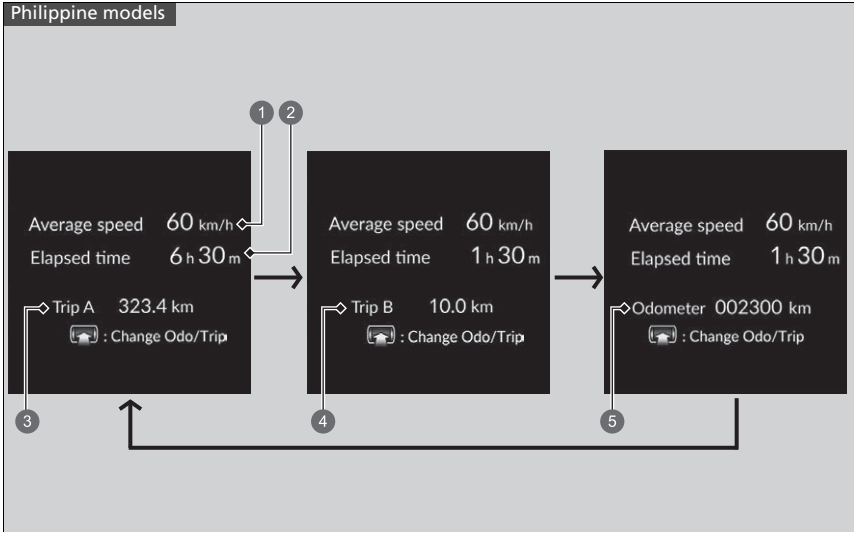
➔ **Customized Features** P. 313

* Not available on all models

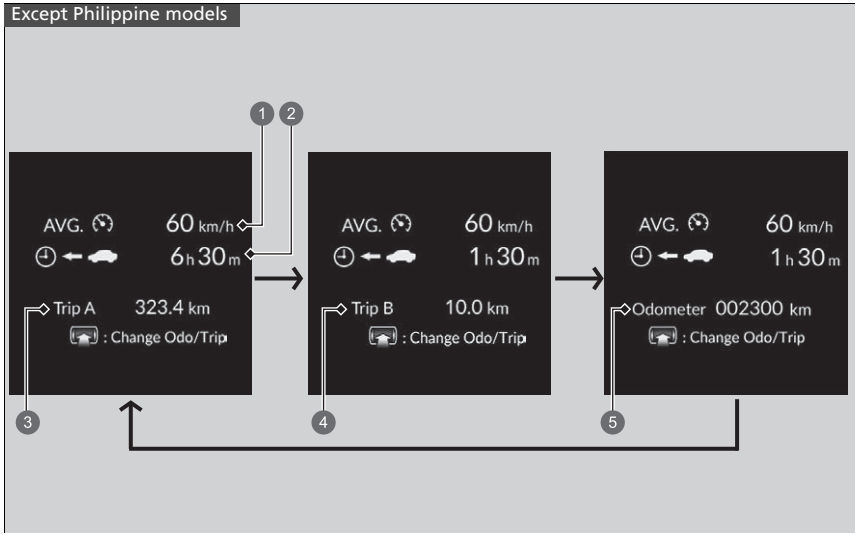
Continued

Speed/Time/Odometer/Trip Meter

Press the right selector wheel to switch trip meter A, trip meter B, and odometer.



1. Average Speed
2. Elapsed Time
3. Trip Meter A
4. Trip Meter B
5. Odometer



1. Average Speed
2. Elapsed Time
3. Trip Meter A
4. Trip Meter B
5. Odometer

Continued

■ Odometer

➡ **Odometer** P. 168

■ Trip meter

➡ **Trip meter** P. 168

■ Average speed

Shows the average speed in km/h since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

■ Elapsed time

Shows the time elapsed since Trip A or Trip B was reset.

■ Navigation

■ Compass

Shows the compass screen.

■ Turn-by-Turn Directions

When driving guidance is provided by the navigation system*, Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, turn-by-turn directions to your destination appear.

➡ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**
➡ **Android Auto™** P. 309
➡ **Apple CarPlay** P. 305

Average speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 313

Elapsed time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 313

Navigation

You can select whether to have the turn-by-turn display come on or not during the route guidance.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 313

Turn-by-turn directions may not be available for all apps.

Models with navigation system

When the compass or turn-by-turn directions are displayed, you can control some navigation system functions on the driver information interface by pressing the right selector wheel.

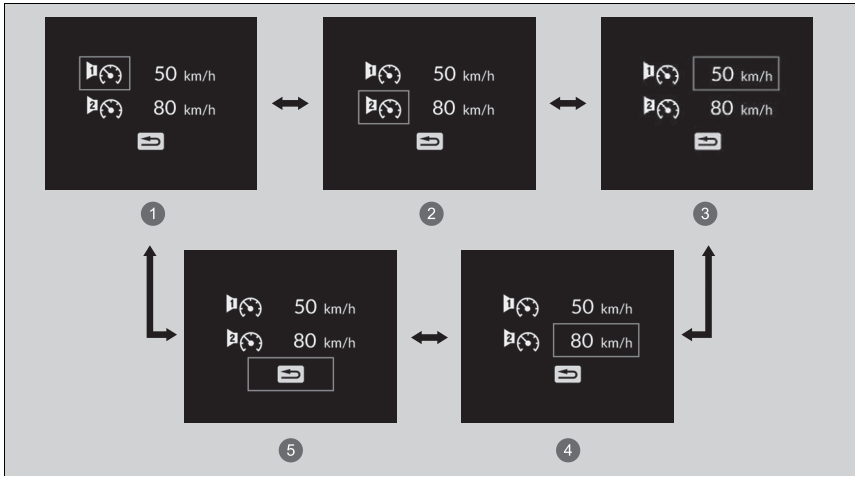
➡ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

* Not available on all models

■ Speed Alarm*

Sets the speed alarm on and changes the speed alarm setting.

Press the right selector wheel to display the setting screen, then roll it, the speed alarm setting changes as follows:



1. Speed Alarm 1 On/Off*1
2. Speed Alarm 2 On/Off*1
3. Speed Alarm 1 Speed Setting (50 km/h*1)
4. Speed Alarm 2 Speed Setting (80 km/h*1)
5. Back

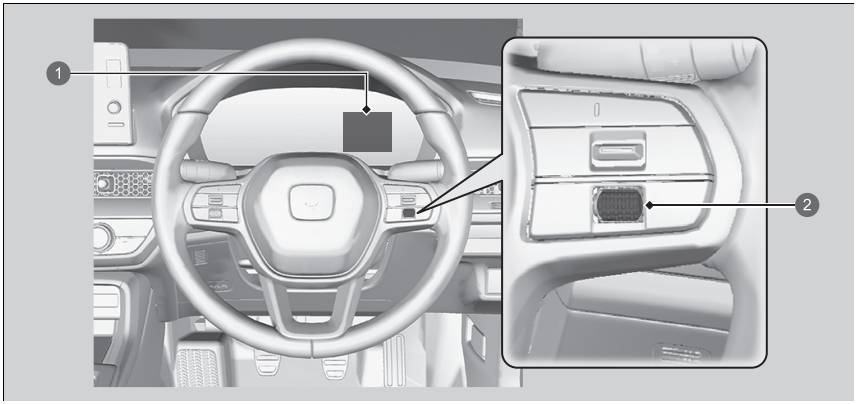
*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

Driver Attention Monitor

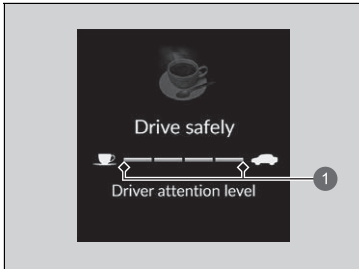
The Driver Attention Monitor analyses steering inputs to determine if the vehicle is being driven in a manner consistent with drowsy or inattentive driving. If it determines that the vehicle is being driven in such a manner, it will display the degree of the driver's attention on the driver information interface.



1. Driver Information Interface
2. Right Selector Wheel

Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor cannot always detect if the driver is tired or inattentive.
Regardless of the system's feedback, if you are feeling tired, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.



When you select Driver Attention Monitor on the driver information interface, bars on it light up in white to indicate the degree of the driver's attention.

Switching the Display P. 161

❶ Level

If two bars light up, the **Driver attention level low** message will appear.

Continued

Philippine models

Except Philippine models

If one bar lights up, the **Driver attention level low. Time for a break**[*1]**/Driver attention level low. Take a rest**[*2]/ message will appear, a beep will sound, and the steering wheel will vibrate.
If this message appears, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.
The message will disappear when the left selector wheel is pressed or when the system has determined that the driver is driving normally.
If the driver does not take a break and the monitor continues to detect that the driver is very tired, the message will appear again after approximately 15 minutes, accompanied by a beep and steering wheel vibrations.
The message does not appear when the travelling time is 30 minutes or less.

*1: Philippine models
*2: Except Philippine models

■ **The Driver Attention Monitor resets when:**
- The engine is turned off.
- The driver unfastens the seat belt and opens the door while the vehicle is stopped.

■ **For the Driver Attention Monitor to function:**
- The vehicle must be travelling above 40 km/h.
- The electric power steering (EPS) system indicator must be off.

■ **Depending on driving conditions or other factors, the Driver Attention Monitor may not function in the following circumstances:**
- The steering assist function of the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) is active.
  ➡ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 508
- The condition of the road is poor; e.g., the surface is unpaved or bumpy.
- It is windy.
- The driver is frequently operating the vehicle in an assertive manner, such as changing lanes or accelerating.

■ **Customizing**

You can change the Driver Attention Monitor settings. Select **Tactile and audible alert**, **Tactile Alert**[*1]/**Tactile alert only**[*2] or **OFF**.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 313

*1: Hong Kong, Macanese and Philippine models
*2: Except Hong Kong, Macanese and Philippine models

For the Driver Attention Monitor to function:

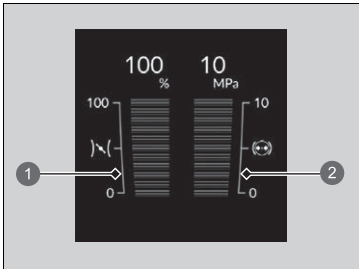
The bars on the driver information interface remain greyed out unless the Driver Attention Monitor is functioning.

Continued

■ Turbo Gauge

When the turbo is producing boost, this gauge indicates boost pressure is building.

■ Accelerator Position/Braking Pressure Meter



❶ Accelerator Position Meter
❷ Braking Pressure Meter

■ Accelerator Position Meter

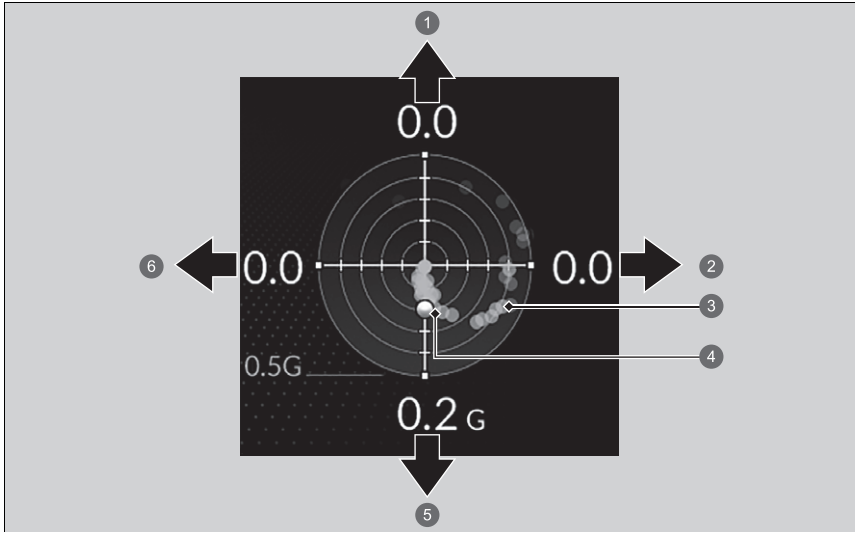
Displays the accelerator position in degrees of %.

■ Braking Pressure Meter

Displays the brake pressure in MPa when the brake is applied.

G-Meter

Displays the strength (G) and direction of the load that is applied to the vehicle during driving.



1. When decelerated while moving forward/When accelerated while reversing
2. When steering to the left
3. Lateral forces of the past three seconds (white)
4. Real-time lateral force (yellow)
5. When accelerated while moving forward/When decelerated while reversing
6. When steering to the right

G-Meter

You can change the maximum displayed strength (G).

➔ **Honda LogR*** P. 363

* Not available on all models

Continued

Seat Belts

Occurs, under specified conditions, when seat belts are latched or unlatched.

➔ **Seat Belt Reminder** P. 45

Maintenance

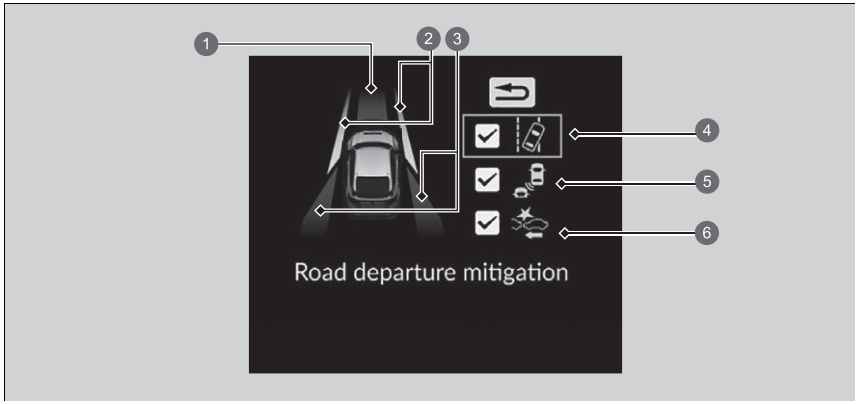
Show the oil monitor system.

➔ **Oil Monitor System** P. 593

Safety Support

Indicates the status of the Road Departure Mitigation system, CMBS and blind spot information system*, such as On, Off, or Failure, by colour and letters.

The following colours indicate the status of any of the above-mentioned systems:
- Green: The system is on.
- Grey: The system is off.
- Amber: There is a problem with the system.



1. Area Info for CMBS
2. Area Info for Road Departure Mitigation System
3. Area Info for Bind Spot Information System*
4. Road Departure Mitigation System Icon and Status Info
5. Bind Spot Information System Icon and Status Info*
6. CMBS Icon and Status Info

* Not available on all models

Continued

Safety Support

If a system is indicated by the colour amber, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

To turn on or off each system, first press the right selector wheel to switch displays. From the next display you can select which system to turn on or off.

- **Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off** P. 537
- **CMBS On and Off** P. 464
- **Blind Spot Information System On and Off** P. 452

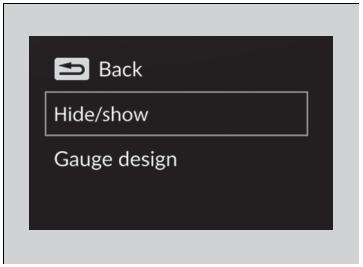
You can also confirm the status of each function by the colour of the indicator.

- **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Amber)*** P. 131
- **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator (Grey)*** P. 131
- **Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Amber)*** P. 131
- **Road Departure Mitigation Indicator (Grey)*** P. 131
- **Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator*** P. 132
- **Safety Support Indicator (Amber)** P. 133
- **Safety Support Indicator (Green/Grey)** P. 134

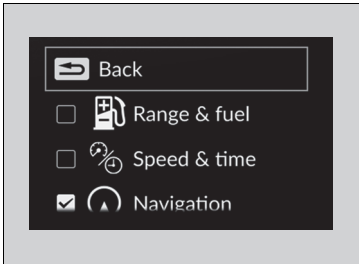
Customize Display

Arrange content on the right side area

You can choose which contents to display on the right side area.



1. Press the right selector wheel when you select the **Customize display** on the driver information interface.
2. Roll the right selector wheel to scroll to select **Hide/show**, then press the right selector wheel.



3. Roll the right selector wheel to scroll between contents, then press the right selector wheel to check or uncheck them.

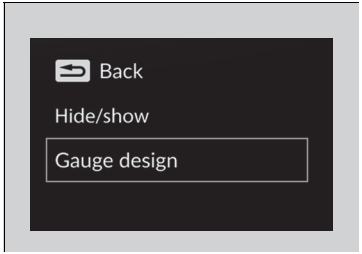
Arrange content on the right side area

Contents that are grey cannot be removed from the right side area.

When you customize settings, set the parking brake.

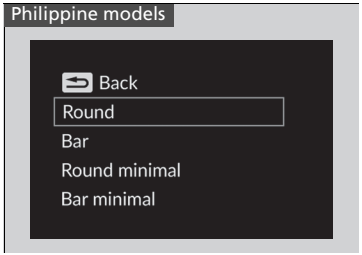
■ Change gauge design

You can change the gauge design to a round or bar design.

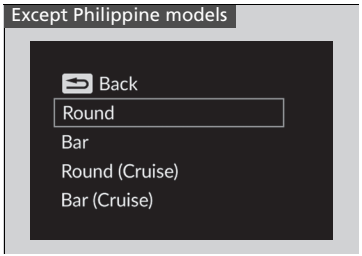


1. Press the right selector wheel when you select the **Customize display** on the driver information interface.
2. Roll the right selector wheel to scroll to select **Gauge design**, then press the right selector wheel.

Philippine models



Except Philippine models



3. Roll the right selector wheel to scroll to select your desired settings, then press the right selector wheel.

*1: Philippine models
*2: Except Philippine models

Change gauge design

When using the **Round minimal***1/**Round (Cruise)***2 or **Bar minimal***1/**Bar (Cruise)***2 gauge design, a simplified display is used when ACC is in operation.

The **+R** gauge design cannot be changed.

Continued

■ Warnings*1/Informations*2

You can check if there are any active warning messages.

Warnings*1/Informations*2

If there are multiple warnings or informations, you can roll the right selector wheel to see other warnings.

*1: Philippine models
*2: Except Philippine models

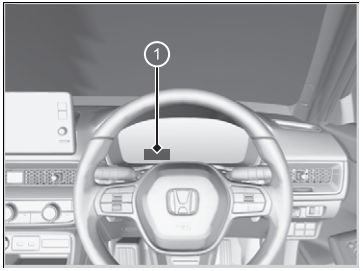
Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.

Clock 182
Locking and Unlocking the Doors
Key 183
Low Keyless Remote/Card Key* Signal Strength 186
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside 187
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside 195
Childproof Door Locks 197
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking* 198
Hatch 199
Security System 201
Windows 203
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel
ENGINE START/STOP Button 205
Lights 208
Auto High-Beam 214
Wipers and Washers 217
Brightness Control 220
Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror* Button 222
Adjusting the Steering Wheel 223
Mirrors
Interior Rearview Mirror 224
Power Door Mirrors 225
Seats 226
Interior Convenience Items
Interior Lights 236
Storage Items 237
Other Interior Convenience Items 245
Climate Control System 250

* Not available on all models

Adjusting the Clock



1 Clock

You can adjust the time manually or change the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock on the by using the audio/information screen.

Customized Features P. 313

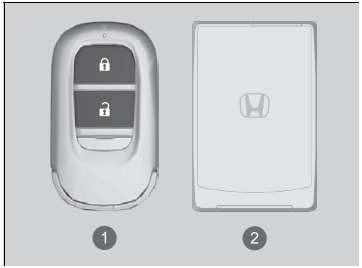
Adjusting the Clock

The clock is automatically updated through the audio system.

The clock in the instrument panel also changes when the audio/information screen clock is adjusted.

Key

This vehicle comes with the following key:



❶ Keyless Remote
❷ Card Key*

Use the keys to start and stop the engine, and lock and unlock all the doors, hatch, and fuel fill door.

Key

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

Immobilizer System P. 201

Follow the advice below to prevent damage to the keys:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids, dust and sand.
- Do not take the keys apart except for replacing the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the engine may not start, and the remote transmitter may not work.

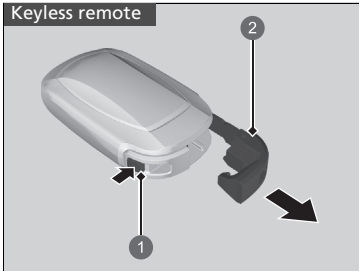
If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Continued

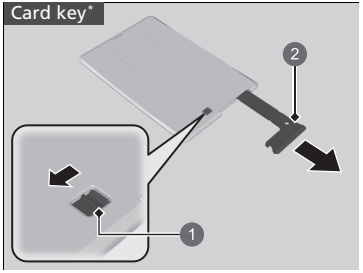
■ Built-in Key

The built-in key can be used to unlock the doors when the keyless remote or card key* battery becomes weak and the power door unlock operation is disabled.



To remove the built-in key, push the release button and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the keyless remote until it clicks.

❶ Release Button
❷ Built-in Key

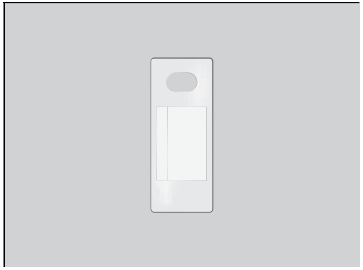


To remove the built-in key, slide the release knob and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the card key until it clicks.

❶ Release Knob
❷ Built-in Key

* Not available on all models

Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle.
If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot start the engine, contact a dealer.

Low Keyless Remote/Card Key* Signal Strength

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the keyless remote or card key* to start the engine, lock and unlock all the doors, hatch and fuel fill door.

In the following cases, to starting the engine, locking/unlocking the doors, hatch and fuel fill door may be inhibited or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the keyless remote or card key* together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, mobile phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the keyless remote or card key*.
- The card key* is in a cover or case that blocks radio waves.

Low Keyless Remote/Card Key* Signal Strength

Communication between the keyless remote or card key* and the vehicle consumes the keyless remote or card key* battery.
Battery life is about 2*1 or 1.5*2 years, but this varies depending on regularity of use.
The battery is consumed whenever the keyless remote or card key* is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

Keyless remote

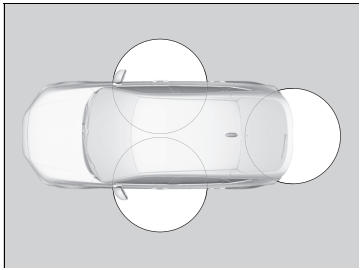
It is possible to reduce battery consumption by turning off radio wave reception. When you hold down the lock and unlock buttons at the same time for approximately three seconds, the LED will blink twice and radio wave reception will turn off.
If you press any button on the keyless remote once, it will begin receiving radio waves again.

*1: Keyless remote
*2: Card key

* Not available on all models

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

■ Using the Keyless Access System



When you carry the keyless remote or card key*, you can lock/unlock the doors, fuel fill door and hatch.
You can lock/unlock the doors, fuel fill door and hatch within a radius of about 80 cm of the outside door handle or hatch release button.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior light comes on when you unlock the doors and hatch.
No doors opened: The light fades out after 30 seconds.
Doors and hatch relocked: The light goes off immediately.
➡ **Interior Lights** P. 236

Using the Keyless Access System

If you do not open a door or the hatch within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the keyless access system, the doors and hatch will automatically relock.

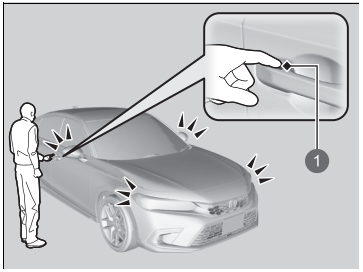
You can lock or unlock doors using the keyless access system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

The keyless access system will not lock the vehicle when a door or the hatch is open.

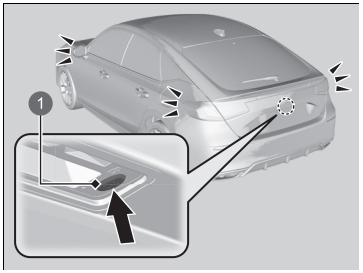
* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Locking the doors and hatch



1 Door Lock Sensor



1 Lock Button

Touch the door lock sensor on the front door or press the lock button on the hatch.

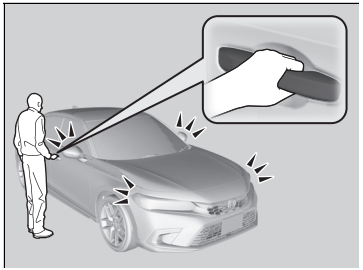
▶ Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all the doors and hatch lock; and the security system sets.

Using the Keyless Access System

- Do not leave the keyless remote or card key* in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote or card key*, you can lock/unlock the doors and the hatch while someone else with the remote or card key* is within range.
- The door may be unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the keyless remote or card key* is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle or touch a door lock sensor wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by unlocking or locking the doors.
- After locking the door, you have up to two seconds during which you can pull the door handle to confirm whether the door is locked. If you need to unlock the door immediately after locking it, wait at least two seconds before gripping the handle, otherwise the door will not unlock.
- The door may not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 80 cm radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors and the hatch with the keyless remote or card key* if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The keyless remote or card key* may not operate if it is too close to the door and door glass.

* Not available on all models

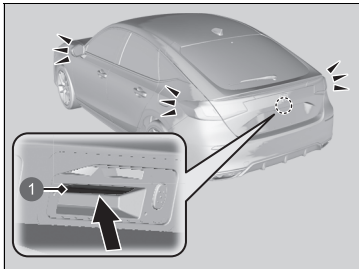
■ Unlocking the doors and hatch



Grab the front door handle:

▶ All doors, the hatch, and fuel fill door unlock.

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.



Press and hold the hatch release button.

▶ The hatch and all doors unlock.

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds twice.

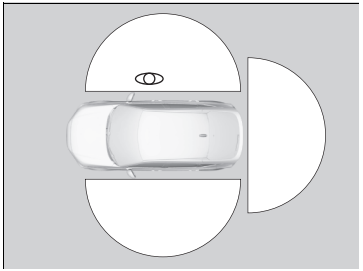
❶ Hatch Release Button

Using the Keyless Access System

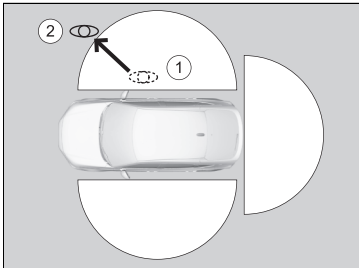
The light flash and beep settings can be customized using the audio/information screen.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 313

Continued



The activation range of the auto lock function is about 1.5 m



■ Locking the doors and hatch (Walk away auto lock)

When you walk away from the vehicle with all doors and hatch closed while carrying the keyless remote or card key*, the doors and hatch will automatically lock.

The auto lock function activates when all doors and hatch are closed, and the keyless remote or card key* is within about 1.5 m radius of the outside door handle or hatch release button.

Exit vehicle while carrying keyless remote or card key* and close door(s) and hatch.

1. While within about 1.5 m radius of the vehicle.
   ▶ The beeper sounds; the auto lock function will be activated.
2. Carry the keyless remote or card key* beyond about 1.5 m from the vehicle and remain outside this range for 2 or more seconds.
   ▶ Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all doors and hatch will then lock.

Locking the doors and hatch (Walk away auto lock)

The auto lock function is set to OFF as the factory default setting. The auto lock function can be set to ON using the audio/information screen.

If you set the auto lock function to ON using the audio/information screen, only the remote transmitter that was used to unlock the driver's door prior to the setting change can activate auto lock.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 313

After the auto lock function has been activated, when you stay within the locking/unlocking operation range, the indicator on the keyless remote will continue to flash until the doors are locked.

When you stay beside the vehicle within the operation range, the doors and hatch will automatically lock approximately 30 seconds after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds.

When you open a door or the hatch after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds, the auto lock function will be cancelled.

Under the following circumstances, the auto lock function will not activate:

- The keyless remote or card key* is inside the vehicle.
  ▶The beeper will not sound.
- The keyless remote or card key* is taken out of its operational range before all the doors and hatch are closed.
  ▶The beeper will sound.

 * Not available on all models

To temporarily deactivate the function:

1. Set the power mode to OFF.
2. Open the driver's door.
3. Using the master door lock switch, operate the lock as follows:
Lock → Unlock → Lock → Unlock.
▶ The beeper sounds, and the function is deactivated.

To restore the function:

- Set the power mode to ON.
- Lock the vehicle without using the auto lock function.
- With the keyless remote or card key* on you, move out of the auto lock function operation range.
- Open any door.

Locking the doors and hatch (Walk away auto lock)

The auto lock function does not operate when any of the following conditions are met.

- The keyless remote or card key* is inside the vehicle.
- A door, hatch or the bonnet is not closed.
- The power mode is set to any mode other than OFF.
- The keyless remote or card key* is not located within a radius of about 1.5 m from the vehicle when you get out of the vehicle and close the doors.

Auto lock function operation stop beeper

After the auto lock function has been activated, the auto lock operation stop beeper sounds for approximately two seconds in the following cases.

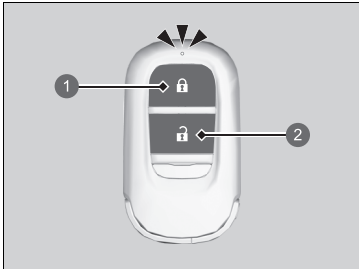
- The keyless remote or card key* is put inside the vehicle through a window.
- You are located too close to the vehicle.
- The keyless remote or card key* is put inside the hatch.

If the warning beeper sounds, check that you are carrying the keyless remote or card key*. Then, open/close a door and confirm the auto lock activation beeper sounds once.

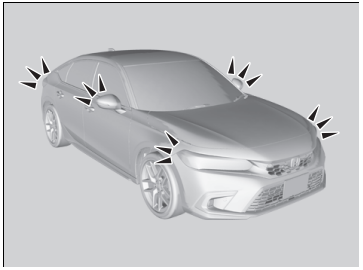
* Not available on all models

Continued

Using the Remote Transmitter



1 Lock Button
2 Unlock Button



Locking the doors and hatch

Press the lock button.

Once:

▶ Some exterior lights flash, all the doors, hatch, and fuel fill door lock, and the security system sets.

Twice (within five seconds after the first push):

▶ Some exterior lights flash, the beeper sounds, and verifies the security system is set.

Unlocking the doors and hatch

Press the unlock button.

▶ Some exterior lights flash twice, and all doors, hatch, and fuel fill door unlocks.

Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door or the hatch within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors and hatch will automatically relock.

You can lock or unlock doors using the remote transmitter only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

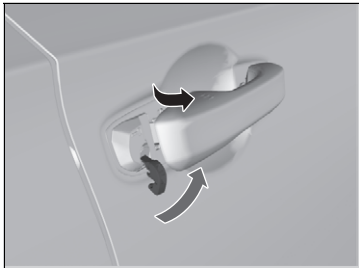
The remote will not lock the vehicle when a door or the hatch is open.

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.
If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

Replacing the Remote Battery P. 645

■ Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

If the unlock button of the keyless remote or card key* does not work, use the key instead. The keyhole is on the back of the door handle.



Insert the key into the key cylinder from below the handle and then turn it.

Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

When you unlock the driver's door with the key, all the other doors unlock at the same time.

If you unlock a door with the key while the security system is activated, the alarm will go off.

It can be locked without using the keyless remote or card key*.

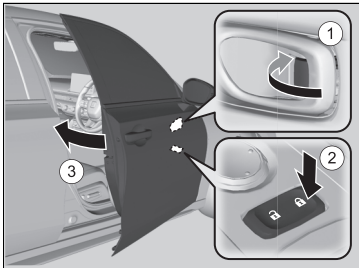
➡ **Locking a Door Without Using a Key** P. 194

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

If you do not have the key on you, or if for some reason you cannot lock a door using the key, you can lock the door without it.



■ Locking the driver's door

Push the lock tab forward ① or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction ②, then pull and hold the outside door handle ③. Close the door, then release the handle.

■ Locking the passenger's doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

■ Lockout prevention system

The doors and hatch cannot be locked when the keyless remote or card key* is inside the vehicle.

Locking a Door Without Using a Key

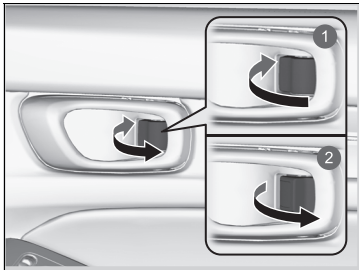
When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors and hatch lock at the same time.

Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

* Not available on all models

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

■ Using the Lock Tab



❶ To Lock
❷ To Unlock

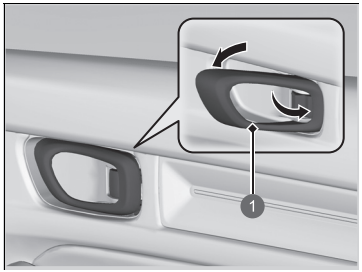
■ Locking a door

Push the lock tab forward.

■ Unlocking a door

Pull the lock tab rearward.

■ Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle



❶ Inner Handle

Except Vietnamese models

Pull the driver's door inner handle.

▶ The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

Vietnamese models

Pull the front door inner handle.

▶ The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

Using the Lock Tab

When you lock/unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors and the hatch lock/unlock at the same time.

Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle

Except Vietnamese models

The driver's door inner handle is designed to allow the driver to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that the driver never pull the door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Vietnamese models

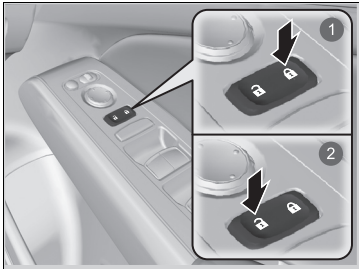
The front door inner handles are designed to allow front seat occupants to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that front seat occupants never pull a front door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.

➡ **Childproof Door Locks** P. 197

Continued

Using the Master Door Lock Switch



Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all the doors, hatch and fuel fill door.

1. To Lock
2. To Unlock

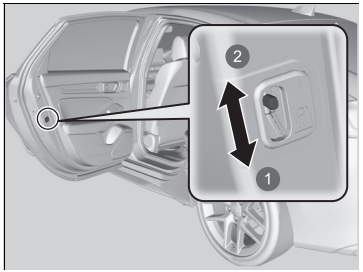
Using the Master Door Lock Switch

When you lock/unlock either of the front doors using the master door lock switch, all the other doors, hatch and fuel fill door lock/unlock at the same time.

Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

■ Setting the Childproof Door Locks



❶ Lock
❷ Unlock

Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

■ When opening the door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking*

Your vehicle locks or unlocks all doors automatically when a certain condition is met.

■ Auto Door Locking

■ Drive lock mode

All doors and hatch lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 15 km/h.

■ Auto Door Unlocking

■ Power mode unlock mode

All doors and hatch unlock when the power mode is out of ON.

Auto Door Locking/Unlocking*

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the audio/information screen.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 313

* Not available on all models

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Hatch

Always make sure individuals and objects are clear of the hatch before opening or closing it.

- Open the hatch all the way.
  ▶ If it is not fully opened, the hatch may begin to close under its own weight.
- Be careful when it is windy. The wind may cause the hatch to close.

Keep the hatch closed while driving to:
▶ Avoid possible damage.
▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.
➡ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 110

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Hatch

⚠WARNING

Anyone caught in the path of a hatch that is being opened or closed can be seriously injured.

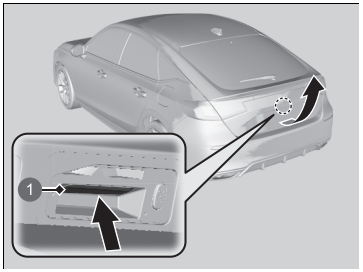
Make sure that all people are clear of the hatch before opening or closing it.

Be careful not to hit your head on the hatch or to put your hands between the hatch and the luggage area when closing the hatch.

When you are storing or picking up luggage from the luggage area while the engine is idling, do not stand in front of the exhaust pipe. You may get burned.

Do not allow any passenger in the luggage space. They may get hurt during hard braking, a sudden acceleration, or a crash.

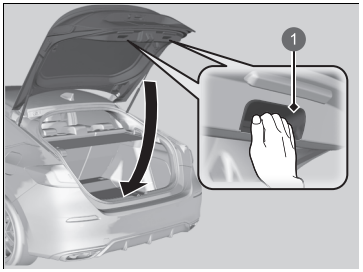
Opening/Closing the Hatch



❶ Hatch Release Button

When all the doors are unlocked, the hatch is unlocked.
Press the hatch release button and lift open the hatch.

If you are carrying the keyless remote or card key*, you do not have to unlock the hatch before opening it.



❶ Inner Handle

To close the hatch, grab the inner handle, pull the hatch down, and push it closed from outside.

Opening/Closing the Hatch

- Do not leave the keyless remote or card key* in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote or card key*, you can unlock the hatch while someone else with the remote is within range.

* Not available on all models

Immobilizer System

This system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the engine.

Pay attention to the following when pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic device, such as televisions and audio systems emit strong magnetic fields. Note that even a key chain can become magnetic.

Immobilizer System

NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle.
Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

If the system repeatedly does not recognise the coding of your key, contact a dealer. If you have lost your key and cannot start your vehicle, contact a dealer.

Security System Alarm

The security system alarm activates when the hatch, bonnet, or doors are forcibly opened. The alarm does not activate if the hatch or doors are opened with the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently and some exterior lights flash.

■ To deactivate the security system alarm

Unlock the vehicle using the remote transmitter or keyless access system, or turn the power mode to ON. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

■ Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.
- The bonnet is closed.
- All doors and the hatch are locked from outside with the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks and the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds.

■ To cancel the security system alarm

The security system alarm is cancelled when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote transmitter or keyless access system, or when the power mode is set to ON. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

Security System Alarm

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

The security system alarm will continue for approximately 5 minutes before the security system deactivates.
The system will go through ten 30-second cycles, during which the horn will sound and an emergency indicator will flash.
Depending on circumstances, the security system may continue operating for more than 5 minutes.

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the bonnet with the bonnet release handle.

If the battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may go off once the battery is recharged or replaced.
If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will go off.

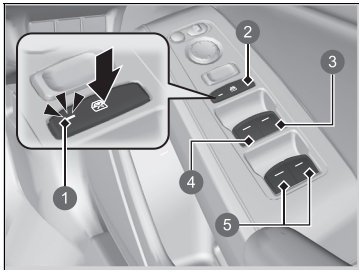
Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the power mode is in ON, using the switches on the doors.

The driver's side switches can be used to open and close all the windows. The power window lock button on the driver's side must be switched off (not pushed in, indicator off) to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pushed in, the indicator comes on and you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

■ Opening/Closing the Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



❶ Indicator
❷ Power Window Lock Button
❸ Driver's Window Switch
❹ Front Passenger's Window Switch
❺ Rear Passenger's Window Switch*

■ Manual operation

To open: Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.
To close: Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

■ Automatic operation

To open: Push the switch down firmly.
To close: Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

⚠WARNING

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

Oceanian models
The power windows can be operated for up to 45 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
Opening either front door cancels this function.

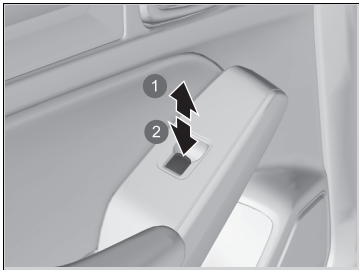
Southeast Asia models
The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
Opening either front door cancels this function.

Hong Kong and Macanese models
The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
Closing driver's door cancels this function.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Opening/Closing Windows without Auto-Open/Close Function*

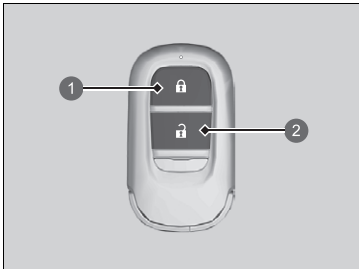


1 Close
2 Open

To open: Push the switch down.
To close: Pull the switch up.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

Opening/Closing the Windows with the Remote*



1 Lock Button
2 Unlock Button

To open: Press the unlock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.
To close*: Press the lock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

If the windows stop midway, repeat the procedure.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows

Auto Reverse
If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverses direction.

The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

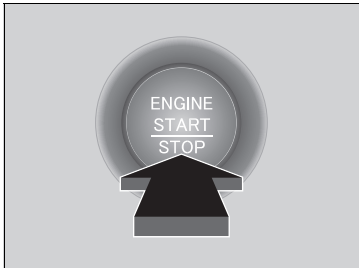
Opening/Closing the Windows with the Remote*

You can turn off or on to open the windows with the remote transmitter setting using the audio/information screen.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 313

* Not available on all models

ENGINE START/STOP Button

Changing the Power Mode



Models with continuously variable transmission

If you carry the keyless remote and press **ENGINE START/STOP** button without depressing the brake pedal, the power mode will change in this order:
VEHICLE OFF→ACCESSORY→ON→VEHICLE OFF.

Models with manual transmission

If you carry the keyless remote or card key and press **ENGINE START/STOP** button without depressing the clutch pedal, the power mode will change in this order: VEHICLE OFF→ACCESSORY→ON→VEHICLE OFF.

VEHICLE OFF:
Vehicle power is turned OFF.
ACCESSORY:
The audio system and some accessories can be used.
ON:
All accessories can be used.

ENGINE START/STOP Button

If the keyless remote or card key* is set in a storage box or another place where its signal can be interrupted, the power mode may not change.

Models with continuously variable transmission

When the power mode is set to ON, the power mode will change to ACCESSORY if the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is pressed while the transmission is in a position other than P.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the transmission in P (continuously variable transmission) and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid draining the battery.

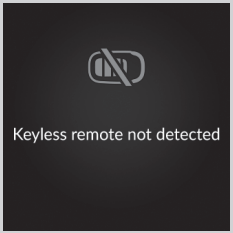
When in this mode:
The steering wheel does not lock.
You cannot lock or unlock doors with the remote transmitter or the keyless access system.

Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice to switch the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

■ Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is set to ACCESSORY, a warning beep sounds.

■ Keyless Remote/Card Key* Reminder



When the power mode is set to any mode other than OFF and you remove the keyless remote or card key* from the vehicle and shut the door, an alarm will sound. If the alarm continues to sound, place the keyless remote or card key* in another location.

■ When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

The alarm will sound from outside the vehicle.

■ When the power mode is in ON

An alarm will sound both inside and outside the vehicle. In addition, a warning indicator will appear on the instrument panel.

Keyless Remote/Card Key* Reminder

When the keyless remote or card key* is within the system's operational range, and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

If the keyless remote or card key* is taken out of the vehicle after the engine has been started, you can no longer change the **ENGINE START/STOP** button mode or restart the engine. Always make sure if the remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Removing the keyless remote or card key* from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

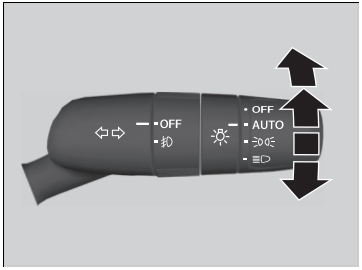
Do not put the keyless remote or card key* on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to go off. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also go off even if the remote is within the system's operational range.

* Not available on all models

Lights

Headlights/Position Lights

The lights will turn on automatically depending on the ambient brightness. They can also be switched on and off manually.



The exterior lights will switch on automatically when the light switch is set to **AUTO** while the power mode is in ON.

Manual operation

Headlights/position lights:

Turn the light switch to [ ].

Position lights:

Turn the light switch to [ ].

Headlight/position lights off:

Turn the light switch to **OFF** and release it while the shift position is in [P] (continuously variable transmission) or the parking brake is applied.

▶ The lights will come back on automatically when:

- The light switch is turned to **OFF** again and released.
- The shift position is changed out of [P] (continuously variable transmission) and the parking brake is released.

Lights

When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

➔ **Lights On Indicator** P. 121

Australian models with 2.0 L engine, and Malaysian models

The headlights are suitable for only left-hand or only right-hand drive. When driving on roads with different traffic rules, the headlight beam must be adjusted.

➔ **Adjusting Headlight Distribution** P. 455

Headlights/Position Lights

When the position lights are on, the tail and rear licence plate lights will also switch on.

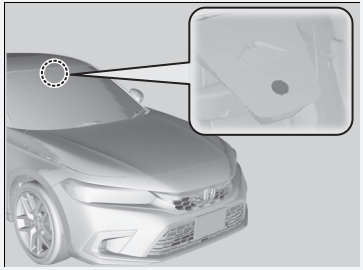
When the light switch is turned to [ ] or [ ] and the power is turned to OFF, a beeper sounds when the driver's door is opened.

When the light switch is turned to **AUTO** and the ambient light levels are low, the headlights and position lights will switch on if you unlock a door. They will switch off when the door is locked.

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights. If you find a significant change in the vertical angle of the headlights, there may be a problem with the system. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

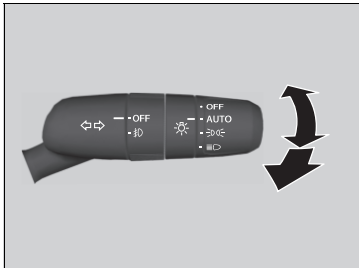
Headlights/Position Lights

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover the light sensor.



■ High Beams

When the headlights are on, push the lever forward. Pull the lever back to return to low beams.



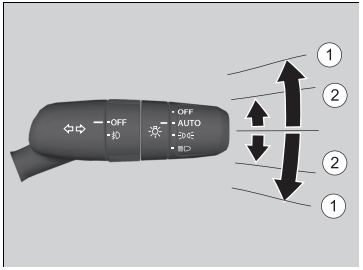
■ Flashing the high beams

Pull the lever back to switch on the high beams.

▶ Release the lever to return to low beams.

Continued

■ Turn Signals



The turn signals can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ ①: Turn signal

Push the lever up or down based on the direction you want to turn, and the turn signal will blink.

■ ②: One-touch turn signal

When you lightly push the lever up or down and release it, the turn signal will blink 3 times.

▶ If you lightly push the lever in the opposite direction while it is blinking, the blinking will stop.

Turn Signals

The turn signal indicator on the instrument panel will blink when the external turn signal blinks.

➔ **Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators** P. 121

Headlight Integration with Wipers

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.
The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

Headlight Integration with Wipers

This feature activates while the headlights are off in **AUTO**. The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.

At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.

You can turn the headlight integration with wipers function on and off.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 313

Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, take the keyless remote or card key* with you, and close the driver's door.

If you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a reminder chime alerting you that the lights are on.

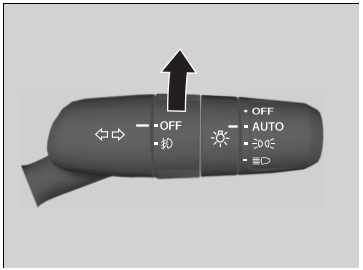
Automatic Lighting Off Feature

You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 313

* Not available on all models

Continued

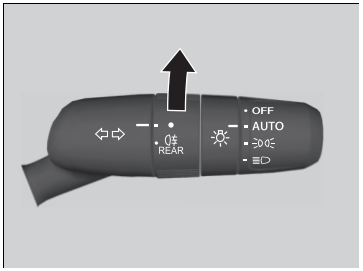
■ Front Fog Lights*



Can be used when the position lights or the headlights are on.

Rotate the switch up from the **OFF** position to the ON position. The indicator comes on.

■ Rear Fog Light*



Can be used when the headlights are on.

Rotate the switch to . The indicator comes on.

* Not available on all models

■ Daytime Running Lights

The daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:
- The power mode is in ON.
- The headlight switch is **AUTO**.
- The ambient light is bright.

While the vehicle is stopped, if you turn the light switch to **OFF** and release it, the daytime running lights will turn off. When the shift position is changed out of P and the parking brake is released, the lights will come on again. Otherwise, if the light switch is once more turned to **OFF**, the lights will come on again.

Daytime Running Lights

Daytime running lights and the position lights share the same light source.

Daytime running lights are brighter than the position lights.

The daytime running lights will not switch on if the position lights have been turned on manually.

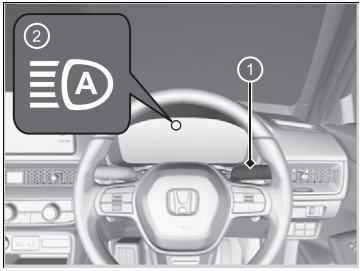
Auto High-Beam

The front wide view camera detects the light sources ahead of the vehicle such as the lights of a preceding or oncoming vehicle, or street lights. When you are driving at night, the system automatically switches the headlights between low beam and high beam depending on the situation.

■ How to Use the Auto High-Beam

■ Activating the system

When all of the following conditions have been met, the auto high-beam indicator comes on and between the high beam and low beam switches automatically depending on the situation.



- The power mode is in ON.
- The light switch is in **AUTO**.
- The lever is in the low beam position.
- The headlights have been automatically activated.
- It is dark outside the vehicle.

❶ Light Switch
❷ Auto High-Beam Indicator

If the auto high-beam indicator does not come on even when all the conditions have been met, carry out either of the procedures below and the indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to ≡D then turn the light switch to **AUTO**.

Auto High-Beam

The auto high-beam system does not always operate in every situation. This system is just for assisting the driver. Always observe your surroundings and switch the headlights between high beam and low beam manually if necessary.

The range and the distance at which the camera can recognise varies depending on conditions surrounding your vehicle.

Regarding the handling of the camera mounted to the inside of the windscreen, refer to the following.

➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 553

For the auto high-beam to work properly:

- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windscreen around the camera clean. When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not attach an object, sticker or film to the area around the camera.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

How to turn off the Auto High-Beam System

You can change the auto high-beam system on and off.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 313

■ Automatic switching between high-beam and low-beam

When the auto high-beam indicator comes on, the headlights switch between high beam and low beam based on the following conditions.

High beam		Low beam
All of the following conditions must be met before the high beams turn on. • Your vehicle speed is 30 km/h or more. • There are no preceding or oncoming vehicles with headlights or taillights turned on. • There are few street lights on the road ahead.	⇔	One of the following conditions must be met before the low beams turn on. • Your vehicle speed is 24 km/h or less. • There is a preceding or oncoming vehicles with headlights or taillights turned on. • There are many street lights on the road ahead.

How to Use the Auto High-Beam

In the following cases, the auto high-beam system may not switch the headlights properly or the switching timing may be changed. In case of the automatic switching operation does not fit for your driving habits, please switch the headlights manually.

- The brightness of the lights from the preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windscreen frost, etc.).
- Surrounding light sources, such as street lights, electric billboards and traffic lights are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or has many curves.
- A vehicle suddenly appears in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.
- A traffic sign, mirror, or other reflective object ahead is reflecting strong light towards the vehicle.
- The oncoming vehicle frequently disappears under roadside trees or behind median barriers.
- The preceding or oncoming vehicle is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.

The auto high-beam system keeps the headlight low beam when:
- Windscreen wipers are operating at a high speed.
- The camera has detected a dense fog.

Continued

■ Manual switching between high-beam and low-beam

If you want to manually switch the headlights between high beam and low beam, follow either of the procedures below. Note that when you do this, the auto high-beam indicator will turn off and the auto high-beam will be deactivated.

Using the lever:

Pull the lever towards you for flashing the high beams then release it.

▶ To reactivate the auto high-beam, follow either of the procedures below and the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

- Pull the lever towards you and release it.
- Turn the light switch to ≡D and then to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position.

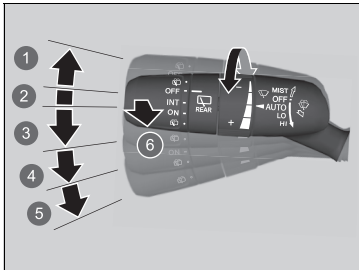
Using the light switch:

Turn the light switch to ≡D.

▶ To reactivate the auto high-beam, turn the light switch to **AUTO** when the lever is in the low beam position, the auto high-beam indicator will come on.

Wipers and Washers

■ Windscreen Wipers/Washers



❶ **MIST**
❷ **OFF**
❸ **AUTO**
❹ **LO:** Low speed wipe
❺ **HI:** High speed wipe
❻ **Washer**

The windscreen wipers and washers can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ MIST

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, AUTO, LO, HI)

Move the lever up or down to change the wiper settings.

■ Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever towards you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windscreen, then stop.

Wipers and Washers

NOTICE
Do not use the wipers when the windscreen is dry. The windscreen will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

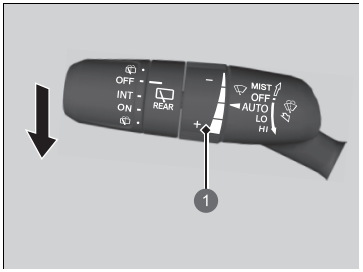
NOTICE
Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes.

NOTICE
In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windscreen.
Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the demister to warm the windscreen, then turn the wipers on.

Continued

■ Automatic Intermittent Wipers



❶ Adjustment Ring
-: Low Sensitivity
+: High Sensitivity

When you push the lever down to **AUTO**, the windscreen wipers sweep once, and go into the automatic mode.

The wipers operate intermittently, at low speed, or at high speed and stop in accordance with the amount of rainfall the rainfall sensor detects.

■ AUTO sensitivity adjustment

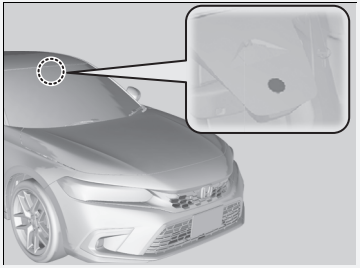
When the wiper function is set to **AUTO**, you can adjust the sensitivity of the rainfall sensor (using the adjustment ring) so that wipers will operate in accordance with your preference.

Wipers and Washers

If the wipers stop operating due to an obstacle such as the builtup of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place.
Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, and set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then remove the obstacle.

Automatic Intermittent Wipers

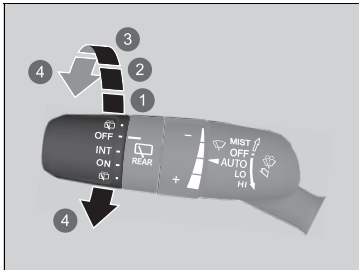
The rainfall sensor is in the location shown below.



NOTICE

AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:
- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

■ Rear Wiper/Washer



❶ **OFF**
❷ **INT** (Intermittent)
❸ **ON** (Continuous wipe)
❹ **Washer**

The rear wipers and washers can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT, ON)

Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

■ Washer ( )

Sprays while you rotate the switch to this position.
Hold it to activate the rear wiper and to spray the washer. Once released, the washer spray will stop and the rear wiper will return to its selected switch setting after a few sweeps.

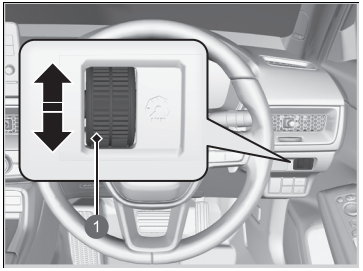
■ Operating in reverse

When you put the transmission into R with the windscreen wipers activated, the rear wiper operates automatically as follows even if its switch is off.

Windscreen Wiper Operation	Rear Wiper Operation
Intermittent	Intermittent
Low speed wipe High speed wipe	Continuous

Models with A-type meter

Brightness Control



1 Control Dial

When the power mode is in ON, you can use the brightness control dial to adjust instrument panel brightness.
Brighten: Turn the dial up.
Dim: Turn the dial down.

You will hear a beep when the brightness reaches minimum or maximum. Several seconds after adjusting the brightness, you will be returned to the previous display.

■ Brightness level indicator

The brightness level is shown on the display while you are adjusting it.

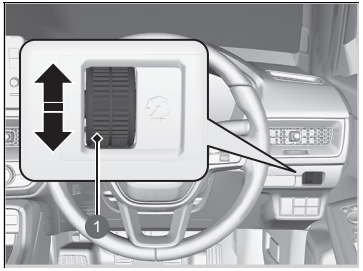
Brightness Control

The brightness of the instrument panel will be reduced when the following conditions:
- The power mode is in ON.
- The position lights are turned on and it is dark outside.

The brightness can be set differently for when the exterior lights are on, and when they are off.

Models with B-type meter

Brightness Control



❶ Control Dial

The brightness of the gauge is automatically adjusted depending on the ambient brightness.

- The brightness becomes darker when the ambient light is dark.
- The brightness becomes brighter when the ambient light is bright.

■ Adjusting the brightness manually

You can use the control dial to adjust instrument panel brightness.
Brighten: Turn the dial up.
Dim: Turn the dial down.

▶ You can change the setting even when the ambient lighting is bright, but the brightness of the gauge won't change.

■ Brightness level indicator

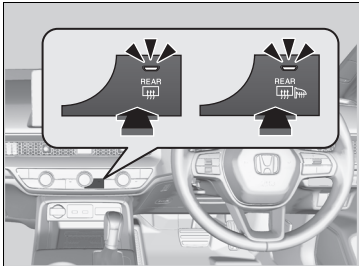
The brightness level is shown on the display while you are adjusting it.

Brightness Control

Several seconds after you have adjusted the brightness, you will be returned to the previous screen.

Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror* Button

Press the rear demister and heated door mirror* button to demist the rear window and mirrors when the power mode is in ON.



The rear demister and heated door mirrors* automatically switch off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 0°C or below, they do not automatically switch off.

Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror* Button

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been demisted. Also, do not use the system for a long time while the engine is idling. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

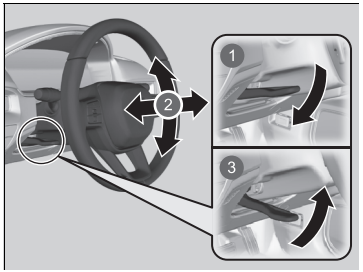
Models with heated door mirror

When the power mode is set to ON and the outside temperature is below 5°C, the heated door mirror may automatically activate for 10 minutes.

* Not available on all models

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



❶ Release
❷ Adjust
❸ Lock

1. While the vehicle is stopped, push the steering wheel adjustment lever down.
▶ The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.

2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
▶ Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.

3. Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up to lock the steering wheel in position.
▶ After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

⚠WARNING

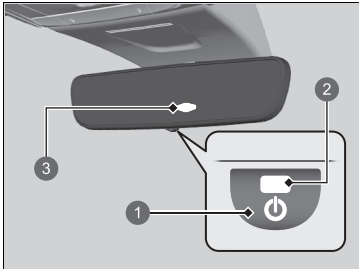
Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

Interior Rearview Mirror

Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror



When you are driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you. Press the AUTO button to turn this function on and off. When activated, the AUTO indicator comes on.

1. AUTO Button
2. AUTO Indicator
3. Sensor

Mirrors

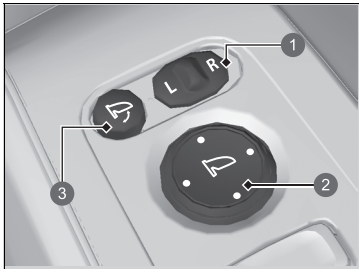
Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.
➡ **Front Seats** P. 226

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror

The auto dimming function cancels when the transmission is in R.

Power Door Mirrors



❶ Selector Switch
❷ Adjustment Switch
❸ Folding Button

You can adjust the door mirrors when the power mode is in ON.

■ Mirror position adjustment

L/R selector switch: Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the centre position.

Mirror position adjustment switch: Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

■ Folding door mirrors

Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.

■ Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function

■ Folding in the door mirrors

Press the lock button on the keyless remote, or touch the door lock sensor on the front door.

▶ The mirrors start folding in automatically.

■ Folding out the door mirrors

Unlock all doors and the hatch using the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

▶ The mirrors start folding out automatically.

Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function

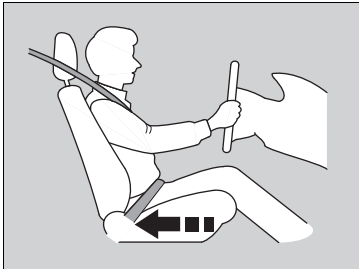
You cannot turn the automatic folding out automatically if they have been folded in using the folding button.

You can turn the automatic folding door mirror function on and off.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 313

Door mirrors will not fold automatically when locking from inside the vehicle using lock tab or master door lock switch.

Front Seats



Move back to allow sufficient space.

Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

Seats

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

Front Seats

WARNING

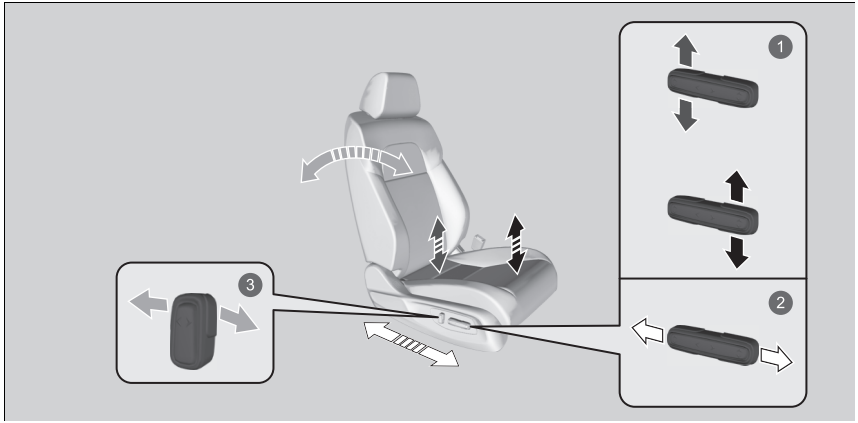
Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

In addition to the seat adjustment, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down, in and out. Allow at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the chest.

Adjusting the Seat Positions

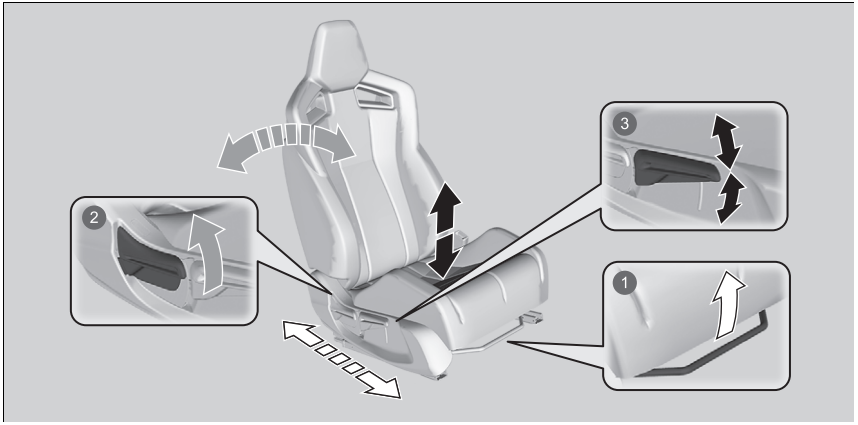
Adjusting the front power seats



1. Height Adjustment (Driver's seat only)
2. Horizontal Position Adjustment
3. Seat-back Angle Adjustment

Continued

■ Adjusting the front manual seat



❶ **Horizontal Position Adjustment**
Pull up on the bar to move the seat, then release the bar.

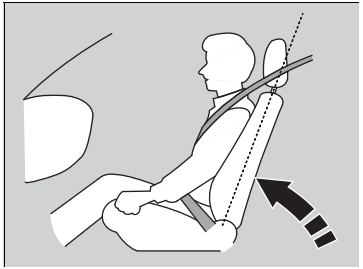
❷ **Seat-back Angle Adjustment**
Pull up the lever to change the angle.

❸ **Height Adjustment (Driver side only)**
Pull up or push down the lever to raise or lower the seat.

Adjusting the front manual seat

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the centre of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

Adjusting the Seat-Backs

⚠WARNING

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

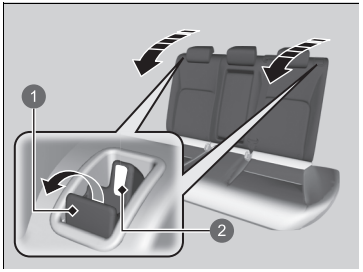
Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

Rear Seats

■ Folding Down the Rear Seats

Separately fold down the left and right halves of the rear seat to make room for luggage.



1. Lower the head restraints* to their lowest position.
2. Pull the release lever and fold down the seat-back.

1 Release Lever
2 Red Tab

Folding Down the Rear Seats

⚠WARNING

Make sure the seat-backs are latched securely before driving.

The rear seat-back(s) can be folded down to accommodate bulkier items in the luggage area.

To lock a seat-back upright, push it backwards until it locks, so that the red tabs in the release lever go down.
When returning the seat-back to its original position, push it firmly back.

Make sure all items in the luggage area or items extending to the rear seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.

The front seat(s) must be far enough forward so they do not interfere with the rear seats as they fold down.

* Not available on all models

Rear Seat Reminder

This feature alerts you to the possible presence of passengers or items in the rear seats before you exit the vehicle. It activates when the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF if the rear doors were opened shortly before or after the power mode was set to ON.

Continuously variable transmission models

Manual transmission models

A reminder appears on the driver information interface and an alert will sound when the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.

Rear Seat Reminder

When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF, reminder will go off and the function will terminate.

The reminder will not work if the power mode has not been set to ON within 10 minutes of operating the rear doors.

The system does not detect passengers in the rear seats. Instead, it can detect when a rear door is opened and closed, indicating that there may be something in the rear seats.

You can turn off the notification setting.
Customized Features P. 313

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints*, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor until the vehicle is safely parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

⚠WARNING

Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

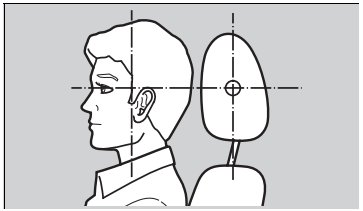
Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

* Not available on all models

Head Restraints

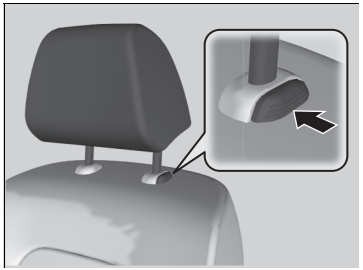
Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

Adjusting the Front Head Restraint Positions*



Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the centre of the back of the occupant's head rests against the centre of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the centre height of the restraint.

Position head in the centre of the head restraint.



To raise the head restraint:
Pull it upward.
To lower the head restraint:
Push it down while pressing the release button.

Adjusting the Front Head Restraint Positions*

WARNING

Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

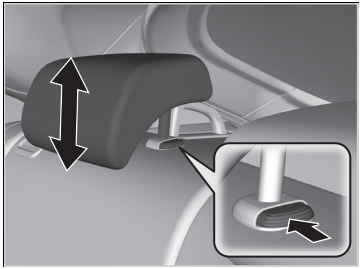
Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

In order for the head restraint system to work properly:
- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Changing the Rear Outer Seat Head Restraint Positions*



A passenger sitting in a rear outer seating position should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

To raise the head restraint:
Pull it upward.

To lower the head restraint:
Push it down while pressing the release button.

Removing and Reinstalling the Front and Rear Outer Head Restraints*

Front and rear outer head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

To remove a head restraint:
Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then, push the release button and pull the restraint up and out.

To reinstall a head restraint:
Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

Changing the Rear Outer Seat Head Restraint Positions*

When you use the head restraints in the rear outer seating positions, pull up the head restraints to its highest position. Do not use it in any lower position.

Removing and Reinstalling the Front and Rear Outer Head Restraints*

⚠WARNING

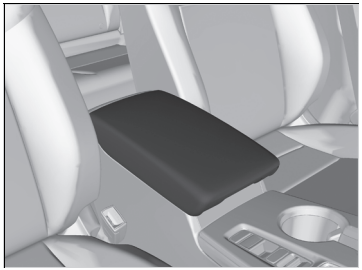
Failure to reinstall or correctly reinstall, the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

* Not available on all models

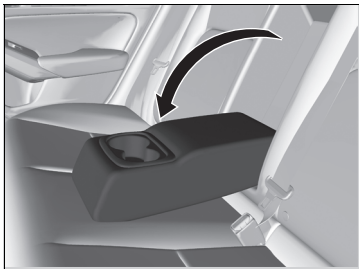
Armrest

Using the Front Seat Armrest



The console lid can be used as an armrest.

Using the Rear Seat Armrest*

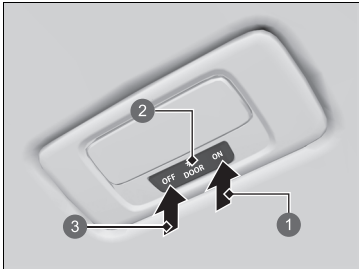


Pull down the armrest in the centre backrest.

* Not available on all models

Interior Lights

Interior Light Switch



1 On
2 Door Activated Position
3 Off

ON

The interior light comes on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

Door activated

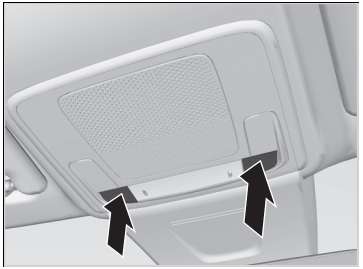
The interior light comes on in the following situations:

- When any doors are opened.
- You unlock the driver's door.
- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.

OFF

The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

Map Light Switches



The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the buttons.

Interior Light Switch

In the door activated position, the interior lights fade out and go off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed.
The lights go off after about 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.
- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF but do not open a door.

You can change the interior light dimming time.
Customized Features P. 313

The interior lights go off immediately in the following situations:

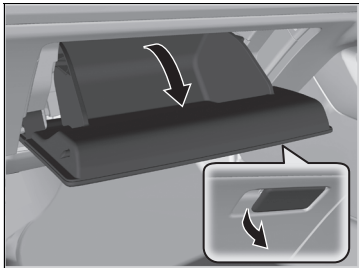
- When you lock the driver's door.
- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.
- When you set the power mode to ON.

If you leave any of the doors open in VEHICLE OFF mode, the interior light goes off after about 15 minutes.

To avoid draining the battery, do not leave the interior light on for an extended length of time when the engine is off.

Storage Items

Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box.

Glove Box

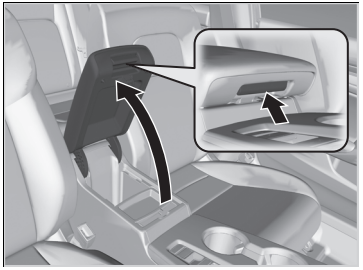
WARNING

An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

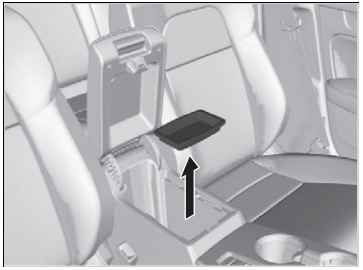
Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

Continued

■ Console Compartment



Pull the handle to open the console compartment.

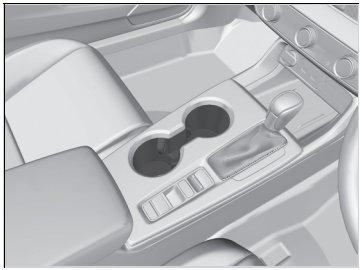


■ Removable tray*

The tray in the console compartment is detachable. To remove the tray, simply pull it up.

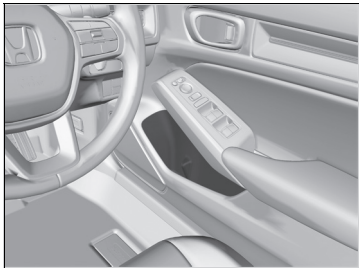
* Not available on all models

Beverage Holders



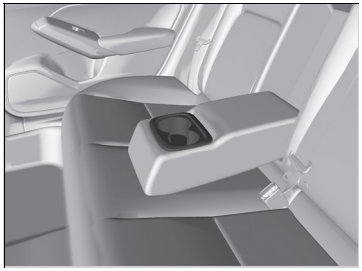
Front seat beverage holders

Are located in the console between the front seats.



Front door side beverage holders

Are located on the both of front door side pockets.



Rear seat beverage holders

Five-passenger models

Fold the armrest down to use the rear seat beverage holders.

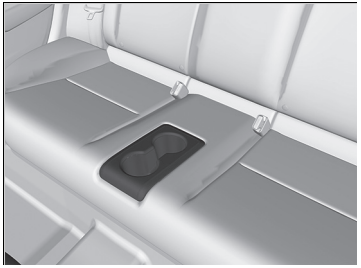
Continued

Beverage Holders

NOTICE

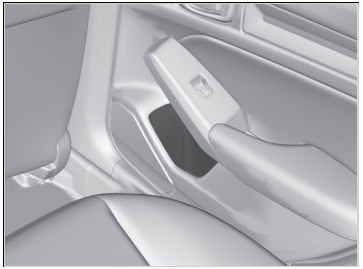
Spilled liquids damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.



Four-passenger models

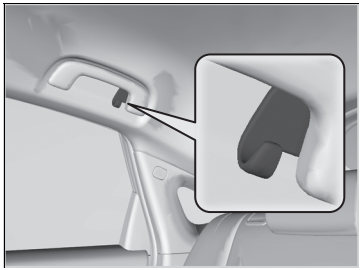
Are located on the rear seat.



■ **Rear door side beverage holders**

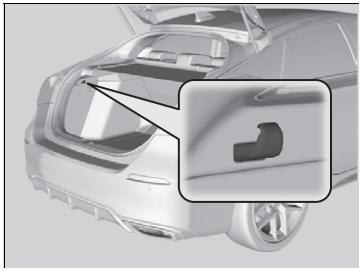
Are located on the both of rear door side pockets.

Coat Hook



There is a coat hook on the driver's side grab handle.

Luggage Hook



The luggage hook in the luggage area can be used to hang a light items.

Continued

Coat Hook

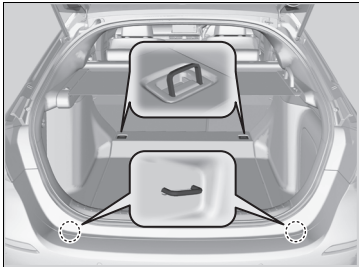
The coat hook is not designed for large or heavy items.

Luggage Hook

NOTICE

Do not hang a large object or an object that weighs more than 3 kg on the luggage hook. Hanging heavy or large objects may damage the hook.

Tie-down Anchorages

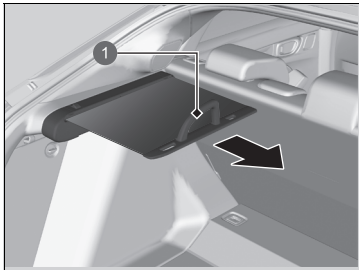


The tie-down anchorages on the luggage area floor can be used to install a net for securing items.

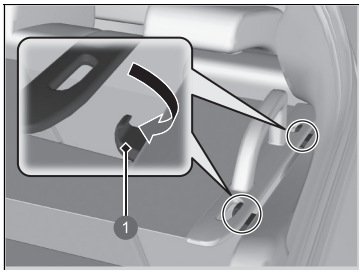
Tie-down Anchorages

Do not let anyone access items in the luggage area while driving. Loose items can cause injury if you have to brake hard.

■ Luggage Area Cover*



❶ Handle



❶ Hooks

The luggage area cover can be used to cover the luggage space.

■ To pull out

Pull the cover handle straight out, and hang both ends on the hooks.

When storing, remove it from the hook and gently put it back.

Luggage Area Cover*

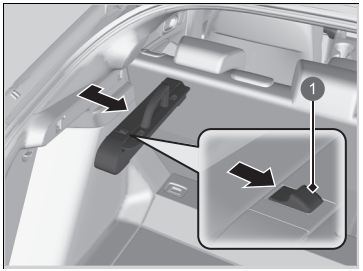
Do not access parcels in the luggage area while driving.
This may cause injury if you have to brake hard.

Do not stack objects higher than the top of the seat in the luggage area. They could block your view and be thrown about the vehicle during a sudden stop.

To prevent luggage area cover damage:
- Do not place items on the luggage area cover.
- Do not put weight on the luggage area cover.

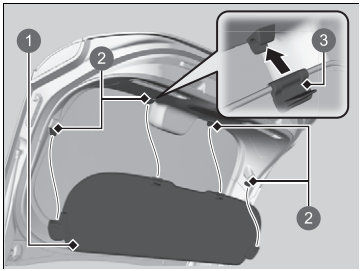
* Not available on all models

Continued



❶ Lever

■ **To remove:**
Slide the lever on the luggage area cover case and remove it while pulling it towards you.



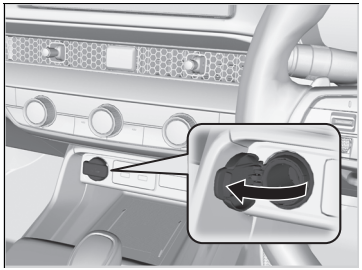
❶ Extension
❷ Clips
❸ Tab

■ **Luggage area cover extension**
The extension is attached at the back of the hatch by four clips. It extends the covering area when you close the hatch. To remove, unclip the extension from the hatch. When reinstalling the extension, make sure that the tabs come to the near side.

Other Interior Convenience Items

■ Accessory Power Socket

The accessory power sockets can be used when the power mode is in ACCESSORY or ON.



■ Console panel

Open the cover to use it.

Accessory Power Socket

Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element. This can overheat the accessory power socket.

The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts (15 amps) or less.

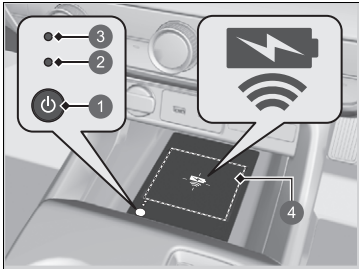
To prevent battery drain, only use the accessory power socket with the engine running.

When the accessory power socket is not in use, close the cover to prevent any small foreign objects from getting into the accessory power socket.

Continued

Wireless Charger

To use the wireless charger, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON. Charge any devices compatible with Qi wireless charging on the area indicated by the mark as follows:



1. (Power) Button
2. Green Indicator
3. Amber Indicator
4. Charging Area

1. To turn the system on and off, press and hold the (power) button.
▶ When the system is activated, the green indicator light comes on.

2. Place the device you want to charge on the charging area.
▶ The system will automatically start charging the device and the amber indicator light will come on.
▶ Make sure that the device is compatible with the system and placed with the chargeable side in the centre of the charging area.

3. When charging is completed, the green indicator light will come on.
▶ Depending on the device, the amber indicator light will stay on.

Wireless Charger

CAUTION

Metal objects between the charge pad and the device to be charged will get hot and can burn you.

- **Always remove foreign objects from the charge pad before charging the device.**
- **Be sure the surface is clear of dust and other debris before charging.**
- **Do not spill liquids (i. e. water, drinks, etc.) on the charger and the device.**
- **Do not use oil, grease, alcohol, benzine or thinner for cleaning the charge pad.**
- **Do not cover the system with towels, clothing, or other objects while charging etc.**
- **Avoid spraying aerosols which may come in contact with the charge pad surface.**

This system consumes a lot of power. Do not use the system for a long time when the engine is not running. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

When using the wireless charger, check the user's manual that came with the compatible device you want to charge.

■ When charging does not start

Perform one of the solutions in the following table.

Indicator		Cause	Solution
Green & Amber	Blinking simultaneously	There is an obstacle(s) between the charging area and the device.	Remove the obstacle(s).
		The device is not within the charging area.	Pick up and reset the device to the centre of the charging area where is located.
		The temperature of the wireless charger pad increases.	Temporarily suspend charging the device. Wait for the temperature to drop and attempt to charge the device again.
Amber	Blinking	The wireless charger is faulty.	Contact a dealer for repairs.

Continued

Wireless Charger

The wireless charger can support up to 15W, but the charging rate varies based on the device and other conditions.

NOTICE

Do not place any magnetic recording media or precision machines within the charging area while charging. The data on your cards such as credit cards can be lost because of the magnetic effect. Also, precision machines such as watches can be affected.

"Qi" and marks are the registered trademarks owned by Wireless Power Consortium (WPC).

In the following cases, charging may stop or not start:

- The device is already fully charged.
- The temperature of the device is extremely high while charging.
- You are at a place that emits strong electromagnetic waves or noises, such as a TV station, electric power plant, or petrol station.
- The device has a cover, case or accessories which are not compatible with wireless charging.

A device may not charge if the size or shape of its chargeable side is not appropriate for use with the charging area.

Not all devices are compatible with the system.

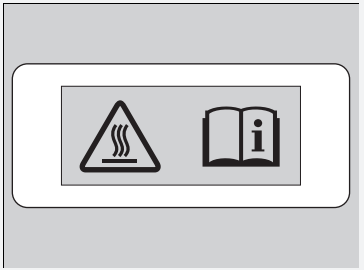
During the charging phase, it is normal for the charging area and device to heat up.

Wireless Charger

Charging may be briefly interrupted when:

- All the doors and the hatch are closed
  - to avoid interference with the proper functioning of the keyless access system.
- The position of the device is altered.

Do not charge more than one device at a time on a charging area.



Burn risk:
Any metal objects placed between pad and device may become hot.

If the device becomes too hot and its battery protection function activates, it may charge extremely slowly or no longer charge.
The temperature at which the battery protection function activates depends on the device.

Seat Heaters*

The seat heaters can be used when the power mode is in ON.

Press the seat heater button:
Once - The HI setting (three indicators on)
Twice - The MID setting (two indicators on)
Three times - The LO setting (one indicator on)
Four times - The OFF setting (no indicators on)

When the power mode is turned on after it is turned off, the previous setting is maintained.

Seat Heaters*

WARNING

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

Do not use the seat heaters even in LO when the engine is off. Under such conditions, the battery may be weakened, making the engine difficult to start.

After a certain period of time, the strength setting for the front seat heaters will automatically be reduced by one level at a time until the front seat heaters shuts off. The elapsed time varies according to the interior environment.

* Not available on all models

Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.

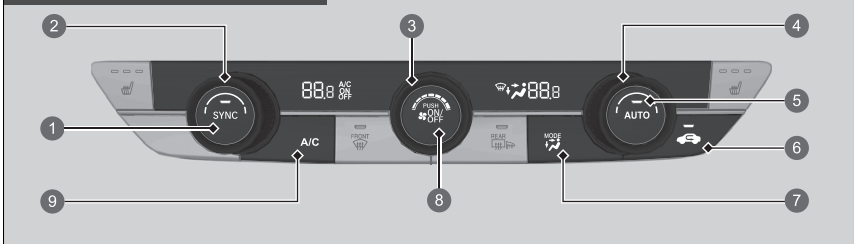
Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.

2. Adjust the interior temperature using the driver's side or passenger's side temperature control dial.

3. Press the ON/OFF (ON/OFF) button to cancel.

Models without MAX COOL button



1. **SYNC** Button
2. Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial
3. Fan Control Dial
4. Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial
5. **AUTO** Button
6. Recirculation Button
7. MODE Control Button
   - Dashboard vents
   - Dashboard and floor vents
   - Floor vents
   - Floor and windscreen demister vents
8. **ON/OFF** Button
9. **A/C** (Air Conditioning) Button

Using Automatic Climate Control

If any buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority.

The auto button indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button that was pressed will be controlled automatically.

Models with Auto Idle Stop

During idle-stops, air-conditioning is suspended, and only the blower remains active.
If you do not want air-conditioning suspended, press the Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button to cancel idle-stop.

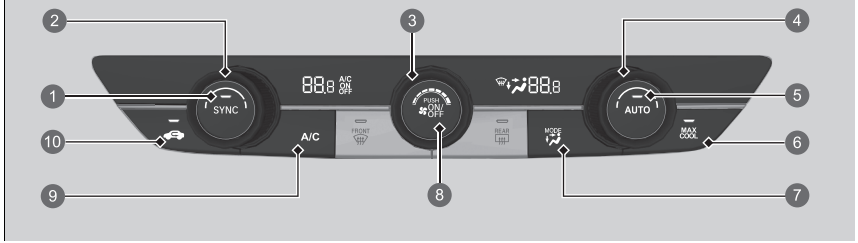
To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on auto, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh air mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.

Pressing the ON/OFF button switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

Models with MAX COOL button and Right-hand Drive Type



1. **SYNC** Button
2. Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial
3. Fan Control Dial
4. Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial
5. **AUTO** Button
6. **MAX COOL** Button
7. MODE Control Button
   - Dashboard vents
   - Dashboard and floor vents
   - Floor vents
   - Floor and windscreen demister vents
8. **ON/OFF** Button
9. **A/C**(Air Conditioning) Button
10. Recirculation Button

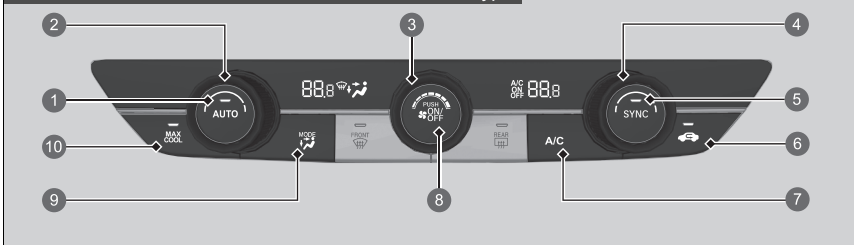
Continued

Using Automatic Climate Control

Models with ECON mode

While ECON mode is active, the climate control system may have reduced cooling performance.

Models with MAX COOL button and Left-hand Drive Type



1. **AUTO** Button
2. Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial
3. Fan Control Dial
4. Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial
5. **SYNC** Button
6. Recirculation Button
7. **A/C**(Air Conditioning) Button
8. **ON/OFF** Button
9. MODE Control Button
   - Dashboard vents
   - Dashboard and floor vents
   - Floor vents
   - Floor and windscreen demister vents
10. **MAX COOL** Button

■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

Press the (recirculation) button and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.

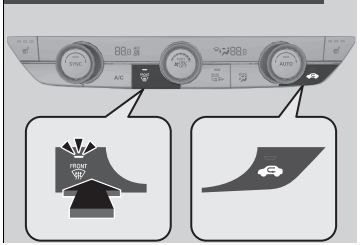
Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh air mode (indicator off): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

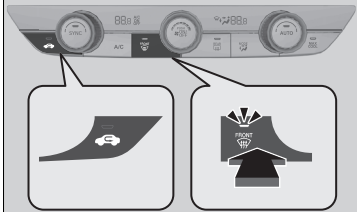
Continued

Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

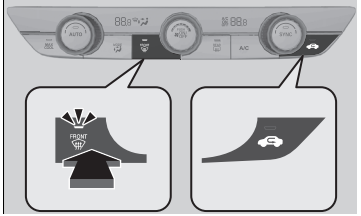
Models without MAX COOL button



Models with MAX COOL button and Right-hand Drive Type



Models with MAX COOL button and Left-hand Drive Type



Oceanian models

Pressing the FRONT (windscreen demister) button turns the air conditioning system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.

Except Oceanian models

Pressing the FRONT (windscreen demister) button turns the air conditioning system on.
Press the button (indicator off) to switch the fresh air mode.

Press the FRONT button again to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.

Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

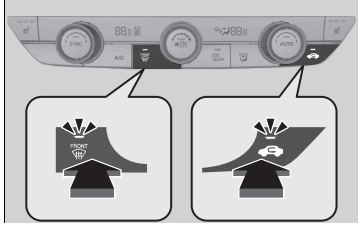
Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.
When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

Models with Auto Idle Stop

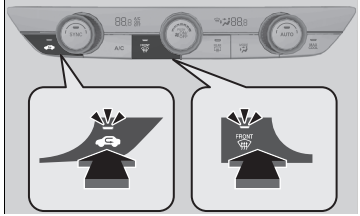
Selecting the FRONT button restarts the engine automatically during the Auto Idle Stop.

■ To rapidly defrost the windows

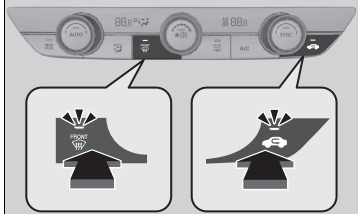
Models without MAX COOL button



Models with MAX COOL button and Right-hand Drive Type



Models with MAX COOL button and Left-hand Drive Type



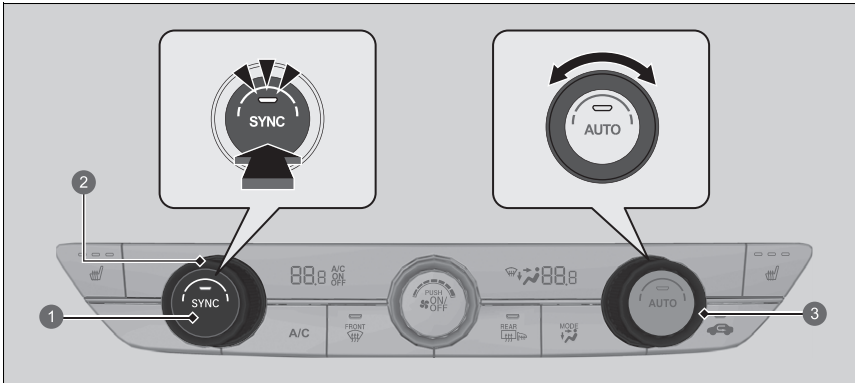
1. Press the FRONT button.
2. Press the button.

To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

Continued

■ Synchronization Mode



❶ **SYNC** Button
❷ Passenger's Side Temperature Control Dial
❸ Driver's Side Temperature Control Dial

You can set the temperature synchronously for the driver's side and the passenger's side in synchronization mode.

1. Press the **SYNC** button.
▶ The system switches to synchronization mode.
2. Adjust the temperature using the driver's side temperature control dial.

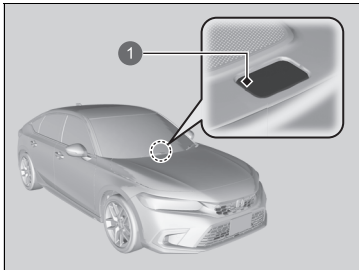
Press the **SYNC** button or change the passenger's side temperature setting to return to dual mode.

Synchronization Mode

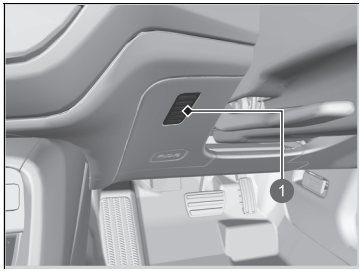
When you press the FRONT button, the system changes to synchronization mode.

When the system is in dual mode, the driver's side temperature and the passenger's side temperature can be set separately.

Automatic Climate Control Sensors



❶ Sensor



❶ Sensor

The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.

Features

This chapter describes how to operate technology features.

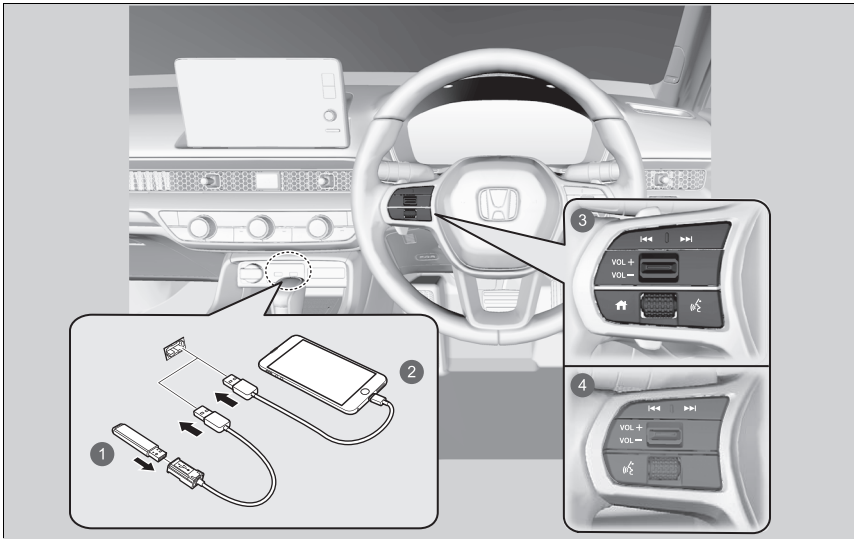
Audio System 260
Display Audio 261
Audio Error Messages 352
General Information on the Audio System 353
Honda LogR* 363
Refuel Recommend* 389

* Not available on all models

About Your Audio System

The audio system features FM/AM radio and Digital Audio Broadcasting (DAB) service*. It can also play USB flash drives, iPod, iPhone, *Bluetooth*® devices, and smartphone.

You can operate the audio system from the buttons and knobs on the panel, the remote controls on the steering wheel or the icons on the touchscreen interface.

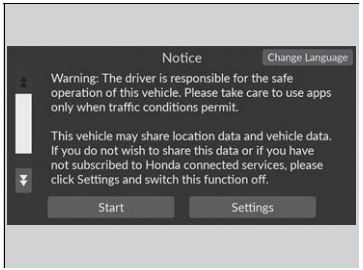


1. USB Flash Drive
2. iPod
3. Remote Controls (Models with A-type meter)
4. Remote Controls (Models with B-type meter)

* Not available on all models

Start Up

The Display Audio starts automatically when you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON. At start-up, the following screen about the data upload will be displayed.



Select **Start**.

▶ If you do not select **Start**, the system will automatically be switched the home screen after a certain period of time.

▶ If there is no registered device, select **Start** and the *Bluetooth®* pairing screen will be displayed.

■ To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

1. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
2. Select **Honda HFT** from your phone.

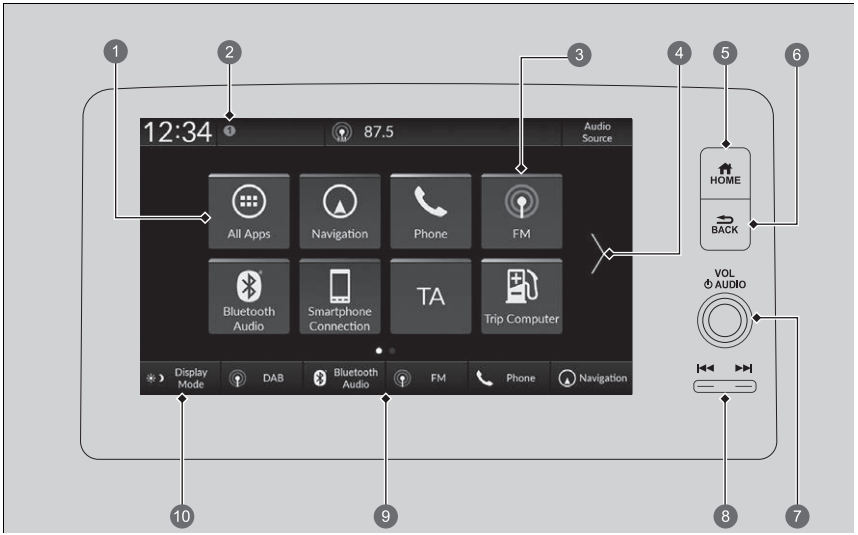
▶ If you want to pair a phone from this Display Audio, select **Search for Devices**, and then select your phone when it appears on the list.

▶ If you check the box with **Do not show this again**, this screen will not be displayed.

Basic Operation

■ Audio System Function

To use the audio system function, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.



❶ **All Apps**
❷ Status Icons
❸ App Shortcut Icons
❹ Arrow
❺ (Home) Button
❻ (Back) Button
❼ **VOL/ AUDIO** (Volume/Power) Knob
❽ / (Seek/Skip) Buttons
❾ Mode Change Switch Icons
❿ **Display Mode** Icon

Audio System Function

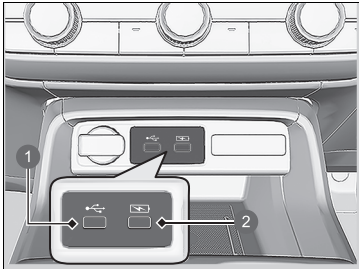
This screen is shown for the right-hand drive models. For the left-hand drive models, these are located at the symmetrically opposite to the right-hand drive model.

All Apps: Displays the all apps.
Status Icons: Show the indicators of the information for the vehicle, connected phones, etc. in the header area.
App Shortcut Icons: Display the app shortcut icons.
Arrow: Displays the next pages on the audio/information screen.
Display Mode Icon: Changes the audio/information screen brightness. Select once and select or to make an adjustment. Each time you select , the mode switches among the daytime mode, nighttime mode and off mode.*
Mode Change Switch Icons: Display icons to change the mode directly.
/ (Seek/Skip) **Buttons**: Press to change station, song or file.
VOL/ AUDIO (Volume/Power) Knob: Turns the audio system on and off and turns to adjust the volume.
BACK **(Back) Button**: Presses to go to back to the previous screen.
HOME **(Home) Button**: Presses to go to the home screen.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ USB Ports



❶ Playing audio files and connecting compatible phones
❷ Only for charging devices

■ On the front panel ( )

The USB port (2.5A) on the front panel is for charging devices, playing audio files, and connecting compatible phones with Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

▶ To prevent any potential issues, be sure to use an Apple MFi Certified Lightning Connector for Apple CarPlay, and for Android Auto, the USB cables should be certified by USB-IF to be compliant with USB 2.0 Standard.

■ On the front panel ( )

The USB port (2.5A) on the front panel is only for charging devices.

▶ You cannot play music even if you have connected music players to it.

USB Ports

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend that you use a USB cable if you are attaching a USB flash drive to the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

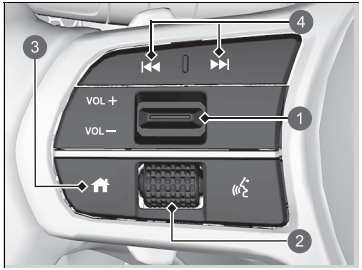
USB charge

The USB port can supply up to 2.5A of power. It does not output 2.5A unless requested by the device.
For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.

Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise in the radio you are listening to.

Audio Remote Controls

Models with A-type meter



Allow you to operate the audio system while driving. The information is shown on the driver information interface.

1. **VOL** ⊞/**VOL** ⊟ (Volume) Switch
2. Left Selector Wheel
3. (Home) Button
4. ⏮ / ⏭ (Seek/Skip) Buttons

Audio Remote Controls

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.

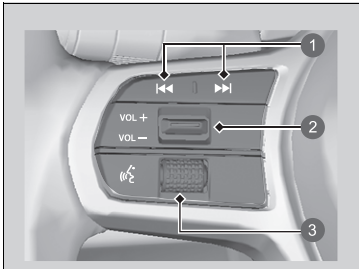
Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be available.

Models with A-type meter

Press the (home) button to go back to the home screen of the driver information interface.

Continued

Models with B-type meter



1. |◀◀ / ▶▶| (Seek/Skip) Buttons
2. **VOL ⊞/VOL ⊟** (Volume) Switch
3. Left Selector Wheel

VOL ⊞/VOL ⊟ (Volume) Switch
Press Up: To increase the volume.
Press Down: To decrease the volume.

Left Selector Wheel

- When selecting the audio mode

Models with A-type meter

Press the (home) button, then roll up or down to select (audio) on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

Models with B-type meter

Roll up or down to select **Audio** on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

Roll up or down:
To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel:

Models with A-type meter

FM/AM/DAB/iPod/USB/Apple CarPlay/Android Auto/*Bluetooth*® Audio

Models with B-type meter

Back/Phone/FM/DAB*/AM/USB/Bluetooth/Apps/Customized display

▶ Depending on a connected device, the displayed modes may be changed.

|◀◀/▶▶| (Seek/Skip) Buttons

- When listening to the radio
  Press ▶▶|: To select the next preset radio station.
  Press |◀◀: To select the previous preset radio station.
  Press and hold ▶▶|: To select the next strong station.
  Press and hold |◀◀: To select the previous strong station.
- When listening to an iPod, USB flash drive, *Bluetooth*® Audio, or Smartphone Connection
  ▶ Depending on a connected device, operations may be changed.
  Press ▶▶|: To skip to the next song.
  Press |◀◀: To go back to the previous song.
- When listening to a USB flash drive
  Press and hold ▶▶|: To skip to the next folder.
  Press and hold |◀◀: To go back to the previous folder.
- When listening to an iPod:
  Press and hold ▶▶|: To skip to the next song.
  Press and hold |◀◀: To go back to the previous song.

* Not available on all models

Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and clock. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.

Audio/Information Screen

Touchscreen Operation

- Use simple gestures - including touching, swiping, and scrolling - to operate certain audio functions.
- Some items may be grayed out during driving to reduce the potential for distraction.
- You can select them when the vehicle is stopped.
- Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touchscreen response.

You can change the touchscreen sensitivity setting.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 313

App Shortcut Function

1. App Shortcut Icons
2. Arrow
3. Page Indicator
4. Mode Change Switches

To change to a next screen

Selecting < or >, or swiping the screen left or right changes to the next screen.

Continued

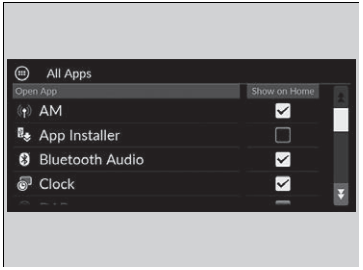
App Shortcut Function

The home screen can be added up to 6 pages.

Press the HOME button to go directly back to the first page of the home screen from any page.

■ To add app icons on the home screen

App icons can be added on the home screen.



1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **All Apps**.
3. Select the box checked on the desired apps.

To add app icons on the home screen

Pre-installed apps may not start up normally. If this occurs, you need to re-start the system. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, then set the power mode to ON. After that, start up an app again. If you are still unable to start up the apps, you need to reset the system.

➡ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 331

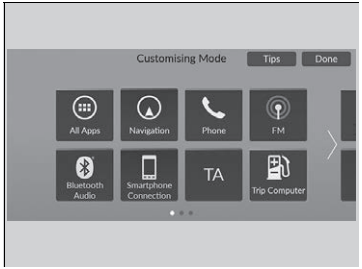
If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it may reset all the settings to their factory default.

➡ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 331

In case those apps still do not start up normally even after **Factory Data Reset**, contact your dealer.

■ To move icons on the home screen

You can change location on the home screen.



1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select and hold an icon.
   ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
4. Select **Done**.
   ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

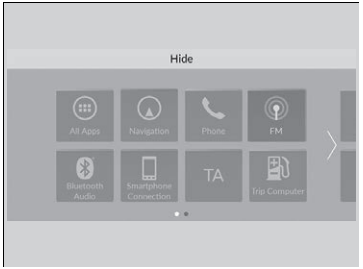
To move icons on the home screen

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

Continued

■ To remove icons on the home screen

You can delete the icons on the home screen.



1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select and hold an icon.
   ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon you want to remove to the header area.
   ▶ The icon is removed from the home screen.
4. Select **Done**.
   ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

To remove icons on the home screen

Apps will not be deleted by deleting the icon on the home screen.

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

■ To shortcut icons on the home screen

You can store up to six icons on the bottom of the home screen.

❶ Mode Change Switches

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select and hold an icon.
   ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon you want to store to the bottom of the home screen.
   ▶ The icon is stored on the mode change switch area.
4. Select **Done**.
   ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

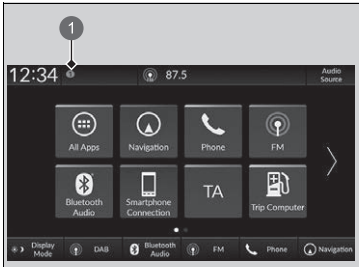
To shortcut icons on the home screen

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

Continued

■ Status Area

Shows the indicators of the information for the vehicle, connected phones, etc. in the header area. You can confirm the detail information by selecting these icons.



1. Select the system status icon.
   ▶ The status area appears.
2. Select an item to see the details.
3. Press the BACK button or select the system status icon to close the area.

❶ System Status Icon

■ Selecting an Audio Source

Select **Audio Source** on the header area, then select an icon on the source list to switch the audio source.

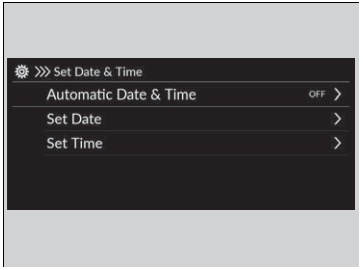
■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Clock Setup

■ Adjusting the Clock

You can adjust the time manually and set the wallpaper of the clock in the audio/information screen.



1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **Date & Time**.
5. Select **Set Date & Time**.
6. Select **Automatic Date & Time**, then select **OFF**.

To adjust date:
7. Select **Set Date**.
8. Select ▲/▼.
9. Select **Save** to set the date.

To adjust time:
7. Select **Set Time**.
8. Select ▲/▼.
9. Select **Save** to set the time.

Adjusting the Clock

The clock is automatically updated through the audio system.

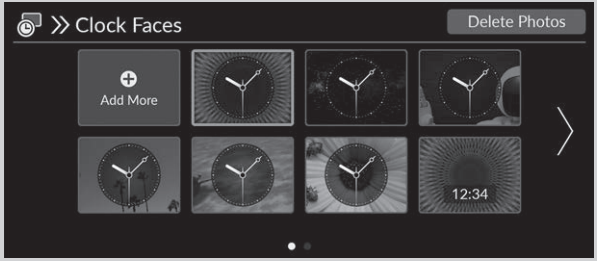
You can also adjust the clock by touching the clock displayed on the header area of the audio/information screen, **Clock** displayed on the home screen, or **All Apps**.

1. Touch the clock on the screen.
   The clock screen of the face-type appears.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Date & Time**.
4. Select **Set Date & Time**.
5. Select **Automatic Date & Time**, then select **OFF**.
6. Select **Set Date** or **Set Time**.
7. Adjusting the dates, hours and minutes by selecting ▲/▼.
8. Select **Save** to set the time.

You can customise the clock display.
System P. 314

Features

Clock Wallpaper Setup



Import clock wallpaper

1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.
   USB Ports P. 264
2. Press the HOME button.
3. Select **Clock**.
   ▶ If **Clock** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
4. Select **Settings**.
5. Select **Clock Faces**.
6. Select **Add More**.
   ▶ The image of the pictures stored in the USB flash drive are displayed on the list.
7. Select a desired picture to import.
   ▶ Multiple pictures can be selected at the same time.
8. Select **OK**.
   ▶ The selected pictures are displayed.
9. Select **Transfer**.
   ▶ It will return to the clock wallpaper setting screen.

Continued

Clock Wallpaper Setup

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory.
  Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be less than 64 bytes.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is less than 10 MB.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the message appears.
- Up to 11 pictures can be imported.
- The maximum image size is 4,096 x 2,304 pixels. If the image size is less than 1,280 x 720, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.

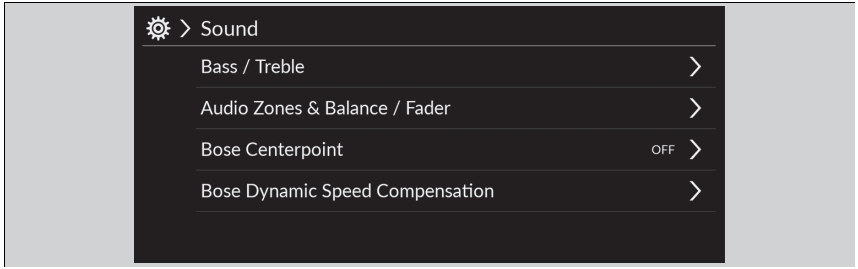
■ Select clock wallpaper

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Clock**.
▶ If **Clock** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Clock Faces**.
5. Select a desired picture to set.
▶ The preview is displayed on the screen.
6. Select **Save**.
▶ The clock screen which the wallpaper has been set is displayed.

■ Delete clock wallpaper

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Clock**.
▶ If **Clock** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Clock Faces**.
5. Select **Delete Photos**.
6. Select a desired picture to delete.
▶ Multiple pictures can be selected at the same time.
7. Select **OK**.
▶ The selected pictures are displayed.
8. Select **Delete**.
▶ It will return to the clock wallpaper setting screen.

Adjusting the Sound



1. Select an audio source.
2. Select **Sound**.
3. Select the setting you want.

Select an item from the following choices:

- **Bass / Treble:** Treble, Midrange, Bass
- **Balance / Fader**[*1]**/Audio Zones & Balance / Fader**[*2]**:** Balance, Fader, Audio Zones*
- **Bose Centerpoint**[*2]**:** Turns the Bose Centerpoint **ON** and **OFF**.
- **Speed Volume Compensation**[*1]**:** Sets the amount of volume increase.
- **Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation**[*2]**:** Sets the amount of volume increase.

*1: Models with B-type meter except Philippine models
*2: Models with A-type meter and Philippine models

* Not available on all models

Adjusting the Sound

The Speed Volume Compensation (SVC)* or Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation* adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

You can also adjust the sound the following procedure.
1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Sound**.

To reset each setting for **Bass / Treble**, **Balance / Fader**[*1], **Audio Zones & Balance / Fader**[*2], **Bose Centerpoint**[*2], **Speed Volume Compensation**[*1], and **Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation**[*2], select **Default** on each setting screen.

Display Setup

You can set the screen brightness separately for Day and Night modes.

■ Switching Display Mode Manually

Select (Display Mode).

▶ The brightness bar is displayed for a few seconds.

▶ Select or to adjust the brightness.

Display Setup

You can adjust the screen brightness by swiping or tapping on the brightness bar.

You can also change the screen brightness on the following procedures.

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Display**.
4. Select the setting you want.

To reset the settings, select **Default**.

System Updates

The audio system's firmware can be updated with a Wi-Fi connection, or with a USB device.

■ How to Update

When the audio system update is available, the notification is shown on the status area. Use the following procedure to update the system.

1. Press the HOME button.

2. Select **System Updates**.

▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

▶ The system will check for updates.

▶ If the update icon is appeared on the home screen, select the status icon.

Status Area P. 274

3. Select **Download**.

▶ A notification appears on the screen if need to user acceptance for download.

4. Select **Install Now** or **Install While Vehicle Off**.

▶ A notification appears on the screen if the update is ready.

How to Update

You can update the system via Wi-Fi, but cannot use the captive portal that require login or agreement the terms of use on the browser.

Your download will be cancelled if:

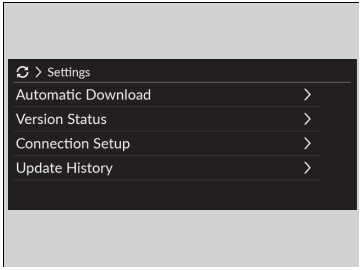
- Your Wi-Fi connection is severed.
- You turn off the power system when the 12-volt battery is low on power.

Your download will recommence the next time a Wi-Fi connection is established.

For the 12-volt battery protection, **Install While Vehicle Off** cannot be selected when the battery is low on power. If you want to install the updated data, recharge the battery or select **Install Now**.

Continued

■ System Updates Settings



The following settings can be set.

- **Automatic Download**
- **Version Status**
- **Connection Setup**
- **Update History**

■ Automatic download settings

Use the following procedure to change to the automatic download setting.

1. Press the HOME button.

2. Select **System Updates**.

▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

3. Select **Settings**.

4. Select **Automatic Download**.

5. Select the access point, then select **Enable**.

▶ If you do not want to system update automatically, select **Disable**.

■ View a version and update status

Use the following procedure to confirm the version and update status.

1. Press the HOME button.

2. Select **System Updates**.

▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.

3. Select **Settings**.

4. Select **Version Status**.

■ Connection setup

Use the following procedure to connect to the Internet via a Wi-Fi network.

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Connection Setup**.
5. Select **OK**.
6. Select **Change Mode**.
7. Select **Network**.
▶ If the vehicle's Wi-Fi is turned off, select **OFF**.

■ View the update history

Use the following procedure to confirm the update history.

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Update History**.

Continued

How to Update Wirelessly

Wireless connection mode setup

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Connection Setup**.
5. Select **OK**.
6. Select **Change Mode**.
7. Select **Network**.
▶ It will return to the network list.
8. Select an access point from the network list.
▶ If the audio system requires a password, enter a password.
9. Select **Connect**.

How to update

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **via Wireless**.
4. Select **Download**.
▶ A notification appears on the screen if need to user acceptance for download.
5. Select **Install Now** or **Install While Vehicle Off**.
▶ A notification appears on the screen if the update is ready.

How to Update with a USB Device

Download the update files from the server

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
   ▶ If **System Updates** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Other Methods**.
4. Select **Via USB**.
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen.
5. Connect a USB device into the USB port.
   ▶ The inventory data is copied into the USB device.
   USB Ports P. 264
6. Remove the USB device from the USB port.
7. Connect the USB device into your computer, and then download the update files.
   ▶ Follow the link to download the required software update files. Refer to *https://usb.honda.com* for instructions.

Update the audio system

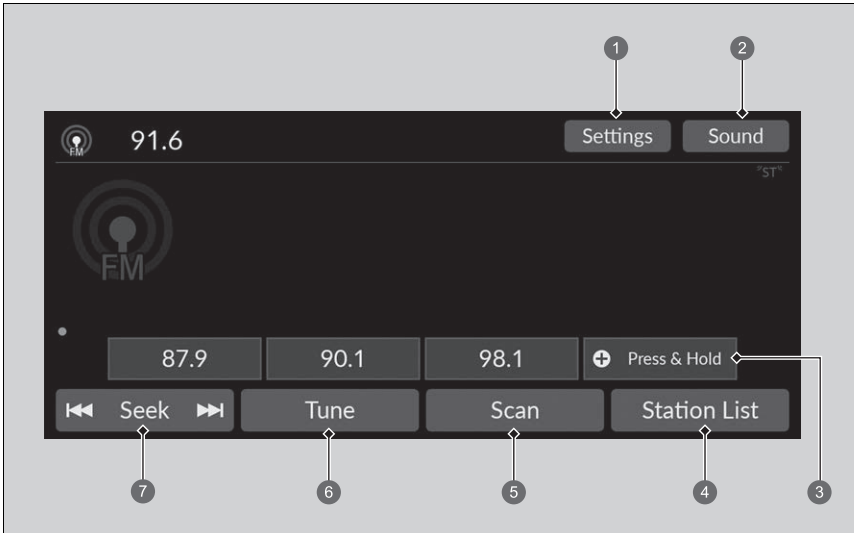
1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **System Updates**.
3. Select **Other Methods**.
4. Select **Via USB**.
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen.
5. Connect the USB device with the update files into the USB port.
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen.
   USB Ports P. 264
6. Select **Install Now**.
   ▶ A notification appears on the screen if the update is successful.

How to Update with a USB Device

A FAT32-formatted USB device between 8GB and 32GB in size with at least 8GB of free space is recommended.

Be sure to delete any previous inventory or update files from the USB before starting the USB update process.

Playing FM/AM Radio



1. **Settings Icon***
2. **Sound Icon**
3. **Preset Icons**
4. **Station List Icon**
5. **Scan Icon**
6. **Tune Icon**
7. **Seek Icon**

* Not available on all models

Preset Memory

Tunes the radio frequency for preset memory.
To store a station:
1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select and hold the preset icon to store that station.
▶ Selecting **Press & Hold** can be set a new preset station.

Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.
1. Select **Station List** to display a list.
2. Select the station.

Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.
1. Select **Station List** to display a list.
2. Select **Refresh**.

Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.
To begin scanning, select **Scan**, and to turn it off, select **Stop** or press the BACK button.

Seek

Selects |◀◀ or ▶▶| to search the selected band up or down for a station with a strong signal.

Continued

Preset Memory

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.

Switching the Audio Mode
Roll up or down to select ♫ (audio) on the left selector wheel.
➡ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 265

You can store 12 AM/FM stations into preset memory.

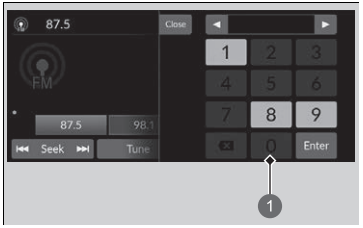
Sound

Adjusts the sound settings.

Adjusting the Sound P. 279

Radio Frequency Manual Tune Screen

Selects to use the on-screen keyboard for entering the radio frequency directly.



1. Select **Tune**.
2. Enter the desired radio frequency using the on-screen keyboard.
3. Select **Enter** to tune into the frequency.

1 On-screen Keyboard

Radio Frequency Manual Tune Screen

◀/▶ icons:
Select ◀ or ▶ to tune the radio frequency.

Radio Data System (RDS)*

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Select **Station List** to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select the station.

Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Select **Station List** to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select **Refresh**.

Traffic announcement (TA)

The TA standby function allows the system to stand by for traffic announcements in any mode while the function is on. The last tuned station must be an RDS capable traffic program station.

To turn the function on: Select **TA**. When a traffic announcement begins, the information screen appears on the audio/information screen. The system returns to your last selected mode after the traffic announcement is finished.

▶ If you want to go back to your last selected mode during the traffic announcement, select **Stop**.

To turn the function off: Select **TA** again.

Radio Data System (RDS)*

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

Traffic announcement (TA)

The **TA** indicator appears on the header area while the TA standby function is on.

If you select **Scan** while the TA standby function is on, the system searches TP station only.

Selecting **TA** while the traffic announcement is on does not cancel the TA standby function.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Settings*

Changes the RDS settings.

1. Settings.

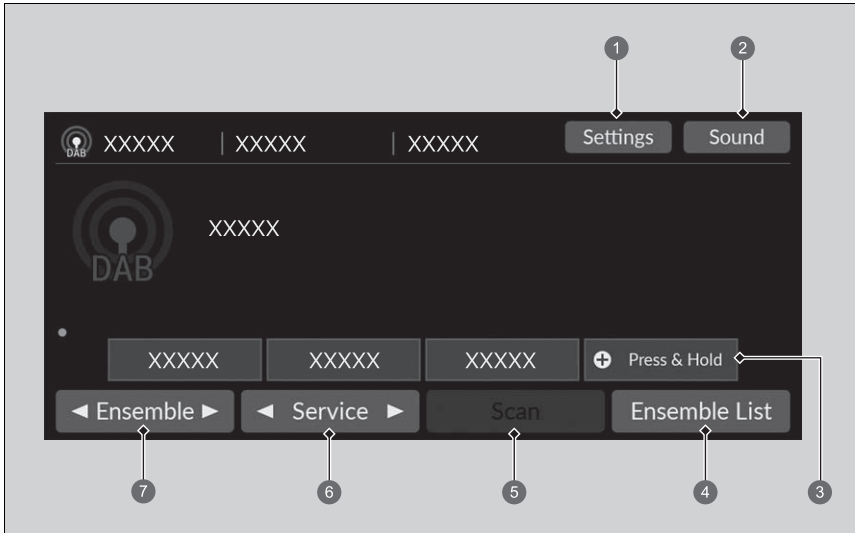
2. Select an option.

- **TA-Information:** Turns on and off the traffic information. (**ON**/**OFF***1)
- **AF:** Turns on and off to automatically change the frequency of the same program you enter different regions. (**ON**/**OFF***1)
- **REG:** Turns on and off to keep the same stations within that region even if the signal gets weak. (**ON***1/**OFF**)
- **NEWS:** Turns on and off to automatically to tune to the news program. (**ON**/**OFF***1)

*1: Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)*



1. **Settings Icon**
2. **Sound Icon**
3. **Preset Icons**
4. **Ensemble List Icon**
5. **Scan Icon**
6. **Service Icons**
7. **Ensemble Icons**

* Not available on all models

Continued

Preset Memory

Tunes the preset frequency.
To store a service:
1. Tune to the selected service.
2. Select and hold the preset icon to store that station.
▶ Selecting **Press & Hold** can be set a new preset station.

Ensemble List

Lists the receivable ensembles on the selected service.
1. Select **Ensemble List** to display a list.
2. Select the ensemble.

Manual update

Updates your available ensemble list at any time.
1. Select **Ensemble List** to display a list.
2. Select **Refresh**.

Ensemble

Tunes the ensemble.
1. Select ◀ to ▶ the tune ensemble.
2. Select and hold ◀ or ▶ to search the selected service up to down for an ensemble until a receivable ensemble is found.

Service

Tunes the service component.
To tune it, select ◀ or ▶.

Preset Memory

Switching the Audio Mode
Roll up or down to select ♫ (audio) on the left selector wheel.
➡ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 265

You can store 12 DAB stations into preset memory.

■ Scan

Samples each of the receivable ensemble or service on the selected service for 10 seconds.
To begin scanning, select **Scan**, and to turn it off, select **Cancel** or press the BACK button.

■ Sound

Adjusts the sound settings.
➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 279

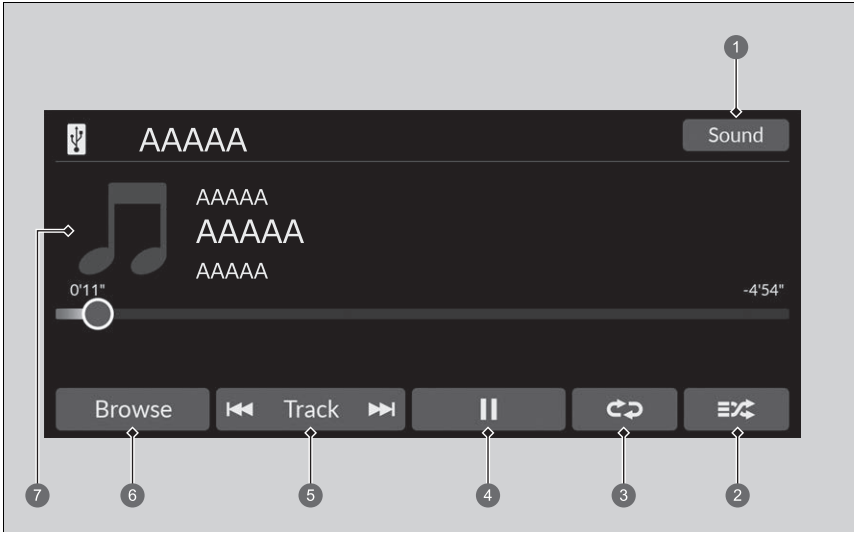
■ Settings

Changes the DAB settings.
1. Settings.
2. Select the option you want to change.

Playing an iPod

Using your USB connector, connect the iPod to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

USB Ports P. 264



❶ **Sound Icon**
❷ **Shuffle Icon**
❸ **Repeat Icon**
❹ **Play/Pause Icon**
❺ **Track Icons**
❻ **Browse Icon**
❼ **Cover Art**

Playing an iPod

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

iPod/USB Flash Drive P. 352

If you operate the music app on your iPhone/iPod while the phone is connected to the audio system, you may no longer be able to operate the same app on the audio/information screen.
Reconnect the device if necessary.

If a smartphone is connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, the iPod/USB source will be unavailable and audio files on the phone will be playable only within Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

How to Select a Song from the Music Search List

You can select to display the music search list screen.

1. Select **Browse**.
2. Select a search category.
3. Continue making selections until you find the song of your choice.

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a song.

Shuffle/Repeat

Select shuffle or repeat icon repeatedly until a desired mode.

Shuffle

(shuffle off): Shuffle mode to off.

(shuffle all songs): Plays all available songs in a selected list in random order.

Repeat

(repeat off): Repeat mode to off.

(repeat song): Repeats the current song.

(repeat all): Repeats the all songs.

To pause or resume a song

Select the play/pause icon.

Continued

How to Change a Song

You can select |◀◀ or ▶▶| to change songs. Select and hold to move rapidly within a song.

Sound

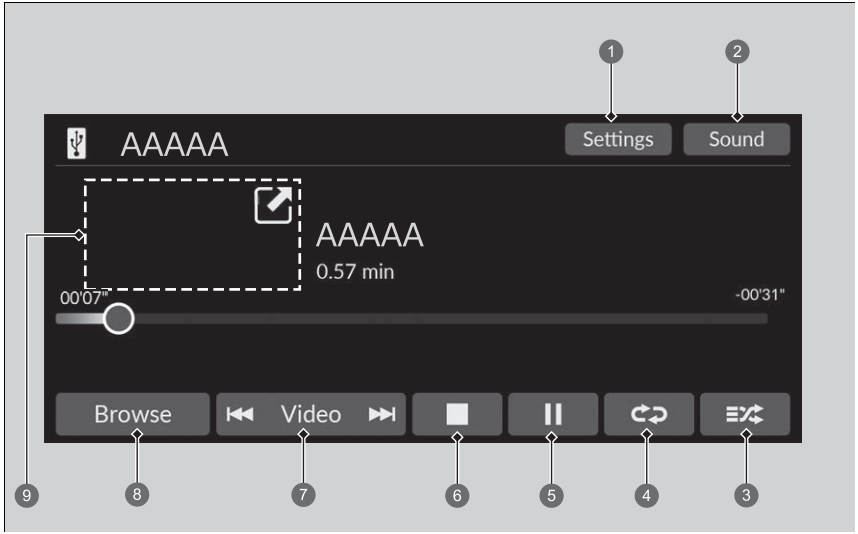
You can adjust the sound settings.

➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 279

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound and video files on a USB flash drive. Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

USB Ports P. 264



1. **Settings Icon***
2. **Sound Icon**
3. **Random Icon**
4. **Repeat Icon**
5. **Play/Pause Icon**
6. **Stop Icon***
7. **Track*/Video* Icons**
8. **Browse Icon**
9. **Cover Art*** (Playing a music)/ **Mini Player*** (Playing a video)

* Not available on all models

Continued

Playing a USB Flash Drive

You can use the following formats to play sound or video files on a USB flash drive.
When playing a sound file: MP3, WMA, AAC*1, FLAC, PCM/WAVE
When playing a video file: MP4, AVI, MKV, ASF/WMV

*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

How to Select a File from the Music Search List

You can select to display the music search list screen.

1. Select **Browse**.

2. Select **Current Playlist**, **Music**, or **Video**.

3. Continue making selections until you find the file or video of your choice.

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

➔ **General Information on the Audio System** P. 353

WMA and AAC files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.
The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

➔ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 352

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and random modes when playing a file.

Random/Repeat

Select random or repeat icon repeatedly until a desired mode.

Random

(random off): Random mode to off.

(random all files): Plays all files in random order.

(random in folder): Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Repeat

(repeat off): Repeat mode to off.

(repeat file): Repeats the current file.

(repeat folder): Repeats all files in the current folder.

When playing a video file

(stop): Select to stop a file.

/ : Select to shrink a video screen. Select to expand a video screen.

To pause or resume a file

Select the play/pause icon.

How to Change a File

Track*/Video* Icons

You can select to change files. Select and hold to move rapidly within a file.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Sound

You can adjust the sound settings.

➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 279

Settings

Changes the USB settings when playing a video file.

1. Settings.

2. Select an option.

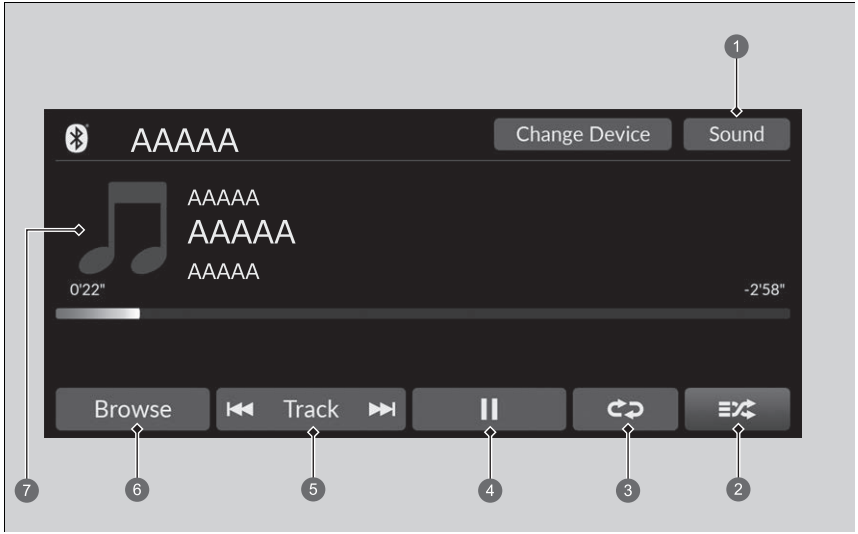
- **Image Settings:** Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen. To reset the settings, select **Default**. (**Brightness/Contrast/Black Level/Colour/Tint**).
- **Aspect Ratio:** Selects the display mode with a different aspect ratio. (**Original/Normal***1**/Full/Zoom**)
- **Overlay Clock Location:** Changes the clock display layout. (**Upper right***1**/Upper left/Lower right/Lower left/OFF**)

*1: Default Setting

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.
This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 339



❶ **Sound Icon**
❷ **Shuffle Icon**
❸ **Repeat Icon**
❹ **Play/Pause Icon**
❺ **Track Icons**
❻ **Browse Icon**
❼ **Cover Art**

Continued

Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. To check if your phone is compatible, ask a dealer.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the latest paired phone the system finds is automatically connected.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

If a phone is currently connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, *Bluetooth*® Audio from that phone will be unavailable. However, if the other phone is connected to the system, it can be used as *Bluetooth*® Audio by selecting the audio mode.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 339

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 339

2. Select the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode.

If the phone is not recognised, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a song.

Shuffle

(shuffle off): Shuffle mode to off.

(shuffle all songs): Plays all available songs in a selected list in random order.

Repeat

(repeat off): Repeat mode to off.

(repeat song): Repeats the current song.

(repeat all): Repeats the all songs.

■ To play or pause a file

Select the play/pause icon.

Searching for Music

1. Select **Browse**.
2. Select a search category.
3. Select an item.
▶ The selection begins playing.

To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

You can change the connected phone by selecting **Change Device**.
➡ **Phone Setup** P. 339

Searching for Music

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

Sound

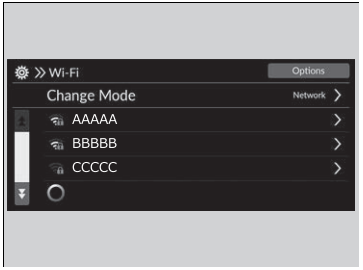
You can adjust the sound settings.

➡ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 279

Wi-Fi Connection

You can connect the audio system to the Internet using Wi-Fi on the audio/information screen. If your phone has wireless hotspot capabilities, the system can be tethered to the phone. Use the following steps to setup.

■ Connecting to a Wi-Fi Hotspot



1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Wi-Fi**.
5. Select **OK**.
6. Select **Change Mode**.
7. Select **Network**.
   ▶ If you want to turn off the Wi-Fi mode, select **OFF**.
8. Select the access point you want to connect to the system.
   ▶ To add a new network or select the saved networks, select **Options**.
   ▶ If **Options** is selected, **Add Network** and **Saved Networks** can be registered.

Wi-Fi Connection

Wi-Fi and Wi-Fi Direct a registered trademark of Wi-Fi Alliance®.

Connecting to a Wi-Fi Hotspot

You cannot go through the setting procedure while a vehicle is moving. Park in a safe place to set the audio system in Wi-Fi mode.

Some mobile phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.

Check your phone manual to find out if the phone has Wi-Fi connectivity.

You can confirm whether Wi-Fi connection is on or off with the icon on the system status area. Transmission speed and others will not be displayed on this screen.

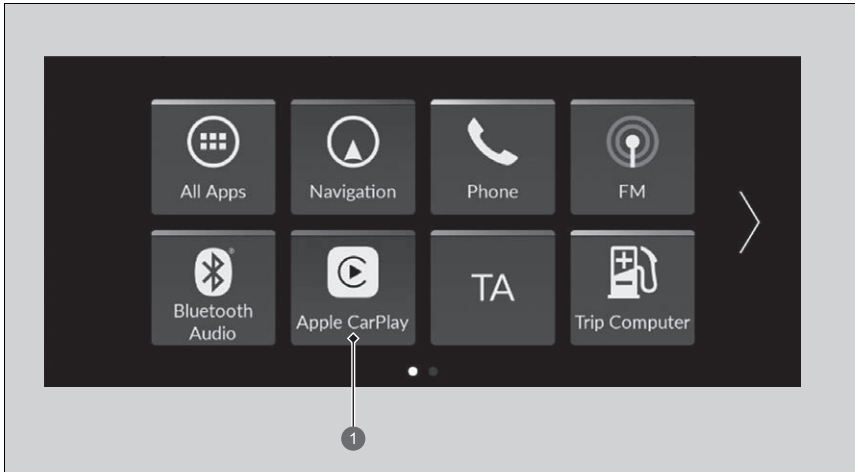
➡ **Status Area** P. 274

In case of Wi-Fi connection with your phone, make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.

Apple CarPlay

If you connect an Apple CarPlay-compatible iPhone to the system via the 2.5A USB port or wirelessly, you can use the audio/information screen, instead of the iPhone display, to make a phone call, listen to music, view maps (navigation), and access messages.

➡ **USB Ports** P. 264



❶ **Apple CarPlay**

Apple CarPlay

We recommend that you update iOS to the latest version when using Apple CarPlay.

Park in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay and when launching any compatible apps.

While connected to Apple CarPlay, calls are only made through Apple CarPlay. If you want to make a call with the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system, turn Apple CarPlay off.

➡ **Setting Up Apple CarPlay** P. 307

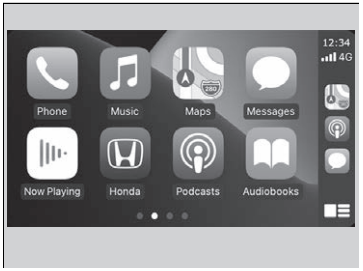
When your iPhone is connected to Apple CarPlay, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio or the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Apple CarPlay is connected.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 339

For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple homepage.

Continued

Apple CarPlay Menu



- **Phone**
  Access the contact list, make phone calls, or listen to voice mail.
- **Music**
  Play music stored on your iPhone.
- **Maps**
  Display Apple Maps and use the navigation function just as you would on your iPhone.
- **Messages**
  Check and reply to text messages, or have messages read to you.
- **Honda**
  Select the Honda icon to go back to the home screen.
-
  Go back to the Apple CarPlay menu screen.

Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay Operating Requirements & Limitations
Apple CarPlay requires a compatible iPhone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay. Refer to the Apple homepage for information on compatible apps.

Setting Up Apple CarPlay

After you have connected your iPhone to the system via the 2.5A USB port or wirelessly, use the following procedure to set up Apple CarPlay. Use of Apple CarPlay will result in the transmission of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) to your iPhone to enhance the Apple CarPlay experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the audio/information screen.

Enabling Apple CarPlay

Connecting Apple CarPlay using the USB cable to the USB port

1. Connect the iPhone to the USB port using the USB cable.
   USB Ports P. 264
   ▶ The confirmation screen will be displayed.
2. Select **Yes**.
   ▶ If you do not want to connect Apple CarPlay, select **No**.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone Connection** settings menu.

Connect Apple CarPlay wirelessly

1. Pair and connect the iPhone to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.
   Phone Setup P. 339
2. Check the box on **Apple CarPlay**.
   ▶ If you select **Apple CarPlay**, you cannot select **Audio** and **Phone**.
3. Select **Connect**.
   ▶ If your iPhone asks to accept for connecting Apple CarPlay, accept for connection.

Continued

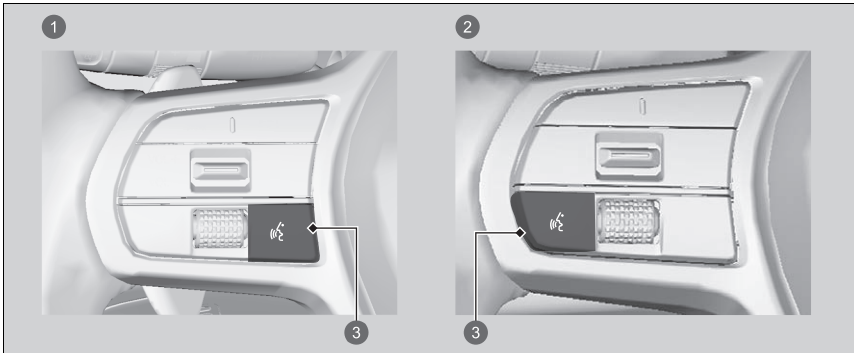
Setting Up Apple CarPlay

You can also use the method below to set up Apple CarPlay:
Select General Settings → Smartphone Connection → Apple CarPlay → Select device

Use of user and vehicle information
The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.

Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Press and hold the (talk) button to activate Siri.



1 Models with A-type meter
2 Models with B-type meter
3 (Talk) Button

Press and hold to activate Siri.
Press again to deactivate Siri.
Press and release to activate standard voice recognition system.

Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Below are examples of questions and commands for Siri:

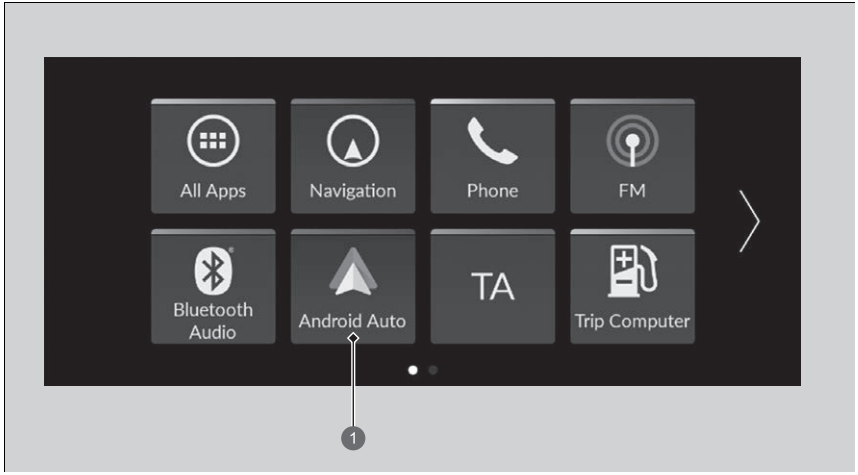
- What movies are playing today?
- Call dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How's the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.

For more information, please visit *www.apple.com/ios/siri*.

Android Auto™

When you connect an Android phone to the audio system via the USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated. When connected via Android Auto, you can use the audio/information screen to access the Phone, Google Maps (Navigation), Google Play Music, and Google Now functions. When you first use Android Auto, a tutorial will appear on the screen.
We recommend that you complete this tutorial while safely parked before using Android Auto.

➡ **USB Ports** P. 264
➡ **Auto Pairing Connection** P. 311



❶ **Android Auto**

Continued

Android Auto™

We recommend that you update Android OS to the latest version when using Android Auto.
Bluetooth A2DP cannot be used while your phone is connected to Android Auto.

To use Android Auto on a smartphone with Android 9.0 (Pie) or earlier, you need to download the Android Auto app from Google Play to your smartphone.

Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto and when launching any compatible apps.

To use Android Auto, connect the USB cable to the USB port.

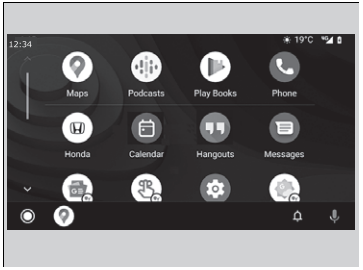
➡ **USB Ports** P. 264

When your Android phone is connected to Android Auto, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Android Auto is connected.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 339

Android Auto is a trademark of Google LLC.

Android Auto Menu



- **Maps**
  Display Google Maps and use the navigation function just as you would with your Android phone. When the vehicle is in motion, it is not possible to make keyboard entries. Stop the vehicle in a safe location to undertake a search or provide other inputs.
- **Phone**
  Make and receive phone calls as well as listen to voicemail.
- **Honda**
-
  Operate Android Auto with your voice.
-
  You can check Android notifications.
- (Android Auto Home)
  Display useful information organised by Android Auto into simple cards that appear just when they're needed.

Android Auto™

For details on countries and regions where Android Auto is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto homepage.

Screens may differ depending on the version of the Android Auto app you are using.

Android Auto Operating Requirements & Limitations
Android Auto requires a compatible Android phone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto. Refer to the Android Auto homepage for information on compatible apps.

■ Auto Pairing Connection

When you connect an Android phone to the unit via the USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated.

■ Enabling Android Auto

To enable Android Auto after connecting an Android phone to the system, select **Yes** on the screen.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone Connection** settings menu.

Enabling Android Auto

Only initialize Android Auto when you are safely parked. When Android Auto first detects your phone, you will need to set up your phone so that auto pairing is possible. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your phone.

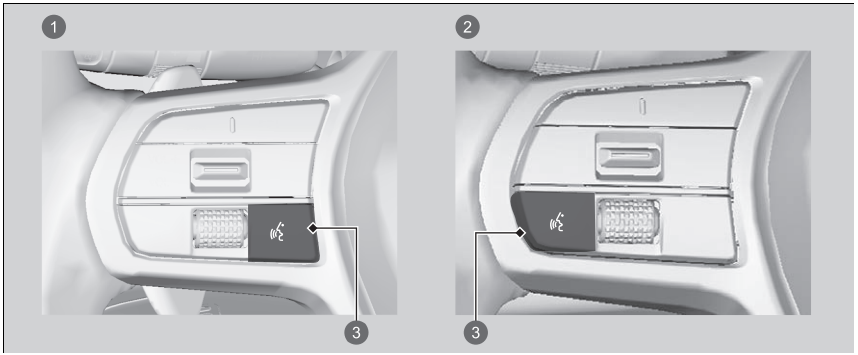
You can use the method below to change Android Auto settings after you have completed the initial setup:
Select General Settings → Smartphone Connection → Android Auto → Select device

Use of user and vehicle information
The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your phone by Android Auto is governed by the Google's Privacy Policy.

Continued

Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Press and hold the (talk) button to operate Android Auto with your voice.



1 Models with A-type meter
2 Models with B-type meter
3 (Talk) Button

Press and hold to operate Android Auto with your voice.
Press and release to activate standard voice recognition system.

Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Below are examples of commands you can give with voice recognition:

- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Honda.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

For more information, please refer to the Android Auto homepage.

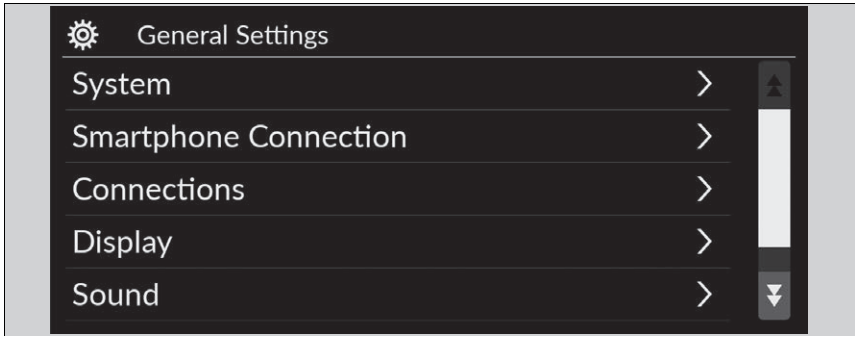
You can also activate the voice recognition function by selecting the icon in the lower-left corner of the screen.

Customized Features

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

How to Customize the General Settings

With the power mode in ON, select **General Settings**, then select a setting item.



- **System** P. 314
- **Smartphone Connection** P. 316
- **Connections** P. 317
- **Display** P.
- **Sound** P. 319
- **Camera** P. 320

Continued

Customized Features

When you customize settings:
- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Put the transmission into P.

■ System

Customizable Features			Description	Selectable Settings
Date & Time	**Set Date & Time**	**Automatic Date & Time**	Selects **ON** to have the GPS automatically adjust the clock. Select **OFF** to cancel this function.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
		Set Date	Adjusts date. ➡ **Adjusting the Clock** P. 276	**Day/Month/Year**
		Set Time	Adjusts time. ➡ **Adjusting the Clock** P. 276	**Hour/Minute AM/PM**
	Time Zone	**Automatic Time Zone**	Sets the audio system to automatically adjust the clock when driving through different time zones.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
		(Select time zone)	Changes the time zone manually.	—
	Auto Daylight Saving Time		Sets the clock to update based on daylight savings time.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
	Date Format		Select a date format.	**MM/DD/YYYY/ DD/MM/YYYY**[*1]**/ YYYY/MM/DD**
	Time Format		Select a time format.	**12-H**[*1]**/24-H**

*1:Default Setting

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Language		Changes the driver information interface and audio/information screen language separately.	**English**[*1]/**Thai**[*1] See other selectable languages on the screen.
Touch Panel Sensitivity		Sets the sensitivity of the touch panel screen.	**High**/**Normal**[*1]
System Volumes	**System Sounds**	Sets the system sound volume level.	—
	Text-to-Speech	Sets the text-to-speech volume level.	—
	Navigation Guidance	Sets the navigation guidance volume level.	—
	Phone Calls	Sets the phone call volume level.	—
	Default	Resets all **System Volumes** settings to default values.	
Refuel recommend*		Turns the refuel recommend function on and off.	**ON**[*1]/**OFF**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
About	**Status**	Displays the Android setting items.	—
	Legal Information		
	Model Number		
	Android Version		
	Kernel Version		
	Build Number		
Factory Data Reset		Resets all the settings to their factory default. ➡ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 331	**Continue/Cancel**
Detail Information	**App Manager**	Displays the Android system memory and apps information.	—

■ Smartphone Connection

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Apple CarPlay	**+ Connect New Device**	Pairs a new phone to Apple CarPlay. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 339	—
	(Saved Devices)	Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 339	—
Android Auto	(Saved Devices)	Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 339	—

■ Connections

Customizable Features			Description	Selectable Settings
Wi-Fi	**Change Mode**		Changes the Wi-Fi mode.	**Network**[*1]/ **Smartphone**[*2]/**OFF**
	(Available Networks/Connected Devices)		Displays the available network(s) or current connected device(s).	—
	Options	**Add Network**	Adds a new network to connect Wi-Fi.	—
		Saved Networks	Saves the connected network.	—
Bluetooth	**Options**	**Bluetooth**	Turns the *Bluetooth*® on and off.	**ON**[*1]/**OFF**
		Priority Device	Sets a device as the priority device.	—
	+ Connect New Device		Pairs a new phone to HFT. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 339	—
	(Saved Devices)		Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone. ➡ **Phone Setup** P. 339	—

*1:Default Setting
*2:Appears only when Apple CarPlay is connected.

Continued

■ Display

Models with A-type meter

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Day Mode	**Brightness**	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
	Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	—
	Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	—
	Default	Resets all customized settings for the brightness, contrast, and black level.	—
Night Mode	**Brightness**	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
	Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	—
	Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	—
	Default	Resets all customized settings for the brightness, contrast, and black level.	—

Models with B-type meter

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Brightness	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	—
Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	—
Default	Resets all customized settings for the brightness, contrast, and black level.	—

■ Sound

Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Bass / Treble	**Treble**	Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound. ➔ **Adjusting the Sound** P. 279	—
	Midrange		
	Bass		
Balance / Fader[*1] **/Audio Zones & Balance / Fader**[*2]			
Bose Centerpoint[*2]			
Speed Volume Compensation[*1] **/Bose Dynamic Speed Compensation**[*2]			

*1:Models with B-type meter except Philippine models
*2:Models with A-type meter and Philippine models

Continued

■ Camera

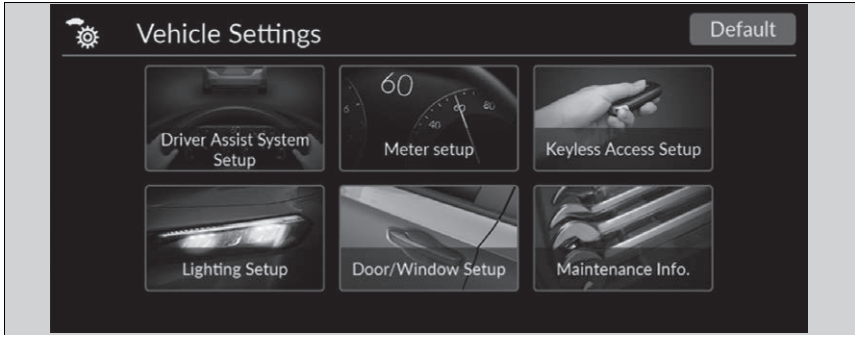
Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Rear Camera	**Fixed Guideline**	Shows the guideline that does not move with the steering wheel. ➡ **Multi-View Rear Camera** P. 581	**ON***1**/OFF**
	Dynamic Guideline	Shows the guideline that moves with the steering wheel. ➡ **Multi-View Rear Camera** P. 581	**ON***1**/OFF**
Cross Traffic Monitor*		Shows arrows on the rear camera image to indicate vehicles approaching from the sides. ➡ **Cross Traffic Monitor*** P. 577	**ON***1**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

With the power mode in ON, select **Vehicle Settings**, then select a setting item.



- **Driver Assist System Setup** ➡ P. 322
- **Meter setup** ➡ P. 324
- **Keyless Access Setup** ➡ P. 326
- **Lighting Setup** ➡ P. 327
- **Door/Window Setup** ➡ P. 328
- **Maintenance Info.** ➡ P. 329
- **INDIVIDUAL Settings*** ➡ P. 330

How to Customize the Vehicle Settings

If **Vehicle Settings** is not displayed on the home screen, select **All Apps**. You can change the displayed icons on the home screen.
➡ **App Shortcut Function** P. 269

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Driver Assist System Setup

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Forward Collision Warning Distance/Preceding vehicle proximity warning distance	Selects distance for Forward Collision Warning audible and visual alerts. ➡ **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)** P. 460	Hong Kong, Macanese and Philippine models **Long/Normal*1/Short** Except Hong Kong, Macanese and Philippine models **Far/Normal*1/Near**
ACC Forward Vehicle Detect Beep/ACC vehicle ahead detected beep	Turns On/Off audible notification when vehicle has moved in/out of adaptive cruise control range. ➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*** P. 473	**ON/OFF*1**
Lead car departure notification system*	Changes the setting for the lead car departure notification system.	**Normal*1/Early/OFF**
Road departure mitigation setting	Selects operating mode of the Road Departure Mitigation system. ➡ **Road Departure Mitigation System** P. 530	Except Australian and New Zealand models **Narrow/Normal*1/Wide/ Warning Only** Australian and New Zealand models **Early/Normal/Delayed*1**
Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep/Lane keep assist beep	Selects On/Off the LKAS alert for not detecting road lines. ➡ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 508	**ON/OFF*1**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Blind Spot Info/Blind spot information*	Selects On/Off the blind spot information system audible alert. ➡ **Blind Spot Information System*** P. 449	Hong Kong, Macanese and Philippine models **Audible And Visual Alert*1/ Visual Alert** Except Hong Kong, Macanese and Philippine models **Audible and visual alert*1/ Visual Alert Only**
Driver Attention Monitor	Selects alert type for Driver Attention Monitor. ➡ **Driver Attention Monitor** P. 170	Hong Kong, Macanese and Philippine models **OFF/Tactile Alert/Tactile And Audible Alert*1** Except Hong Kong, Macanese and Philippine models **OFF/Tactile alert only/ Tactile and audible alert*1**
Traffic sign recognition system display*	Displays the traffic sign recognition system on the instrument panel. ➡ **Traffic Sign Recognition System*** P. 543	**Display*1/None**
Traffic sign recognition system over speed warning*	Enables over speed limit warning when speed limit is exceeded. ➡ **Traffic Sign Recognition System*** P. 543	**ON*1/OFF**
Rev match system*	Selects On/Off the rev match system. ➡ **Rev Match System** P. 411	**ON*1/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Meter setup

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Adjust outside temp. display	Selects to adjust outside temperature reading by a few degrees. ➡ **Outside Temperature** P. 136	**-3°C ~ ±0°C**[*1] **~ +3°C**
Gear position display*	Turns on and off the gear position display feature. ➡ **Gear Position Indicator*** P. 118	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Trip A reset timing	Selects the timing to reset Trip A. ➡ **Range/Fuel/Odometer*/Trip Meter** P. 142,163 ➡ **Speed/Time/Odometer*/Trip Meter** P. 144,166	Hong Kong, Macanese and Philippine models **When Fully Refueled/IGN OFF/ Manually Reset**[*1] Except Hong Kong, Macanese and Philippine models **When fully refueled/When ignition is turned OFF/Manual reset**[*1]
Trip B reset timing	Selects the timing to reset Trip B. ➡ **Range/Fuel/Odometer*/Trip Meter** P. 142,163 ➡ **Speed/Time/Odometer*/Trip Meter** P. 144,166	Hong Kong, Macanese and Philippine models **When Fully Refueled/IGN OFF/ Manually Reset**[*1] Except Hong Kong, Macanese and Philippine models **When fully refueled/When ignition is turned OFF/Manual reset**[*1]

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Adjust Alarm Volume/Alarm volume control	Changes volume level of all system warnings, door opening warning and indicator.	Hong Kong, Macanese and Philippine models **High/Normal*1/Low** Except Hong Kong, Macanese and Philippine models **Max/Mid*1/Min**
Rev. indicator*	Turns the rev indicators on and off. ➔ **Rev Indicators*** P. 138	**ON*1/OFF**
Fuel efficiency backlight	Turns On/Off the ambient meter colour change.	**ON*1/OFF**
Turn By Turn Auto Display/ Turn by turn display	Turns on/off the pop-up warning in the turn-by-turn navigation in the driver information interface. ➔ **Turn-by-Turn Directions** P. 145	**ON*1/OFF**
Tachometer*	Turns On/Off tachometer in the meter display.	**ON*1/OFF**
Rear seat reminder	Turns ON or OFF notifications when there may be an object in the rear seats. ➔ **Rear Seat Reminder** P. 231	**ON*1/OFF**
Shift up alarm*	Changes whether alarm sounds when the tachometer reading approaches the red zone. ➔ **Tachometer** P. 135	**ON*1/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Keyless Access Setup

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Keyless access beep volume	Selects volume of audible notification when doors are unlocked/locked by holding or touching the sensor switch on outer door handles.	Hong Kong, Macanese and Philippine models **High***1/**Low** Except Hong Kong, Macanese and Philippine models **Max***1/**Min**
Keyless access light flash	Turns On/Off flash of exterior lights when doors are unlocked/locked by holding or touching the sensor switch on outer door handles.	**ON***1/**OFF**
Keyless access beep	Turns On/Off audible notification when doors are unlocked/locked by holding or touching the sensor switch on outer door handles.	**ON***1/**OFF**

*1:Default Setting

■ Lighting Setup

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Auto High Beam	Turns on/off auto high beam function.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Interior Light Dimming Time/Interior light dimmer duration	Selects the length of time the interior lights stay on after doors are closed. ➡ **Interior Light Switch** P. 236	**60sec/30sec**[*1]**/15sec**
Headlight auto OFF timer	Selects the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door. ➡ **Automatic Lighting Off Feature** P. 211	**60sec/30sec/15sec**[*1]**/0sec**
Auto Headlight On with Wiper On/Headlight integration with wipers	Selects On/Off headlight function and wiper operation when the headlight is in **AUTO** setting. ➡ **Headlight Integration with Wipers** P. 211	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

Continued

■ Door/Window Setup

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Walk Away Auto Lock/Walk away lock	Turns On/Off walk away auto lock function.	**ON/OFF**[*1]
Keyless Lock Answer Back/ Keyless lock notification	Turns on/off flash of exterior lights when doors are locked/unlocked by remote. ➲ **Using the Remote Transmitter** P. 192	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Auto Folding Door Mirror	Selects door mirror auto folding operation.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**
Auto door lock[*]	Select the timing of auto door lock activation.	**OFF/With vehicle speed**[*1]**/ Shift from P**
Auto door unlock[*]	Select the timing of automatic door unlock.	**OFF/Driver Door With Shift To P**[*1]**/All Doors With Shift To P/Driver door with IGN OFF/All doors with IGN OFF**
Remote Window Control	Turns the remote window control on and off.	**ON**[*1]**/OFF**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

■ Maintenance Info.

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Maintenance Info.	Resets the maintenance information. ➡ **Oil Monitor System** P. 593	Hong Kong, Macanese and Philippine models **Select Reset Items** Except Hong Kong, Macanese and Philippine models **Selects Reset Items**

Continued

■ INDIVIDUAL Settings*

Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Engine	Selects the responsiveness of the engine. ➔ **Customizing the INDIVIDUAL Settings** P. 430	**COMFORT/SPORT*1/+R**
Suspension	Selects the firmness of the suspension. ➔ **Customizing the INDIVIDUAL Settings** P. 430	**COMFORT/SPORT*1/+R**
Steering	Selects the level of steering effort. ➔ **Customizing the INDIVIDUAL Settings** P. 430	**COMFORT/SPORT*1/+R**
Gauge	Selects the gauges to be displayed in the Driver Information Interface. ➔ **Customizing the INDIVIDUAL Settings** P. 430	**COMFORT/SPORT*1/+R**
Rev Match	Selects the Rev Match responsiveness. ➔ **Customizing the INDIVIDUAL Settings** P. 430	**COMFORT/SPORT*1**
Engine Sound	Selects the effect of Engine Sound. ➔ **Customizing the INDIVIDUAL Settings** P. 430	**COMFORT/SPORT*1/+R**

*1:Default Setting

* Not available on all models

Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.

■ Defaulting General Settings

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **Factory Data Reset**.
▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen.
5. Select **Continue** to reset the settings.
6. Select **Continue** again to reset the settings.
▶ The system will reboot.

■ Defaulting Vehicle Settings

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **Vehicle Settings**.
3. Select **Default**.
4. Select **Yes**.

Defaulting All the Settings

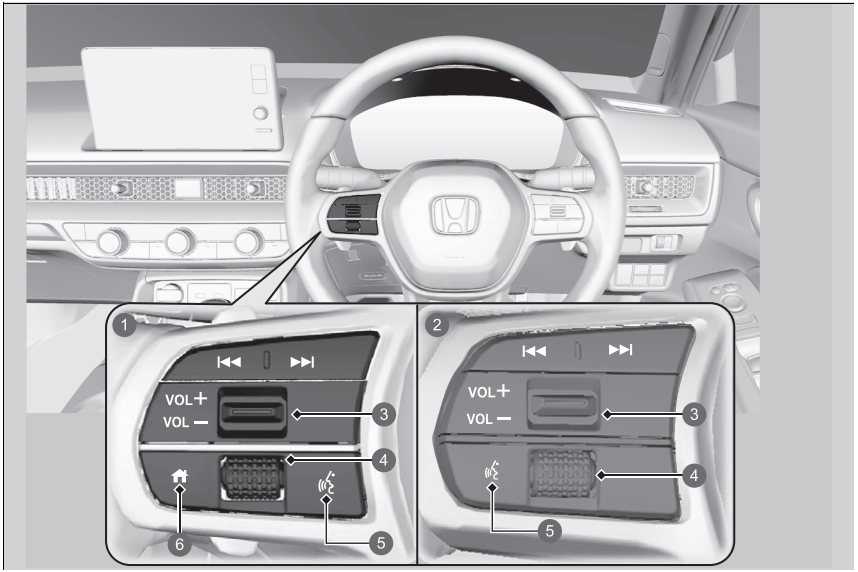
When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.

Hands-Free Telephone System

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

■ HFT Buttons



❶ Models with A-type meter
❷ Models with B-type meter
❸ **VOL** ⊞/**VOL** ⊟ (Volume) Switch
❹ Left Selector Wheel
❺ (Talk) Button
❻ (Home) Button

Hands-Free Telephone System

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.

To use the system, the **Bluetooth** setting must be **ON**.

➡ **Phone Setup** P. 339

Voice control tips

- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphones.
- Press the button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, the volume level is able to change by the audio system's volume.

If there is no Favourite contacts entry in the system, the pop-up notification appears on the screen.

➡ **Favourite Contacts** P. 344

(Talk) button: Press to access Voice Portal.

(Home) button*: Press to go back to the home screen of the driver information interface.

Models with A-type meter

Left Selector Wheel: Press the (home) button, then roll up or down to select (phone) on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

Models with B-type meter

Left Selector Wheel: Roll up or down to select **Phone** on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

While receiving a call, the incoming call screen is displayed on the driver information interface. You can pick up the call using the left selector wheel.

Receiving a Call P. 350

Hands-Free Telephone System

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

HFT Limitations

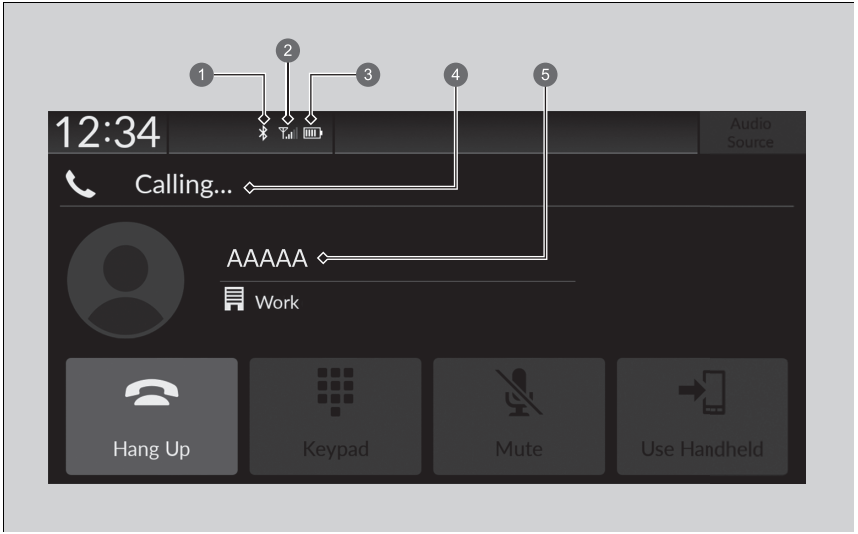
An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ HFT Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



❶ *Bluetooth*® Indicator
Appears when your phone is connected to HFT.
❷ Signal Strength
❸ Battery Level Status
❹ HFT Mode
❺ Caller's Name (If registered)/Caller's Number (If not registered)

HFT Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored phonebook names or numbers can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

➔ **Favourite Contacts** P. 344

Continued

HFT Menus

The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON to use the system. Select **Phone** to display the phone screen.

1. **Settings**
2. **Recent calls**
3. **Favourite contacts**
4. **Contacts**
5. **Keypad**

HFT Menus

Some functions are limited while driving.

Recent calls: Displays the last outgoing, incoming, and missed calls.
➡ **To make a call using the recent calls** P. 348

Favourite contacts: Dials the selected number in the Favourite contacts entry.
➡ **To make a call using a Favourite contacts entry** P. 348

Settings: Changes the phone settings.
➡ **Phone Settings Screen** P. 338

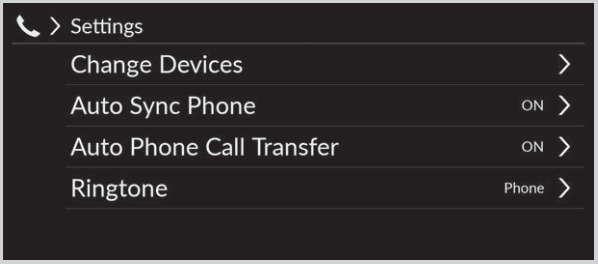
Contacts: Displays the phonebook of the paired phone.
➡ **To make a call using the imported phonebook** P. 349

Keypad: Enters a phone number to dial.
➡ **To make a call using a phone number** P. 349

Continued

Phone Settings Screen

To display the phone settings screen, select **Settings** on the phone screen.



Change Devices: Pairs a new phone to the system and connect, disconnect, or delete a paired device.

Phone Setup P. 339

Auto Sync Phone: Sets phonebook and recent calls data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFT.

Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls P. 342

Auto Phone Call Transfer: Sets calls to automatically transfer from your phone to HFT when you enter the vehicle.

Automatic Transferring P. 343

Ringtone: Selects the ringtone.

Ringtone P. 343

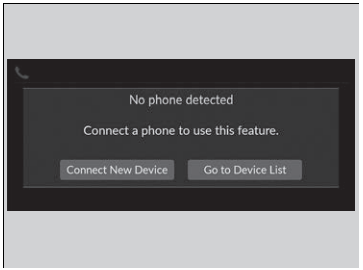
Phone Setup

■ *Bluetooth*® setup

You can turn *Bluetooth*® function on and off.

1. Press the HOME button.
2. Select **General Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Bluetooth**.
5. Select **Options**.
6. Select **Bluetooth**, then select **ON**.

Continued



■ **To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)**

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Connect New Device**.
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
4. Select **Honda HFT** from your phone.
   ▶ If you want to pair a phone from this audio system, select **Search for Devices**, and then select your phone when it appears on the list.
5. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
   ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match.
   This may vary by a phone.
6. Select desired functions and then select **Connect**.
7. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.
8. Select **OK**.

Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:
- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with the following icons.

: The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.

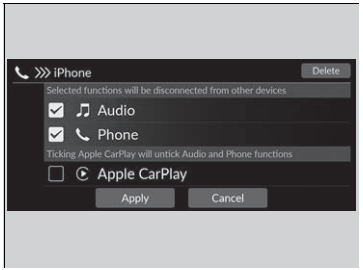
: The phone can be used with HFT.

: The phone is compatible with Apple CarPlay.

If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay pairing of additional *Bluetooth*® compatible devices is unavailable.

■ To change the currently paired phone

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Change Devices**.
4. Select a phone to connect.
   ▶ HFT disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.
   ▶ You can set the connected phone priority. Select the box checked on the phone you want to prioritize.
5. Select (audio), (phone), or (Apple CarPlay).
   ▶ and can be selected simultaneously, however, when is selected, and cannot be selected.
6. Select **Apply**.



■ To delete a paired phone

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Change Devices**.
4. Select a phone you want to delete.
5. Select **Delete**.
6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Delete**.

To change the currently paired phone

If no other phones are found or paired when trying to switch to another phone, HFT will inform you that the original phone is connected again.

To pair other phones, select **+ Connect New Device** from the **Bluetooth** screen.

Continued

■ Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and recent calls are automatically imported to the system.

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Auto Sync Phone**.
4. Select **ON** or **OFF**.
▶ The default setting is **ON**.

Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls

On some phones, it is necessary to set up it enabled to be imported the mobile phonebook.

When you select a name from the list in the mobile phonebook, you can see a category icon. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.

★	Pref		Fax
	Home		Car
	Mobile		Voice
	Work		Other
	Pager		

On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Recent calls are updated after every connection or call.

■ Automatic Transferring

If you get into the vehicle while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFT.

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Auto Phone Call Transfer**.
4. Select **ON** or **OFF**.
▶ The default setting is **ON**.

■ Ringtone

You can change the ringtone setting.

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Ringtone**.
4. Select **Vehicle** or **Phone**.
▶ The default setting is **Phone**.

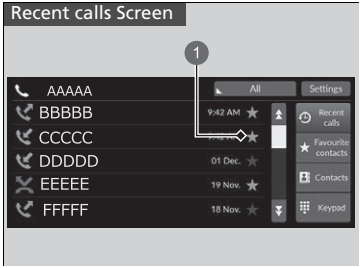
Ringtone

Vehicle: The fixed ringtone sounds from the speakers.
Phone: Depending on the make and model of the mobile phone, the ringtone stored in the phone will sound if the phone is connected.

Continued

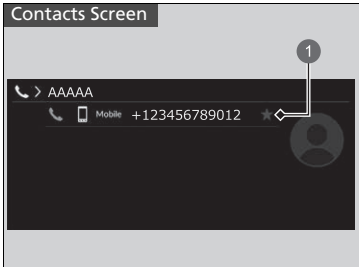
■ Favourite Contacts

Recent calls Screen



1 Star Icon

Contacts Screen



1 Star Icon

■ To add a Favourite contacts

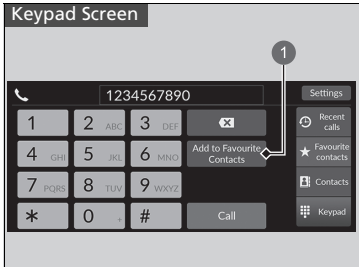
1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Recent calls**, **Contacts**, or **Keypad**.

On the Recent calls or Contacts screen

3. Select the star icon.

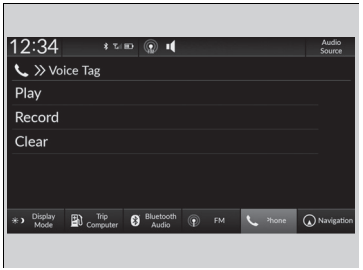
On the Keypad screen

3. Select **Add to Favourite Contacts**.
   - ▶ A notification appears on the screen if the Favourite contacts is successfully stored.
   - ▶ To remove the Favourite contacts, select the star icon again.



❶ **Add to Favourite Contacts**

Continued



■ To add a voice tag to a stored Favourite contacts entry

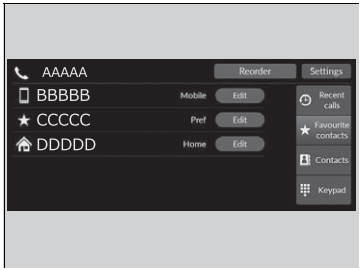
1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts**.
3. Select **Edit** on the Favourite contacts entry you want to edit.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.
5. Select **Record**.
6. Select **Record**, or use the button and follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

■ To delete a voice tag

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts**.
3. Select **Edit** on the Favourite contacts entry you want to edit.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.
5. Select **Clear**.
6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

To add a voice tag to a stored Favourite contacts entry

Avoid using duplicate voice tags.
Avoid using "*home*" as a voice tag.
It is easier for the system to recognise a longer name.
For example, use "*John Smith*" instead of "*John*."



■ To edit a Favourite contacts

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts**.
3. Select **Edit** on the Favourite contacts entry you want to edit.
4. Select a setting you want.
5. Select **Done**.

■ To delete a Favourite contacts

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Favourite contacts**.
3. Select **Edit** on the Favourite contacts entry you want to delete.
4. Select **Remove**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

Continued

Making a Call

You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported **Recent calls**, **Favourite contacts**, and **Contacts** entries.

To make a call using the recent calls

Recent calls are stored by **All**, **Dialled**, **Missed**, and **Received**.

1. Select **Phone**.

2. Select **Recent calls**.

▶ You can sort by **All**, **Dialled**, **Missed**, or **Received**. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.

3. Select a number.

▶ Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using a Favourite contacts entry

1. Select **Phone**.

2. Select **Favourite contacts**.

▶ You can change the order of Favourite contacts entries by selecting **Reorder**.

3. Select a number.

▶ Dialing starts automatically.

Making a Call

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

While there is an active connection with Apple CarPlay, phone calls cannot be made with Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system and are only made from Apple CarPlay.

To make a call using the recent calls

The recent calls appear only when a phone is connected to the system.

All: Displays the last outgoing, incoming, and missed calls.
Dialled: Displays the last outgoing calls.
Missed: Displays the last missed calls.
Received: Displays the last incoming calls.

■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Contacts**.
3. Select a name.
▶ You can sort by **First Name** or **Surname***1/**Last Name***2. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.
4. Select a number.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

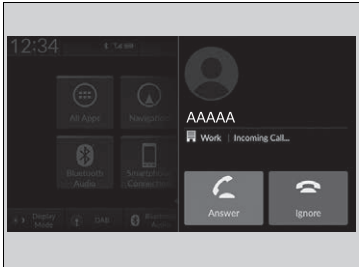
■ To make a call using a phone number

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Keypad**.
3. Select a number.
▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering numbers.
4. Select **Call**.
▶ Dialing starts automatically.

*1: Hong Kong, Macanese and Philippine models
*2: Except Hong Kong, Macanese and Philippine models

Continued

Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming Call...** screen appears.

You can answer the call using the left selector wheel.

To pick the call, roll up or down to select (answer) on the driver information interface and then press the left selector wheel.

▶ If you want to decline or end the call, select (ignore) on the driver information interface using the left selector wheel.

Receiving a Call

Call Waiting

Select (answer) to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

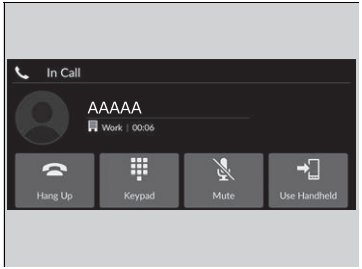
Select using the left selector wheel to return to the current call.

Select (ignore) to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Select if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of and on the driver information interface.

■ Options During a Call



The following options are available during a call.
Keypad: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.
Mute: Mute your voice.
Use Handheld: Transfer a call from the system to your phone.

The available options are shown on the lower half of the screen.

Select the option.
▶ The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected when the other source screen other than the phone screen is displayed. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

Options During a Call

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen.

iPod/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
No response from device[*1] **Device No Response**[*2]	Appears when the system does not communicate with a connected device. If it appears when a device is connected, contact your place of device purchase.
Connect Retry	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.
Unplayable File	Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are copyright protected or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about five seconds, then plays the next file.
No Data	iPod Appears when the iPod is empty. USB flash drive Appears when the USB flash drive is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, AAC, FLAC, PCM/WAVE, MP4, AVI, MKV, or ASF/WMV files in the USB flash drive. iPod and USB flash drive Check that compatible files are stored on the device.
Unsupported	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device.
USB hub not supported	Appears when only a HUB is connected. If it appears, connect a USB flash drive to the HUB.
A charging error has occurred with the connected USB device. When safe please check the compatibility of the device and USB cable and try again.	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.

*1: Hong Kong, Macanese and Philippine models
*2: Except Hong Kong, Macanese and Philippine models

Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

Model
Made for iPod touch (5th to 6th generation) released between 2012 and 2015
Made for iPhone4S/iPhone 5/iPhone 5s/iPhone 5c/iPhone 6/iPhone 6 Plus/ iPhone 6S/iPhone 6S Plus/iPhone SE/iPhone 7/iPhone 7 Plus/iPhone 8/ iPhone 8 Plus/ iPhone X/iPhone XS/iPhone XS Max/iPhone XR/iPhone 11/iPhone 11 Pro/iPhone 11 Pro Max

USB Flash Drives

- A USB flash drive of 256 MB or higher is recommended.
- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Each audio system is compatible the following formats. Some versions of the formats may be unsupported.
  MP3, WMA, AAC, FLAC, PCM/WAVE, MP4, AVI, MKV, ASF/WMV

iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

USB Flash Drives

Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.

Continued

Recommended Devices

MP4 File

Media	USB Flash Drive	
Profile (MP4 version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MailProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	SimpleProfile/Level 5 (MPEG4)
File extension (MP4 version)	.mp4/.m4v	
Compatible audio codec	AAC, MP3	
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2)
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	8 Mbps (MPEG4)
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	720 × 576 pixels (MPEG4)

AVI File

Media	USB Flash Drive		
Profile (AVI version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MailProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	SimpleProfile/Level 5 (MPEG4)	AdvancedProfile/Level 2, MainProfile/Level Medium, SimpleProfile/Level Medium (VC-1)
File extension (AVI version)	.avi		
Compatible audio codec	AAC, MP3, WMA		
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2)	VC-1
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	8 Mbps (MPEG4)	20 Mbps, 10 Mbps, 384 kbps (VC-1)
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	720 × 576 pixels (MPEG4)	1,280 × 720 pixels, 720 x 480 pixels, 352 x 288 pixels (VC-1)

■ MKV File

Media	USB Flash Drive		
Profile (MKV version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MailProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	SimpleProfile/Level 5 (MPEG4)	AdvancedProfile/Level 2, MainProfile/Level Medium, SimpleProfile/Level Medium (VC-1)
File extension (MKV version)	.mkv		
Compatible audio codec	AAC, MP3		
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2)	VC-1
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	8 Mbps (MPEG4)	20 Mbps, 10 Mbps, 384 kbps (VC-1)
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	720 × 576 pixels (MPEG4)	1,280 × 720 pixels, 720 x 480 pixels, 352 x 288 pixels (VC-1)

■ ASF/WMV File

Media	USB Flash Drive	
Profile (ASF/WMV version)	BaselineProfile/Level 3, MailProfile/Level 3.1 (MPEG4-AVC)	AdvancedProfile/Level 2, MainProfile/Level Medium, SimpleProfile/Level Medium (VC-1)
File extension (ASF/WMV version)	.asf/.wmv	
Compatible audio codec	WMA	
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	VC-1
Bit rate	10 Mbps, 14 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	20 Mbps, 10 Mbps, 384 kbps (VC-1)
Maximum image	1,280 × 720 pixels (MPEG4-AVC)	1,280 × 720 pixels, 720 x 480 pixels, 352 x 288 pixels (VC-1)

About Open Source Licences

To see the open source licence information, follow these steps.

1. Select **General Settings**.
2. Select **System**.
3. Select **About**.
4. Select **Legal Information**.

Licence Information

■ Bluetooth

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Panasonic Automotive Systems Co., Ltd. is under license.
Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC is under license.
Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

https://www.bluetooth.com/develop-with-bluetooth/marketing-branding/

■ Windows Media

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.

Continued

Apple

"Made for iPod," and "Made for iPhone," mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod, or iPhone, respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod, or iPhone, may affect wireless performance.
Apple, the Apple Logo, iPhone, iPod touch are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries. Apple CarPlay, iPod, iPhone, iTunes, Siri and Lightning are trademarks of Apple Inc. App Store is a service mark of Apple Inc.

Made for iPhone | iPod

■ MPEG

Mpeg4 Visual
THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE MPEG-4 VISUAL PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER FOR (i) ENCODING VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUALA STANDARD (“MPEG-4 VIDEO”) AND/OR (ii) DECODING MPEG-4 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED BY MPEG LA TO PROVIDE MPEG-4 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION INCLUDING THAT RELATING TO PROMOTIONAL, INTERNAL AND COMMERCIAL USES AND LICENSING MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC.
SEE *HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM*.

VC-1
THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE VC-1 PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE VC-1 STANDARD (“VC-1 VIDEO”) AND/OR (ii) DECODE VC-1 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE VC-1 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE *HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM*.

Continued

AVC/H.264
THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE AVC PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE AVC STANDARD (“AVC VIDEO”) AND/OR (ii) DECODE AVC VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE AVC VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE.
ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE *HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM.*

Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto

■ OWNER'S MANUAL LICENSE/LIABILITY STATEMENTS

USE OF APPLE CARPLAY IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE, WHICH ARE INCLUDED AS PART OF THE APPLE iOS TERMS OF USE. IN SUMMARY, THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF CARPLAY, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE APPLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING APPLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY CARPLAY.

USE OF ANDROID AUTO IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE WHICH MUST BE AGREED TO WHEN THE ANDROID AUTO APPLICATION IS DOWNLOADED TO YOUR ANDROID PHONE. IN SUMMARY, THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF ANDROID AUTO, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE GOOGLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING GOOGLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY ANDROID AUTO.

Continued

■ DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES; LIMITATION ON LIABILITY

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY OR ANDROID AUTO (“THE APPLICATIONS”) IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS IS PROVIDED “AS IS” AND “AS AVAILABLE,” WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND HONDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY HONDA OR AN AUTHORISED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, HONDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATIONS, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE, GOOGLE, THEIR AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATIONS OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE.

TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATIONS OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATIONS OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, HOWEVER CAUSED, REGARDLESS OF THE THEORY OF LIABILITY (CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) AND EVEN IF HONDA WERE ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME REGIONS AND JURISDICTIONS MAY DISALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES, SO THESE LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS WILL APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE STATED REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

About Honda LogR

Monitors driving conditions, and lets you record them. By checking the recorded data on the audio/information screen or uploading it to a server*1, you can compare it with other users' data.

Honda LogR has two modes:

- Auto Score Mode
  Evaluates driving performance in everyday situations.
  ➡ **Auto Score Mode** P. 367
- Data Log Mode
  Allows you to record and analyze your track driving data.
  ➡ **Data Log Mode** P. 373

Refer to the commentary in the customize menu for more details on each mode.
➡ **Settings** P. 385

❶ **Honda LogR**

*1: Except Hong Kong and Macanese models

Honda LogR*

When selling or transferring ownership of a vehicle, the customer is responsible for initialising the system. If user consent cannot be given, do not use the app.
➡ **Settings** P. 385

When the telematics control unit (TCU) is not available, use Honda LogR through Wi-Fi.

Some features cannot be used while driving.

Some features cannot interact with the maps function.

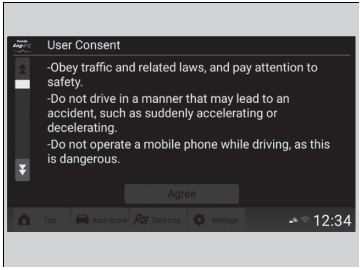
After starting the engine, logs may not be recorded for a certain amount of time.

Depending on driving conditions or connection status, some features may not be available.

* Not available on all models

Initial Settings

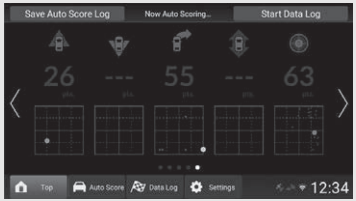
When you use Honda LogR for the first time, you must read and agree to the user consent before using this application.



1. Select **Honda LogR** on the home screen.
2. After confirming the user consent, select **Agree**.
3. Check the tutorial screen, then select **Start**.
   ▶ If you select **Previous**, the system will return to the user consent screen.

Performance Monitor

You can check your vehicle conditions and view individual scores for different areas of performance.
There are five screens, and you can switch between them as necessary.

Image	Image Name	Description
	Default Display	Displays vehicle behavior in the centre of the screen, and vehicle information is displayed in real time on the left and right. The 3D vehicle display in the centre can be changed to the G-meter, which displays the magnitude and direction of forces acting on the vehicle. You can set a limit value for some vehicle information. If the limit is passed, the corresponding number display will change colour. You can change the limit values, and adjust which items are displayed on-screen, in the customization menu. ➔ **Settings** P. 385
	Auto Score Live	Examines performance in areas such as acceleration and deceleration in everyday driving situations, and applies a score to each of them in real time. Refer to the commentary in the customize menu for more details on each item displayed here. ➔ **Settings** P. 385

Continued

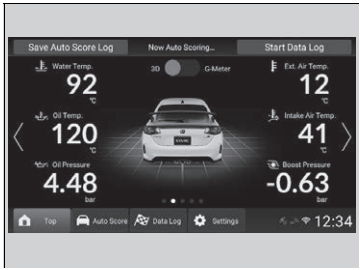
Image	Image Name	Description
	Tyre Friction Circle Display	Displays the vehicle behavior in the centre of the screen and the forces applied to each tyre by the tyre friction circles. The 3D vehicle display in the centre can be changed to the G-meter, which displays the direction and magnitude of forces acting on the vehicle. Refer to the commentary in the customize menu for more details. ➔ **Settings** P. 385
	Instrument Panel Display	Displays vehicle information in real time. You can set a limit value for some vehicle information. If the limit is passed, the corresponding number display will change colour. You can change the limit values, and adjust which items are displayed on-screen, in the customize menu. ➔ **Settings** P. 385
	Measurement Data Log	A mode designed for track driving, displays lap time and vehicle information in real time.

Features

Auto Score Mode

This mode is designed for everyday driving situations.
When you turn on Honda LogR, Auto Score mode is selected automatically.
Refer to the commentary in the customize menu for more details.
➡ **Settings** P. 385

■ Saving Auto Score History



Select **Save Auto Score Log** at the top of the performance monitor screen.

▶ Saving will be cancelled if you switch to a screen other than the performance monitor screen before saving is completed.

Auto Score Mode

When you want to Auto Score mode set to OFF, you can customize on the **Settings** screen.
➡ **Settings** P. 385

You can get data for up to 99:59.99 continuously. After 99:59.99 elapsed, getting data will be started newly.

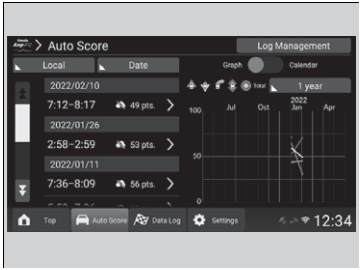
Saving Auto Score History

Auto Score history is stored even if the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

Continued

Checking Auto Score History

By selecting **Auto Score** at the bottom of the performance monitor screen, you can check previously recorded Auto Score data. On the Auto Score history screen, a graph showing the evaluation transition for each situation, such as acceleration and deceleration, is displayed. Also, you can search for scores by date, and data can be sorted by date and score.



Select **Auto Score** at the bottom of the performance monitor screen.

You can search by date.

1. Select **Calendar** at the top of the screen.
2. Select a date.

You can sort your history.

1. Select **Date**.
2. Select a category to sort the data by.

Except Hong Kong and Macanese models

You can change the data storage location to **Local**/ **My Server**.

1. Select **Local**.
2. Select a data storage location from **Local**/ **My Sever**.

Checking Auto Score History

The date and the 12/24 hour display format matches the main audio display settings.

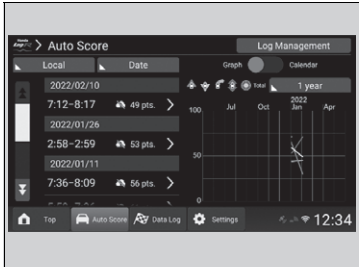
➡ **Settings** P. 385

Refer to the commentary in the customize menu for more details on how the scores are generated.

➡ **Settings** P. 385

If the date changes while driving, the corresponding data will be displayed under the earlier date.

Checking Detailed Auto Score History



You can view more details by selecting a history item.
You can view separate driving records for each performance item that has been scored.
Select the date and time you want to view.

- ▶ Separate scores and routes are displayed corresponding to driving performance in areas such as acceleration and deceleration.
- ▶ You can view more detailed information by selecting an area of performance.

You can sort your history.

1. Select **Scene**.
2. Select a category to sort the data by.

Continued

Checking Detailed Auto Score History

Refer to the commentary in the customize menu for more details on how the scores are generated.

➡ **Settings** P. 385

By selecting the icon on the map, you can switch between map view and aerial view.

Checking the Score Log Details for Auto Score History

You can view more detailed information by selecting a scene for a given performance area.

By selecting the play icon, you can also view a time progression of the data.

You can enlarge the graph by selecting it. After it has been enlarged, you can adjust the scale. The vertical axis is adjusted by pinching in or out on the screen, and the horizontal axis is adjusted by selecting the icons.

Checking the Score Log Details for Auto Score History

Refer to the commentary in the customize menu for more details on how the scores are generated.

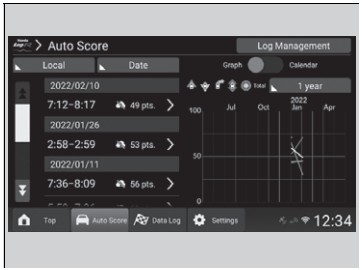
➡ **Settings** P. 385

By selecting the icon on the map, you can switch between map view and aerial view.

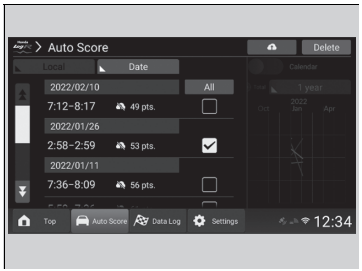
You can enlarge a tyre friction circle by selecting it.

By enlarging the tyre friction circle display, the vehicle displayed in the centre of the screen can be changed to the G-meter which displays the direction of the force applied on the vehicle.

Deleting Auto Score History



1. Select **Auto Score** at the bottom of the performance monitor screen.
2. Select **Log Management**.



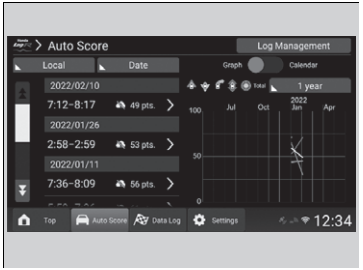
3. Select the data you want to delete, then select **Delete** at the top of the screen.

Continued

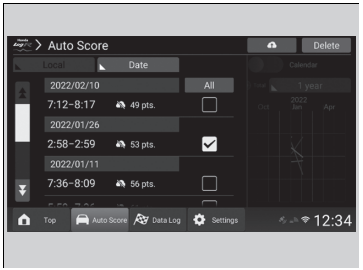
Except Hong Kong and Macanese models

Uploading Auto Score History

You can upload Auto Score history to the server.



1. Select **Auto Score** at the bottom of the performance monitor screen.
2. Select **Log Management**.



3. Select the data you want to upload, then select at the top of the screen.

Uploading Auto Score History

If the data storage location is Local, is displayed.

Data Log Mode

This mode is designed for track driving. In addition to the features from Auto Score mode, you can also record lap time data etc.

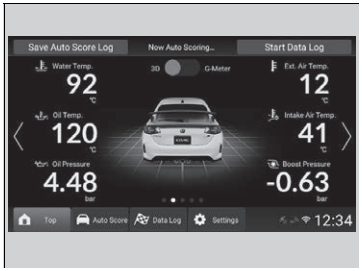
Except Hong Kong and Macanese models

By uploading data to the server, you can compare it with other user's data.

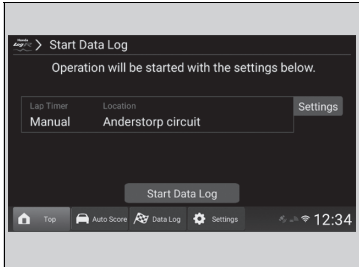
Refer to the commentary in the customize menu for more details.

Settings P. 385

Starting and Stopping Data Log Mode



1. Select **Start Data Log** at the top of the performance monitor screen.



2. Configure location settings, then select **Start Data Log**.

Set location P. 374
My location settings P. 375

▶ By selecting **Stop Data Log** at the top of the performance monitor screen, you can stop the Data Log. After stopping, the driving data for this log will be displayed.

Continued

Data Log Mode

You can get Log data for up to 99:59.99 continuously. After 99:59.99 elapsed, getting data will be started newly.

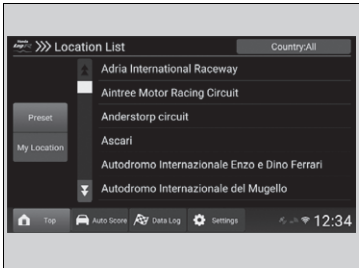
Starting and Stopping Data Log Mode

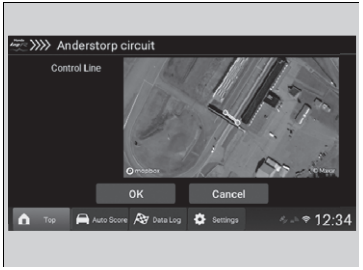
When Data Log Mode is activated, the Lap Timer Settings can be turned Auto and manual.
If the Lap Timer Settings is Auto, lap times cannot be recorded manually.

Settings P. 385

■ Set location

You can set a location from a list of previously saved locations.



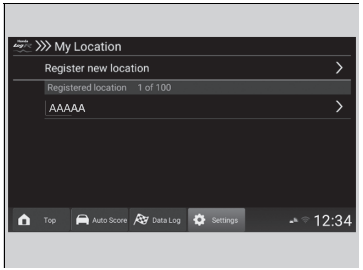


1. Select **Settings** at the bottom of the performance monitor screen.
2. Select **Data Log Settings**.
3. Select **Usage location**.
   ▶ You can select **Preset***1 or **My Location**.
4. Select a location to use.
   ▶ If you want to select a location in a different region, select **Country:All** at the top right corner of the **Location List** screen, then change the location.
5. Confirm a Lap line on the map, then select **OK**.
   ▶ If you select **Cancel**, the system will return to the **Location List** screen.
   ▶ If you pass in the direction of the arrow on the Lap line, the Lap time will be measured.

*1: Except Hong Kong and Macanese models

■ My location settings

You can save a new set location.



1. Select **Settings** at the bottom of the performance monitor screen.
2. Select **Data Log Settings**.
3. Select **My Location**.
4. Select **Register new location**.
   ▶ If you select a registered location, the **Location Edit** screen is displayed, and then location names can be changed. If you select **Delete**, you can delete saved locations.
5. Select **Edit**.
   ▶ If you select **Cancel**, the system will return to the **My Location** screen without saving.

My location settings

The maximum for a location name is 19 characters.

A maximum of 100 locations can be saved.

By selecting the icon on the map, you can switch between map view and aerial view.

Automatic lap measurement uses a pre-set point start and end line. Please use the map to set your own points for the start and end lines.

Only while data storage location is set to Local, the next Lap time will start to be measured when you cross a set finish line.

You can delete unnecessary Lap times.

➔ **Uploading/Deleting Data Log History** P. 380

Continued

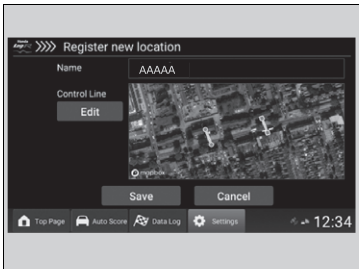
6. Search for the point which you want to register on the map, then select **Next**.

7. Set the start and end lines for Automatic LAP Measurement.

▶ If you want to set the end line to a different point from the start line, select **Next**, then set a point for the end line.

▶ If you pass in the direction of the arrow on the Lap line, the Lap time will be measured.

8. Select **Done**.

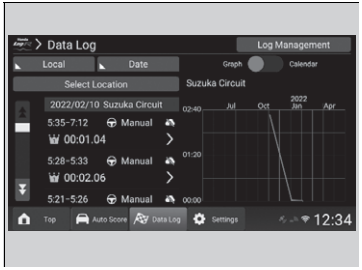


9. Select **Save**.

▶ If you select **Cancel**, the system will return to the **My Location** screen without saving.

Checking Data Log History

You can check previously saved data logs by selecting **Data Log** at the bottom of the performance monitor screen. On the Data Log history screen, a graph showing the transition for a Lap time is displayed. Also, you can search for Log data by place and date, and you can sort it by date and best lap time.



Select **Data Log** at the bottom of the performance monitor screen.

You can search by location.

1. Select **Select Location**.
2. Select the location you want to be displayed.

You can search by date.

1. Select **Calendar** at the top of the screen.
2. Select a date.

You can sort the history.

1. Select **Date**.
2. Select a category to sort the data by.
   ▶ If a location has not been selected, you cannot sort by best lap time.

Except Hong Kong and Macanese models

Changing data storage location.

1. Select **Local.**
2. Select a data storage location from **Local**/**My Server**/**Other Server**.

Continued

Checking Data Log History

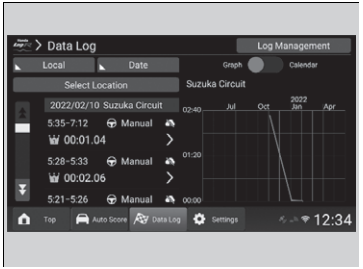
Refer to the commentary in the customize menu for more details on how the scores are generated.

➡ **Settings** P. 385

LAP measurement setting (**Auto**/**Manual**), location name, and best lap time are displayed.

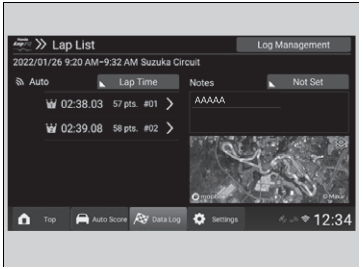
If the date changes while driving, the corresponding data will be displayed under the earlier date.

Checking Detailed Data Log History



When you select the history item you want to view, previous LAPs are displayed in a list.

In the LAP list, each lap has its time, the **Auto/Manual** setting, and best lap times' heat map displayed. Additionally, you can leave comments and enter weather information for the selected day in your history. User information comments can be viewed in other user's history.



You can switch between sorting the list by LAP time or LAP number.

Sorting the list.

1. Select **Lap Time**.

2. Select a category to sort the data by.

Checking Detailed Data Log History

Refer to the commentary in the customize menu for more details on how the scores are generated.

➡ **Settings** P. 385

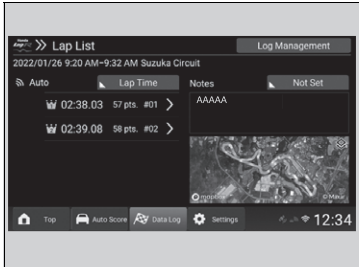
The heat map displays in different colours corresponding to both the degree of acceleration and brake pressure.

At points where both the accelerator and brake are pressed at the same time, only the brake information is displayed.

By selecting the icon on the map, you can switch between map view and aerial view.

The maximum for a condition memo is 45 characters.

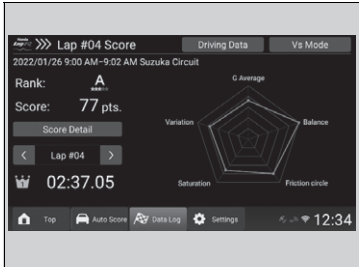
Checking Detailed Lap Data in Data Log History



By selecting an individual lap, you can view detailed driving data for that lap. By selecting the play icon, you can also view a time progression of the data.

You can enlarge a tyre friction circle by selecting it.

You can enlarge the graph by selecting it. After it has been enlarged, you can adjust the scale of the horizontal and vertical axes. Also, you can change which items are displayed.
Changing items on the graph display.
1. Select **Select Items**.



2. Select the items you want to be displayed.
▶ You can select up to six categories.
Additionally, by selecting **Score**, you can view the score of the Lap data and the rank corresponding to it.

Continued

Checking Detailed Lap Data in Data Log History

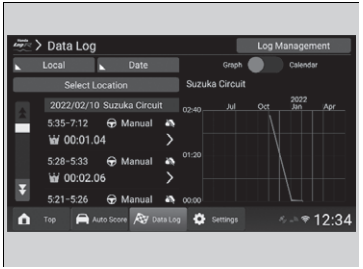
Refer to the commentary in the customize menu for more details on how the scores are generated.
➡ **Settings** P. 385

The heat map displays in different colours corresponding to both the degree of acceleration and brake pressure.

At points where both the accelerator and brake are pressed at the same time, only the brake information is displayed.

By selecting the icon on the map, you can switch between map view and aerial view.

■ Uploading/Deleting Data Log History



Except Hong Kong and Macanese models

■ Uploading data log history to the server

1. Select **Log Management**.
2. Select the data you want to upload to the server.
3. Select [ ].
   ▶ By selecting [ ], the selected LAP will be uploaded to the cloud. After the upload is finished, you can choose whether to delete the selected data from Local.

■ Deleting data log history

1. Select **Log Management**.
2. Select the data you want to delete.
3. Select **Delete**.
   ▶ If you select **Delete**, the selected data is deleted from either the server*1 or the vehicle's storage, depending on your data storage location.

*1 : Except Hong Kong and Macanese models

Uploading/Deleting Data Log History

Except Hong Kong and Macanese models

If **My Server** is selected as the data storage location, [ ] is replaced [ ] and [ ], allowing you to adjust privacy settings for the selected data.
If you select [ ], the selected data will be made public to other users. If you select [ ], the selected data will not be made public to other users.

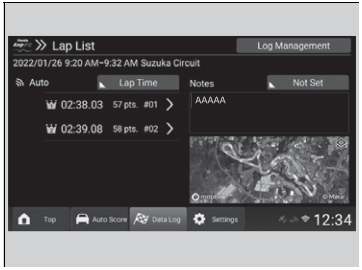
Uploading data log history to the server

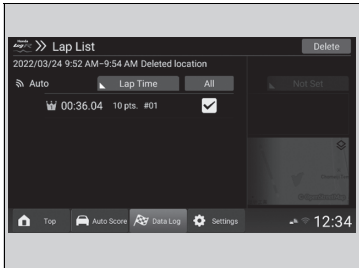
By uploading data to the server, you can share it with others. (limited to automatic lap measurements and pre-set locations.)

If you switch to another screen (by pressing the home button, etc.) in the middle of uploading, the upload will be cancelled. Afterwards, when you return to the in-vehicle app a pop-up notification will display informing you that the operation has been cancelled.

All driving data is uploaded to the server not only while measuring Lap data, but also while Data Log mode is activated.

Deleting Lap Data from the Data Log History





1. Select **Log Management**.
2. Select the LAP you want to delete.
3. Select **Delete**.
   ▶ By selecting **Delete**, the selected LAP can be deleted from the Log. Also, you can select whether to save as new Log data, or to overwrite the data with the LAP removed.

Deleting Lap Data from the Data Log History

The heat map displays in different colours corresponding to both the degree of acceleration and brake pressure.

At points where both the accelerator and brake are pressed at the same time, only the brake information is displayed.

Except Hong Kong and Macanese models

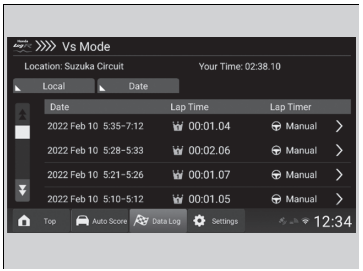
If the data is saved to **My Server** or **Other Server**, **Log Management** will not be displayed.

Continued

VS Mode

This feature allows you to compare your driving history against separate lap data or another user's driving data.

1. Go to the detailed Lap Data in the data log history screen.
2. Select **Vs Mode** at the top of the screen.



3. Select the history item you want to compare.

Except Hong Kong and Macanese models

▶ By selecting **Local**, you can select where to save the data to from **Local/My Server/Other Server**.

All models

▶ By selecting **Date**, you can rearrange the data.

VS Mode

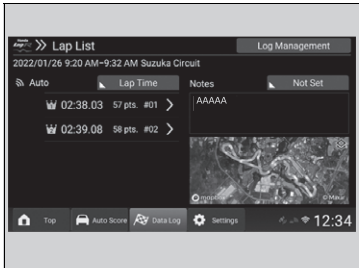
Except Hong Kong and Macanese models

Only data recorded with a pre-set location using automatic lap measurements can be used for comparison against other users' data.

Except Hong Kong and Macanese models

If **Other Server** is selected as the data storage destination:

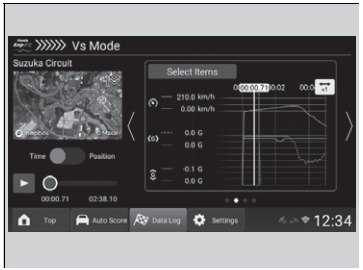
- Displayed items are changed to **Date/Lap Time/User ID/Favourite**.
- You can search by users saved to your favourites.
- You can search by User ID. User IDs will only appear on a search if they are an exact match.



4. Select the data you want to compare against.

■ VS Mode Comparison Screen

By swiping or touching the screen, you can choose various situations for comparison.
By selecting the play icon, you can also view a time progression of the data.
You can select whether to compare by time elapsed or by mileage.



When using the graph display, you can change which items are displayed.

Changing items on the graph display.
1. Select **Select Items**.
2. Select the items you want to be displayed.
▶ You can select up to four categories.

VS Mode Comparison Screen

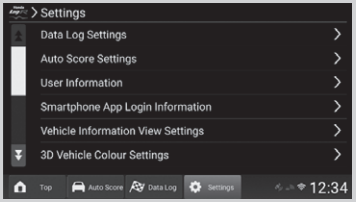
Refer to the commentary in the customize menu for more details on how the scores are generated.
➡ **Settings** P. 385

By selecting the icon on the map, you can switch between map view and aerial view.

You can view a user's profile by selecting their nickname. (Not applicable to areas where the server is inaccessible.)

Customize

By selecting **Settings** at the bottom of the performance monitor, you can change the settings for various features.



■ Settings

Setting Item			Overview	Options
Data Log Settings	**Lap Timer Settings**		You can set how the data logs' lap measurements are performed.	**Auto***1**/Manual**
	Usage location		You can select saved locations. Refer to the page below for more details. ➔ **Set location** P. 374	—
	My Location	**Register new location** **Registered location**	You can enter and save a location name. You can save by the LAPs start and end line on the map. Refer to the page below for more details. ➔ **My location settings** P. 375	—
Auto Score Settings			You can set the Auto Score on or off.	**ON***1**/OFF**
User information			Displays your User ID, nickname, and comment.	—
Smartphone App Login Information			Displays User ID and PIN for use with the smartphone app.	—

*1:Default setting

Continued

Setting Item			Overview	Options
Vehicle Information View Settings	**Center Display indication settings**		You can select six items to be displayed in the performance monitor and instrument panel. These items can be rearranged by selecting ▲ or ▼, or by using the Drag & Drop function.	**Water Temp.***1**/Oil Temp.***1**/Oil Pressure***1**/Ext. Air Temp.***1**/ Intake Air Temp.***1**/Boost Pressure***1**/Steering Angle/Accel. Ped. Pos./Brake Pressure/Clutch Ped. Pos./Yaw Rate/Atmos. Pressure**
	Meter indication item settings			**Water Temp.***1**/Oil Temp.***1**/Oil Pressure***1**/Ext. Air Temp.***1**/ Intake Air Temp.***1**/Boost Pressure***1**/Steering Angle/Accel. Ped. Pos./Brake Pressure/Clutch Ped. Pos./Yaw Rate/Atmos. Pressure**
	Limit settings	**Water Temp.**	You can set the limit values for vehicle information displayed in the performance monitor and instrument panel.	**OFF***1 80 to 120 (1°C increments) If units are set to Fahrenheit 170 to 250 (1°F increments).
		Oil Temp.		**OFF***1 90 to 130 (1°C increments) If units are set to Fahrenheit 190 to 270 (1°F increments).
	G-meter max scale settings		You can change the operating sensitivity of the G-meter and 3D vehicle display.	**0.5G***1**/1.5G**

*1:Default setting

Setting Item			Overview	Options
3D Vehicle Colour Settings			You can set and display vehicle's colour information. You can select the vehicle colour, and the changes will reflect on the 3D vehicle display.	Vehicle colour
Log Management	**Import**		You can import files generated by the in-vehicle apps export function. When multiple files are in the image folder, a timestamp is included in new file names.	—
	Export		You can export data stored on the in-vehicle app (driving logs and setting information) to a USB memory stick.	—
	Delete log		You can delete data stored on the in-vehicle app (drive logs and setting information).	—
	Automatic log deletion settings	**Data Log**	You can set whether to automatically delete logs in Data Log mode and Auto Score mode.	**ON/OFF***1
		Auto Score		**ON/OFF***1

*1:Default setting

Continued

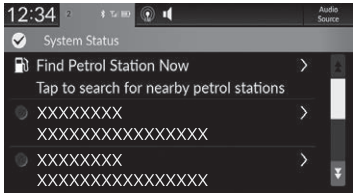
Setting Item		Overview	Options
Commentary	**Friction circle**	You can see how scores are generated for tyre friction circles.	—
	Data Log	You can check the Data Log mode **Overview** and see how scores are generated for **G Average**/**Balance**/**Friction circle**/**Saturation**/**Variation**.	—
	Auto Score	You can check the Auto Score mode **Overview** and see how scores are generated for **Acceleration**, **Deceleration**, **Turning**, **Straight**, and **Composite**.	—
Tutorial		You can re-display the explanations from your first time using Honda LogR.	—
User Consent		Displays the user consent for the in-vehicle app.	—
License information		Displays OSS licence used by the in-vehicle app.	—
Mapbox License		Displays the Mapbox licence used by the in-vehicle app.	—

Refuel Recommend*

Your vehicle is equipped with a feature that automatically calculates when to refuel. This feature will notify you when refueling is recommended as well as enable you to search for petrol stations that are located in the vicinity of your vehicle.

1. When it is time to refuel the vehicle, a notification is displayed and a notification icon is displayed in the header.
2. Touch the box that contains the icon.

1 Notification icon



3. Select **Find Petrol Station Now**.

4. Choose a petrol station from the search screen of the navigation system.
   ▶ For instructions on how to use the navigation system, refer to the navigation system manual.

Refuel Recommend*

You can turn the Refuel Recommend function on and off.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 313

When you turn off this feature, the refuel recommend notification will not display.

This feature can only be used when the fuel tank fuel level is below 30 percent.

If you select **Find Petrol Station Now** or put more than 5 litres of petrol into the fuel tank, the notification for refueling will disappear. If you prefer not to be notified, select OFF in the settings for Refuel Recommend.

When you drive on a rough road or ascend or descend a hill for an extended period of time, the notification may disappear or may not be displayed at all.

* Not available on all models

Driving

This chapter discusses driving and refueling.

Before Driving 392
Towing a Trailer 396
When Driving
Starting the Engine 397
Precautions While Driving 401
Continuously Variable Transmission* 404
Shifting 405, 410
Auto Idle Stop* 414
Drive Mode Switch 421, 424
Adjustable Speed Limiter* 431
Intelligent Speed Limiter* 437
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System 444
Agile Handling Assist 447
Limited Slip Differential (LSD) 448
Blind Spot Information System* 449
Adjusting Headlight Distribution 455
Honda Sensing 456
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) 460
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow* 473
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)* 490
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) .. 508
Traffic Jam Assist* 521
Road Departure Mitigation System... 530
Traffic Sign Recognition System* 543
Lead Car Departure Notification System* 549
Front Wide View Camera 553
Braking 555
Parking Your Vehicle 570
Multi-View Rear Camera 581
Refueling 583
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions 586
Turbo Engine Vehicle 587

* Not available on all models

Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
  - ▶ Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
  - ▶ Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
  - ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the bonnet is securely closed.
  - ▶ If the bonnet opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tyres are in good condition.
  - ▶ Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.
    ➡ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 636
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
  - ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.

Manual transmission models

- Check the front bumper ducts for mud, leaves, and road debris that could build up and prevent proper cooling performance.

Exterior Checks

NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the bonnet, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also, check under the bonnet for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
  ▶ Carrying too much luggage, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tyres, and make it unsafe.
  ➔ **Load Limit** P. 395
- Do not pile items higher than the seat height.
  ▶ They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat.
  ▶ An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
  ▶ They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close all doors and the hatch.
- Adjust your seating position properly.

  1.5 L engine models

  ▶ Adjust the head restraint, too.
  ➔ **Seats** P. 226
  ➔ **Adjusting the Front Head Restraint Positions*** P. 233
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly.
  ▶ Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
  ➔ **Mirrors** P. 224
  ➔ **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 223

Interior Checks

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights.

* Not available on all models

Continued

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
  ▶ They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, or the operation of the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
  ➔ **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 48
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
  ▶ Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
  ➔ **Indicators** P. 114

Load Limit

When you load luggage, the total weight of the vehicle, all passengers, and luggage must not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

Specifications P. 722

The load for the front and rear axles also must not exceed the maximum permissible axle weight.

Specifications P. 722

Load Limit

WARNING

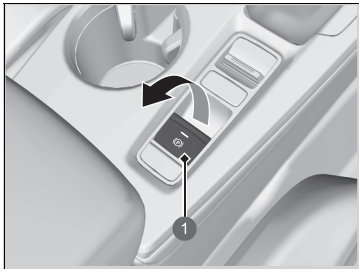
Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

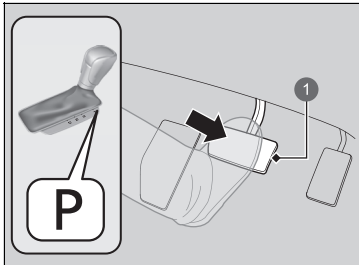
Towing a Trailer

Your vehicle is not designed to tow a trailer. Attempting to do so can void your warranties.

Starting the Engine



1 Electric Parking Brake Switch



1 Brake Pedal

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on for 30 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.

Continuously variable transmission models

2. Check that the transmission is in P, then depress the brake pedal.
▶ Although it is possible to start the vehicle in N, it is safer to start it in P.

Starting the Engine

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres.

When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear demister in order to reduce battery drain.

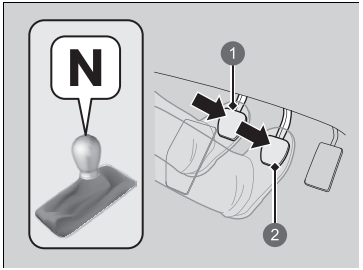
If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

Bring the keyless remote or card key* close to the **ENGINE START/STOP** button if the battery in the keyless remote or card key* is weak.
➡ **If the Keyless Remote/Card Key* Battery is Weak** P. 691

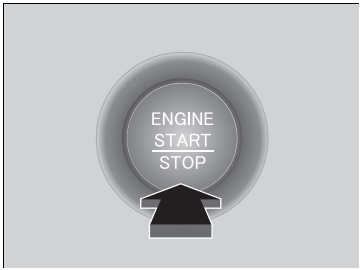
The engine may not start if the keyless remote or card key* is subjected to strong radio waves.

* Not available on all models

Continued



1 Clutch Pedal
2 Brake pedal



Manual transmission models

2. Check that the shift lever is in N. Then, depress the brake pedal with your right foot, and the clutch pedal with your left foot.

▶ The clutch pedal must be fully depressed to start the engine.

All models

3. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button without depressing the accelerator pedal.

Starting the Engine

Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to start the engine.
If the engine does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before starting the engine again.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded device is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

➔ **Immobilizer System** P. 201

■ Starting to Drive

Continuously variable transmission models

1. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, put the shift lever in D. Select R when reversing.
2. With the parking brake applied, release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.
   ▶ Make sure the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.
   ➡ **Parking Brake** P. 555

■ Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Continuously variable transmission models

Put the transmission into D when facing uphill, or R when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

Manual transmission models

Depress the clutch pedal, and shift to one of the forward gears when facing uphill, or R when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

Starting to Drive

Continuously variable transmission models

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal. When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

Hill start assist system

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA is switched off.

Continued

■ Stopping the Engine

You can turn the engine off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

Continuously variable transmission models

1. Put the transmission into P.
2. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Manual transmission models

- If the transmission is in N, press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- If the transmission is in any gear other than N, depress the clutch pedal, then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Precautions While Driving

In a Fog

Visibility becomes low when it is foggy. When you drive, turn on the low beam headlights even during the daytime. Slow down, using the road line in the centre, guard rails, and the taillights of the vehicle ahead of you as your driving guide.

In a Strong Wind

If a strong side wind drifts your vehicle while driving, hold the steering wheel tight. Slowly decelerate your vehicle and keep your vehicle in the middle of the road. Be careful with wind gusts especially when your vehicle is exiting a tunnel, driving on a bridge or river bank, and driving through an open area like a quarry, and when a large lorry is passing by.

Precautions While Driving

CAUTION: Do not drive on the road where water is deep. Driving through deep water will cause damage to the engine and electrical equipment and the vehicle will break down.

Continuously variable transmission models

NOTICE

Do not operate the shift lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored.
Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

If the power mode is set to ACCESSORY while driving, the engine will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not select N while driving as you will lose engine braking (and acceleration) performance.

Continued

Precautions While Driving

During the first 1,000 km of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as not to damage the engine or powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 300 km after purchasing your new vehicle or replacing the brake pads or rotors, to allow for proper break-in.

Continuously variable transmission models

NOTICE

The following can damage the under spoiler:
- Parking the vehicle by a parking block
- Parallel parking along the road shoulder
- Driving towards the bottom of a hill
- Driving up or down to a different surface level (such as a road shoulder)
- Driving on a rutted or bumpy road
- Driving on a road with potholes

Manual transmission models

NOTICE

The following can damage the under spoiler, under covers, front bumper, rear diffuser, and side sill:
- Parking the vehicle by a parking block
- Parallel parking along the road shoulder
- Driving towards the bottom of a hill
- Driving up or down to a different surface level (such as a road shoulder)
- Driving on a rutted or bumpy road
- Driving on a road with potholes.
- Driving over speed bump.

In Rain

The road is slippery when raining. Avoid hard braking, rapid acceleration, and abrupt steering and be more cautious when driving. It is likely to experience hydroplaning phenomenon if you are driving on a rutted road with puddles. Do not drive in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the engine or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

In Rain

Be careful when hydroplaning phenomenon occurs. When you drive on a road covered with water at excessive speed, a layer of water builds between the tyres and the road surface. If this occurs, the vehicle cannot respond to control inputs such as steering, and braking.

Slowly decelerate when you shift down. If the road is slippery, sudden engine braking can cause the tyres to skid.

Continuously Variable Transmission*

■ Creeping

When the engine runs at higher idle speeds, the creeping force increases.
Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped.

■ Kickdown

Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the transmission to drop to a lower ratio, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed.
Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.

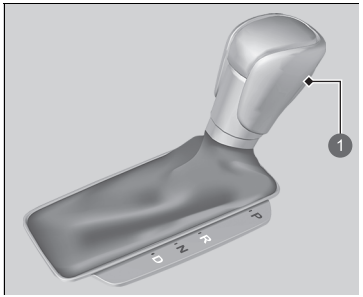
* Not available on all models

Continuously variable transmission models

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

■ Shift lever positions



1 Release Button

P Park
Used when parking or starting the engine

R Reverse
Used when reversing

N Neutral
Transmission is not locked

D Drive
Used:
- For normal driving
- When temporarily driving in the 7-speed manual shift mode
- When driving in the 7-speed manual shift mode (when driving in **SPORT** mode)

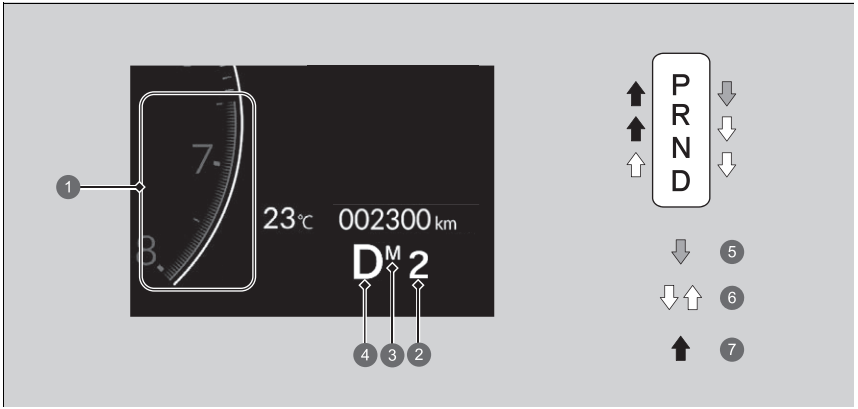
Shift lever positions

You cannot change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF unless the shift position is in P.

The vehicle may move very slightly even in N while the engine is cold.
Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

Continued

Shift Lever Operation



1. Tachometer Red Zone
2. Shift Indicator
3. **M**(7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator
4. Shift Position Indicator/Transmission System Indicator
5. Depress the brake pedal and press the shift lever release button to shift.
6. Shift without pressing the shift lever release button.
7. Press the shift lever release button and shift.

Shift Lever Operation

NOTICE

When you change the shift lever from D to R and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed.
Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

If the transmission system indicator blinks when driving, in any shift position, there is a problem with the transmission.
Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down.
Depress the brake pedal first.

When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures (-30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

■ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode

Use the paddle shifters to change between 1st and 7th speeds without releasing your hands from the steering wheel. The transmission switches to the 7-speed manual shift mode when you pull a paddle shifter while driving. This mode is useful when engine braking is needed.

■ When the transmission is in D:

The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode temporarily, and the number is displayed in the shift indicator.
The 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled automatically if you drive at constant speed or accelerate, and the number in the shift indicator goes off.
You can cancel this mode by pulling the + paddle shifter for a few seconds.
The 7-speed manual shift mode is especially useful when reducing the vehicle speed temporarily before making a turn.

■ When the transmission is in D with SPORT mode:

The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode. The **M** indicator and the speed number are displayed in the shift indicator. As the vehicle speed slows down, the transmission automatically shifts down accordingly. When the vehicle comes to a stop, it automatically shifts down into 1st.

If the vehicle speed increases and the engine speed reaches near the tachometer red zone, the transmission automatically shifts up.

You can only pull away in 1st speed.

Continued

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode

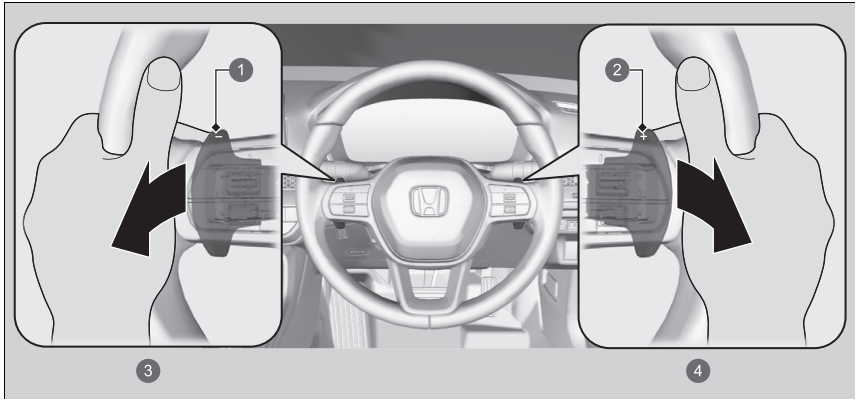
In the 7-speed manual shift mode, the transmission shifts up or down by operating either paddle shifter under the following conditions:
Shift Up: The engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the higher speed position.
Shift Down: The engine speed reaches the highest threshold of the lower speed position.

When the engine speed reaches near the tachometer red zone, the transmission shifts up automatically.
When the engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the selected speed position, the transmission shifts down automatically.

Operating the paddle shifters on slippery surfaces may cause the tyres to lock up. In this case, the 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled and goes back to the normal D driving mode.

When cancelling the 7-speed manual shift mode, use the **DRIVE MODE** switch to select other than **SPORT** mode or pull the [+] paddle shifter for a few seconds. When the 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled, the **M** indicator and shift indicator will turn off.

■ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation



❶ [−] Paddle Shifter (Shift down)
❷ [+] Paddle Shifter (Shift up)
❸ Downshifting when pulling the [−] paddle shifter (Changes to lower speed number)
❹ Upshifting when pulling the [+] paddle shifter (Changes to higher speed number)

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation

Each paddle shift operation makes a single speed change.
To change continuously, release the paddle shifter before pulling it again for the next speed.

The shift indicator blinks when you cannot shift up or down. It indicates that your vehicle speed is not in its allowable shifting range.
Slightly accelerate to shift up and decelerate to shift down while the indicator is blinking.

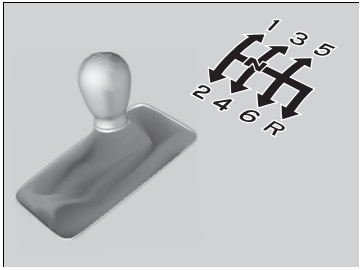
Manual transmission models

Shifting

Shift Lever Operation

Fully depress the clutch pedal to operate the shift lever and change gears, then slowly release the pedal.

Depress the clutch pedal, and pause for a few seconds before shifting into R, or shift into one of the forward gears for a moment. This stops the gears so they do not "grind."



When you are not shifting, do not rest your foot on the clutch pedal. This can cause your clutch to wear out faster.

Shift Lever Operation

NOTICE
Do not shift to R before the vehicle comes to a complete stop.
Shifting to R before stopping can damage the transmission.

NOTICE
Before downshifting, make sure the engine will not go into the tachometer red zone. Should this occur, it can severely damage your engine.

There is a metallic part on the shift lever. If you leave the vehicle parked outside for a long time on a hot day, be careful before moving the shift lever. Because of heat, the shift lever may be extremely hot. If the outside temperature is low, the shift lever may feel cold.

If you exceed the maximum speed for the gear you are in, the engine speed will enter into the tachometer red zone. When this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

Rev Match System

Adjusts the engine's RPM to match the optimal speed of the gear that is about to be engaged.

➡ **Drive Mode Switch** P. 424

Limitations

The rev match system will not activate under the following conditions:

- You are shifting into a lower gear, but the system has determined that the engine will over rev.
- You are shifting into 1st gear from a higher gear.
- Engine RPM is low and you are shifting into a lower gear in sequential order.
- The system has determined that the engine will be at idling speed after you have shifted into a higher gear.
- The clutch pedal is not fully depressed.

The rev match system may deactivate if the clutch pedal is fully depressed for a extended period of time.

Rev Match System

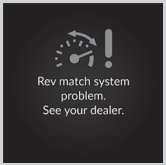
You can turn off the rev match system using the audio/information screen.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 313

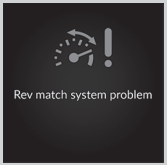
If you depress the accelerator pedal while changing gears, the system may give priority to inputs from the accelerator pedal depending on the amount of depression of the accelerator pedal.

If the message below appears, there may be a problem with the system. The rev match system may not operate, but you can perform regular gear shifting. Have the system checked by a dealer.

Philippine models

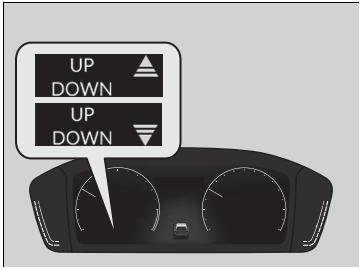


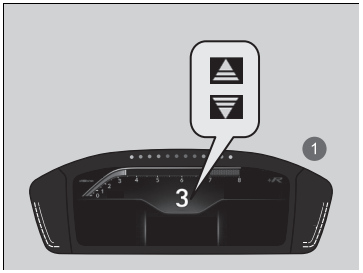
Except Philippine models



Continued

Shift Up/Down Indicators





1 When using the **+R** gauge

Come on to inform you that upshifting or downshifting is necessary to prevent the engine from over revving or stalling.

The shift up indicator: Comes on when upshifting is recommended.

The shift down indicator: Comes on when downshifting is recommended.

Shift Up/Down Indicators

This indicator will not prompt you to downshift to increase engine braking. It is up to you to downshift to increase engine braking when driving downhill.

Always shift down at the appropriate vehicle speed.

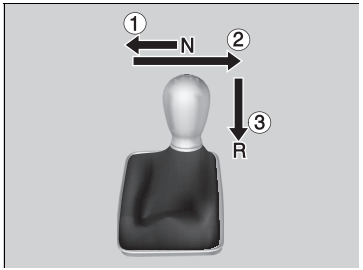
The shift down indicator does not come on when downshifting from 2 to 1.

Road and traffic conditions may require you to shift at times other than those indicated.

Reverse Lockout

The manual transmission has a lockout mechanism that stops you from accidentally shifting into (R from a forward gear while the vehicle is moving above a certain speed.

If you cannot shift to (R when the vehicle is stopped, do the following:



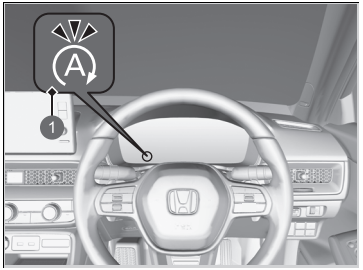
1. Depress the clutch pedal, move the shift lever all the way to the left, and shift to R.
2. If you still cannot shift into (R, apply the parking brake, and set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF.
3. Depress the clutch pedal and shift into R.
4. Keep depressing the clutch pedal and start the engine.

Reverse Lockout

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you have to go through this procedure repeatedly.

Auto Idle Stop*

To help to maximise fuel economy, the engine automatically stops when the vehicle comes to a stop, depending on environmental and vehicle operating conditions. The indicator (green) comes on at this time.



1 Auto Idle Stop Indicator (Green)

The environmental and vehicle conditions that impact Auto Idle Stop system operation are varied.

➡ **Auto Idle Stop Activates When:** P. 417, 418

The engine then restarts once the vehicle is about to move again, and the indicator (green) goes off.

➡ **The Engine Automatically Restarts When:** P. 419

If the driver's door is opened while the indicator (green) is on, a buzzer sounds to notify you that the Auto Idle Stop function is in operation.

A message associated with Auto Idle Stop appears on the driver information interface.

Auto Idle Stop*

The 12-volt battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with Auto Idle Stop. Using a 12-volt battery other than this specified type may shorten the 12-volt battery life, and prevent Auto Idle Stop from activating. If you need to replace the 12-volt battery, make sure to select the specified type. Ask a dealer for more details.

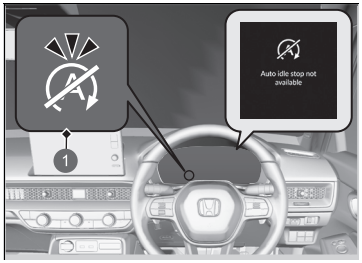
➡ **Specifications** P. 720

The duration of the Auto Idle Stop operation:

- Increase in the **ECON** mode, compared to when the **ECON** mode is off, with climate control in use.

➡ **Drive Mode Switch** P. 421

* Not available on all models



❶ Auto Idle Stop Suspend Indicator

The Auto Idle Stop suspend indicator comes on and a message appears on the gauge when the Auto Idle Stop system cannot be activated.

➡ **Indicators** P. 114
➡ **Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF** P. 416

Continued

Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF

❶ Auto Idle Stop **OFF** Indicator
❷ Auto Idle Stop **OFF** Button

To turn the Auto Idle Stop system off, press this button. The Auto Idle Stop system stops.

▶ Auto Idle Stop system will stop, the indicator will come on and a message appears on the gauge.

The Auto Idle Stop system is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF

If you turn off the Auto Idle Stop system while it is activated, the engine will restart.

If you hold the Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button, you can disable idle stop messages.

■ Auto Idle Stop Activates When:

The vehicle stops with the shift lever in D and the brake pedal depressed.
When you shift into P quickly with depressing the brake pedal, the Auto Idle Stop continues to operate, even if the brake pedal is released.
▶ If you depress the brake pedal, the engine may automatically restart.

■ Auto Idle Stop does not activate when:

- The Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button is pressed.
- The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
- The engine is adequately not warmed up or coolant temperature is high.
- The transmission fluid temperature is low or high.
- The vehicle comes to a stop again before the vehicle speed reaches 5 km/h after the engine starts.
- The vehicle is stopped on a steep incline.
- The transmission is in a position other than D.
- The engine is started with the bonnet open.
  ▶ Turn off the engine. Close the bonnet before you restart the engine to activate Auto Idle Stop.
- The battery charge is low.
- The internal temperature of the battery is 5°C or less.
- The climate control system is in use, and the outside temperature is below –20°C or over 40°C.
- The climate control system is in use, and the temperature is set to **Hi** or **Lo**.
- FRONT is on (indicator is on).
- The drive mode is in the **SPORT** mode.

Continued

Auto Idle Stop Activates When:

Do not open the bonnet while the Auto Idle Stop function is activated.
If the bonnet is opened, the engine will not restart automatically.
In this case, restart the engine with the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
➡ **Starting the Engine** P. 397

Pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button causes the engine to no longer restart automatically. Follow the standard procedure to start the engine.
➡ **Starting the Engine** P. 397

When Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow is in operation, the vehicle stops without depressing the brake pedal and Auto Idle Stop may activate.
In such cases, the engine may restart if you change the shift position other than D.

■ **Auto Idle Stop may not activate when:**

- The vehicle is stopped by braking suddenly.
- The steering wheel is operated.
- Altitude is high.
- The vehicle is repeatedly accelerated and decelerated at a low speed.
- The fan speed is high.
- The climate control system is in use, and there is a significant difference between the set temperature and the actual interior temperature.
- The climate control system is in use, and humidity in the interior is high.

The Engine Automatically Restarts When:

- The brake pedal is released (without the automatic brake hold system activated).
- The accelerator pedal is depressed (with the automatic brake hold system activated).
  ➡ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 561
- When the transmission is put into P from D or N on a slope.

The engine restarts even if the brake pedal is depressed*1 when:

- The Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button is pressed.
- The steering wheel is operated.
- The transmission is put into R or when it is set from N to D.
  ▶ If you put the transmission into P after the Auto Idle Stop activates, the Auto Idle Stop continues to operate. In this case, the engine restarts when you depress the brake pedal.
- The pressure on the brake pedal is reduced and the vehicle starts moving while stopped on an incline.
- The pressure on the brake pedal is repeatedly applied and released slightly during a stop.
- The battery charge becomes low.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed.
- The driver's seat belt is unlatched.
- FRONT is on (indicator is on).
- The climate control system is in use, and the difference between the set temperature and actual interior temperature becomes significant.
- The climate control system is being used to dehumidify the interior.
- The vehicle ahead of you starts again when your vehicle stops automatically with Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow.
- The **SPORT** mode is selected by using the **DRIVE MODE** switch.

Continued

The Engine Automatically Restarts When:

If you are using an electronic device during Auto Idle Stop, the device may temporarily be turned off when the engine restarts.

The engine restarts even if the brake pedal is depressed*1 when:

*1: With the automatic brake hold system activated, you can release the brake pedal while Auto Idle Stop is in operation.

If the automatic brake hold system has been turned off, or if there is a problem with the system, the engine will restart automatically when you release the brake pedal.
➡ **Automatic Brake Hold** P. 561

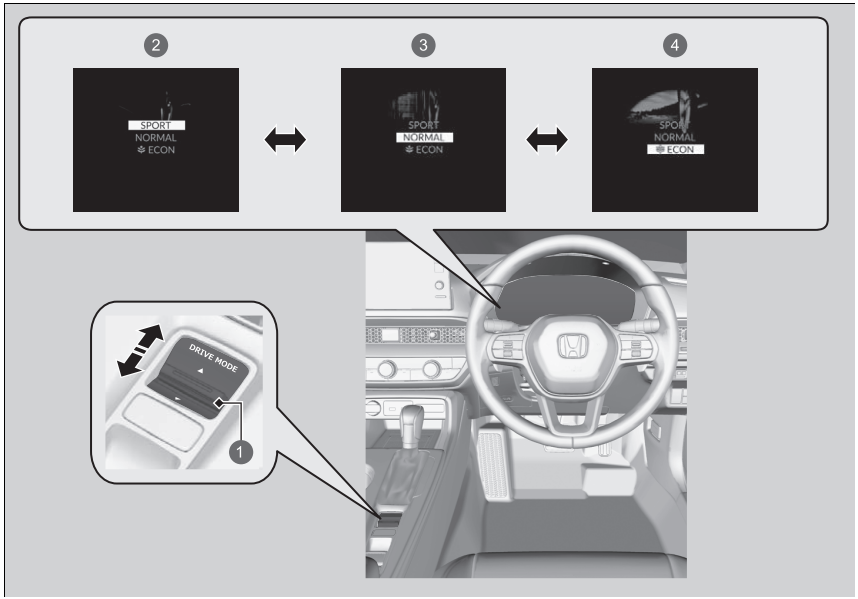
■ Starting Assist Brake Function

Briefly keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal to restart the engine. This can keep your vehicle from unexpectedly moving while on an incline.

Continuously variable transmission models

Drive Mode Switch

You can choose between three modes, **SPORT** mode, **NORMAL** mode and **ECON** mode by using the **DRIVE MODE** switch.
The current mode is displayed on the gauge, and each mode will appear differently.



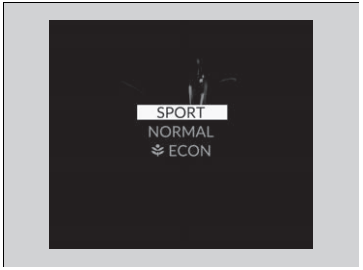
1. **DRIVE MODE** Switch
2. **SPORT** Mode
3. **NORMAL** Mode
4. **ECON** Mode

Continued

Drive Mode Switch

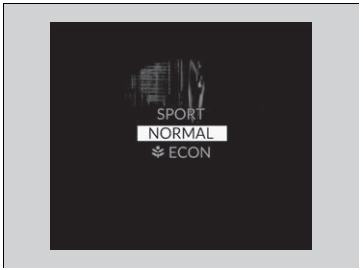
The mode may not be able to be changed when:
- The vehicle is turning.
- The VSA system is activating.
- There is a problem with the engine, the transmission, the VSA, and the EPS.

SPORT Mode



Enhances responsiveness to the driver's input.

NORMAL Mode



Optimizes the balance between operability and comfort.

SPORT Mode

While in **SPORT** mode, the Auto Idle Stop System will stay disabled regardless of the Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button.

➡ **Auto Idle Stop*** P. 414

* Not available on all models

■ ECON Mode

Facilitates fuel-efficient driving.

■ Next Start-up Mode

The mode for the next start-up is saved according to the following chart.

Last Drive Mode	Next Drive Mode
ECON Mode	**ECON** Mode
NORMAL Mode	**NORMAL** Mode
SPORT Mode	**NORMAL** Mode

ECON Mode

While in **ECON** mode, the climate control system will be less effective and the vehicle slower to accelerate.

Manual transmission models

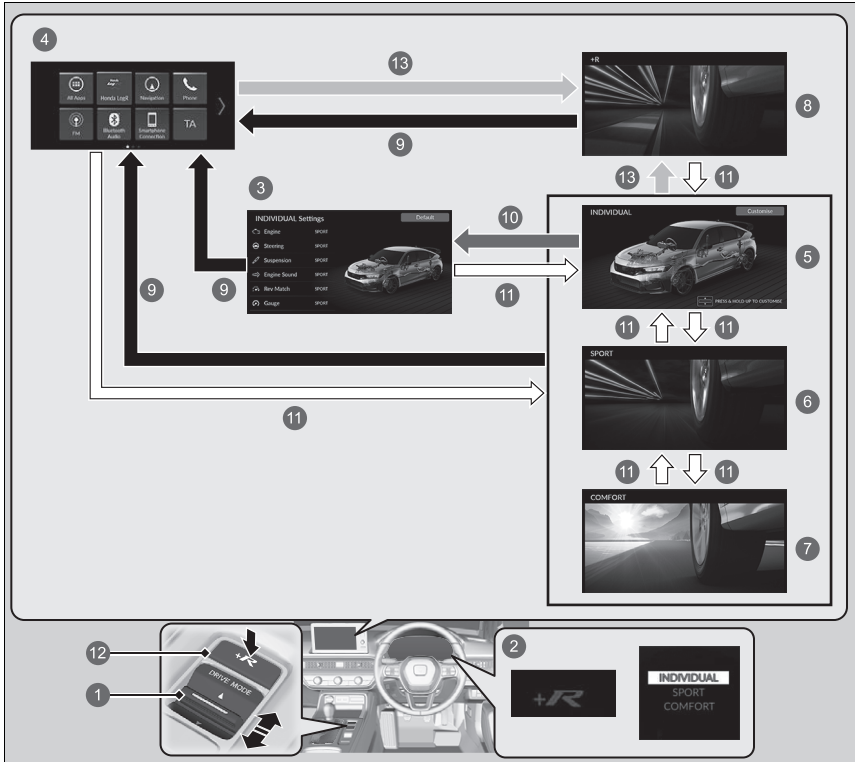
Drive Mode Switch

You can choose between four modes, **+R** mode, **SPORT** mode, **COMFORT** mode and **INDIVIDUAL** mode by using the **DRIVE MODE** switch or the **+R** button.
The current mode is displayed on the gauge, and each mode will appear differently.

Drive Mode Switch

The mode may not be able to be changed when:
- The vehicle is turning.
- The VSA system is activating.
- There is a problem with the adaptive damper system, the engine, the VSA, and the EPS.

Selecting the Drive Mode



Continued

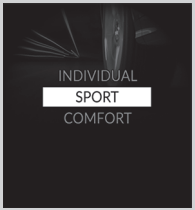
❶ **DRIVE MODE** Switch
❷ Changing modes by **DRIVE MODE** switch or **+R** button alters the screen on the gauge.
❸ **INDIVIDUAL Settings** Screen
❹ Audio/Information Screen
❺ **INDIVIDUAL** Mode
❻ **SPORT** Mode
❼ **COMFORT** Mode
❽ **+R** Mode
❾ Press the BACK or HOME button
The display returns to audio/information screen a few seconds after pressing the **+R** button or the **DRIVE MODE** switch up or down.
❿ Press the **DRIVE MODE** switch up and hold or select **Customize***1/ **Customise***2
➡ **Customizing the INDIVIDUAL Settings** P. 430
⓫ Press the **DRIVE MODE** switch up or down
⓬ **+R** button
⓭ Press the **+R** button

*1: Hong Kong, Macanese and Philippine models
*2: Except Hong Kong, Macanese and Philippine models

COMFORT Mode

Enhances driver comfort.

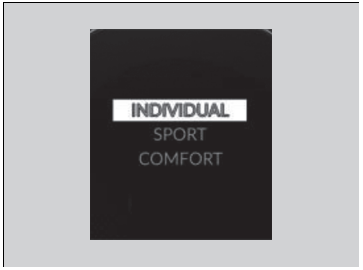
SPORT Mode



Enhances responsiveness to the driver's input.

Continued

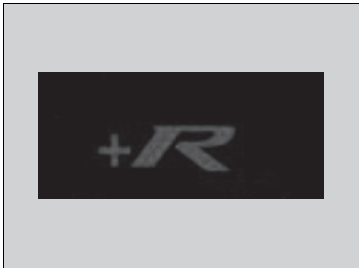
■ INDIVIDUAL Mode



Customize each category to suit the driver’s preference.

➡ **Customizing the INDIVIDUAL Settings** P. 430

■ +R Mode



Maximises responsiveness to the driver's input.
Several VSA features can be turned off entirely.

➡ **When in +R Drive mode** P. 446

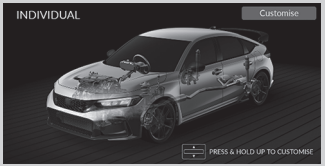
■ Next Start-up Mode

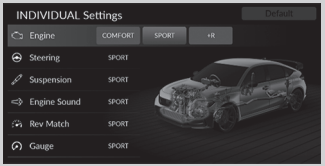
The mode for the next start-up is saved according to the following chart.

Last Drive Mode	Next Drive Mode
COMFORT	**COMFORT**
INDIVIDUAL	**INDIVIDUAL**
SPORT	**SPORT**
+R	If the **+R** mode is last used before you turn the power mode to OFF, the mode before selecting the **+R** mode is selected next time you turn the power mode to ON.

Continued

■ Customizing the INDIVIDUAL Settings





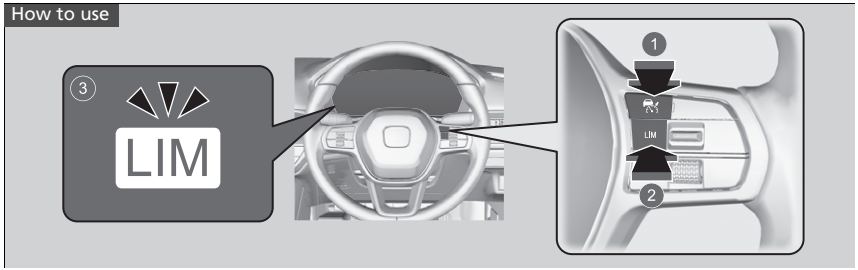
1. Select **INDIVIDUAL** mode.
2. Press the **DRIVE MODE** switch up and hold or select **Customize**[*1]/**Customise**[*2] to open the **INDIVIDUAL settings**.
   ▶ You can also select from Customized Features on the audio/information screen.
   ➔ **Selecting the Drive Mode** P. 425
   ➔ **Customized Features** P. 313
3. Select the setting category.
4. Select the desired setting.

*1: Hong Kong, Macanese and Philippine models
*2: Except Hong Kong, Macanese and Philippine models

Adjustable Speed Limiter*

This system enables you to set a maximum speed that cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal.
The vehicle speed limit can be set from about 30 km/h to about 320 km/h.

How to use



1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. If a different indicator comes on, press the **LIM** button to switch to the adjustable speed limiter.
3. **The Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (White) is on in the gauge.**
   Adjustable speed limiter is ready to use.

Adjustable Speed Limiter*

WARNING

Adjustable Speed Limiter has limitations.
It is always your responsibility to adjust the vehicle speed to obey the actual speed limit, and safely operate the vehicle.

WARNING

Do not depress the accelerator pedal more than necessary.
Maintain an appropriate accelerator pedal position depending on the vehicle speed.

The adjustable speed limiter may not hold the set speed limit when driving downhill. If this occurs, slow down by depressing the brake pedal.

When not using the adjustable speed limiter:
Turn off the adjustable speed limiter by pressing the button.

You cannot use the Adjustable Speed Limiter and below systems at the same time.
-Adaptive cruise control (ACC)
-Intelligent speed limiter

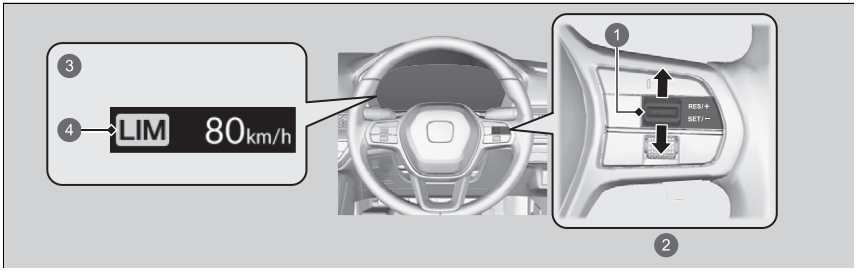
When the engine speed slows down, try to downshift.

Driving

* Not available on all models

Continued

To Set the Speed Limit



1. **RES/+/SET/-** Switch
2. Up or down
3. On when the adjustable speed limiter is set.
4. Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (Green)

- Take your foot off the pedal and press the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up or down when you reach the desired speed.
  The moment you release the switch, the speed limit is fixed, and the adjustable speed limiter is set. The speed limit is displayed.
- You can set the previously set speed limit by pressing the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up.

To Set the Speed Limit

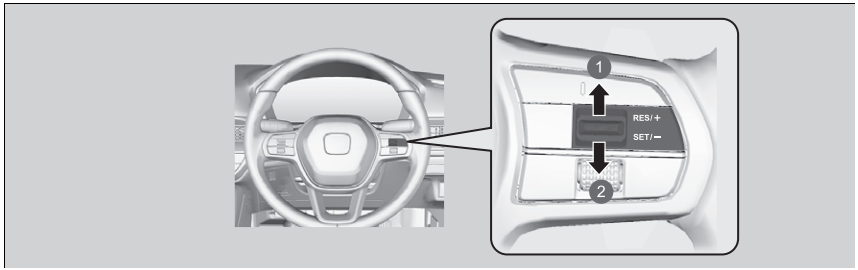
If you set the speed limit while travelling at less than 30 km/h, the speed limit is set to 30 km/h.

The beeper sounds and the displayed speed limit blinks if the vehicle speed exceeds the limit by about 3 km/h or more on a steep descent.

The adjustable speed limiter is set to the current speed if it is higher than the previously set speed limit when you press the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up.

■ To Adjust the Speed Limit

Increase or decrease the speed limit by using the **RES/+/SET/-** switch on the steering wheel.



❶ To increase speed
❷ To decrease speed

- Each time you press the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up or down, the speed limit increases or decreases by 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you keep the **RES/+/SET/-** switch pressed up or down, the speed limit increases or decreases in increments of 10 km/h every 0.5 second until system limit is reached.
- The vehicle may accelerate or decelerate until the set speed is reached.

Continued

Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The speed limit can be exceeded by depressing the accelerator pedal completely.

▶ The displayed limit speed blinks.

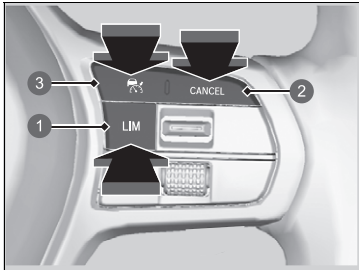
▶ The beeper sounds once the speed limit has been exceeded.

Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The beeper sounds when the vehicle speed goes higher than the set speed limit with the accelerator pedal depressed completely.

The adjustable speed limiter resumes working once the vehicle speed goes lower than the set speed limit.

To Cancel



❶ **LIM** Button
❷ **CANCEL** Button
❸ Button

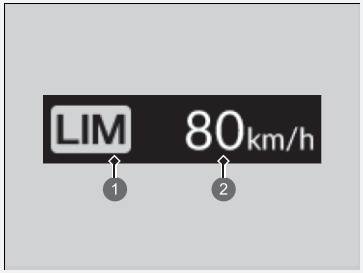
To cancel the adjustable speed limiter, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the button.
- Press the **LIM** button.

To Cancel

The adjustable speed limiter changes into adaptive cruise control (ACC) or intelligent speed limiter if the **LIM** button is pressed.

Resuming the prior set speed:
Press the **CANCEL** button to display the prior set speed (grey) and press the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up to resume the prior set speed.
If you are driving at a speed faster than the prior set speed (grey), the adjustable speed limiter is set to the current speed by pressing the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up.
If you press the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up when no prior set speed (in grey) is displayed, the speed will be set to your vehicle's current speed.

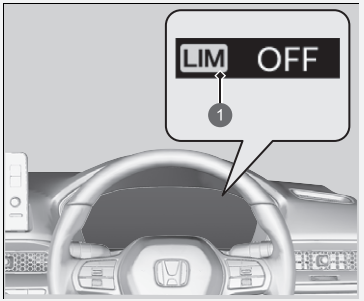


❶ Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (White)
❷ Prior Set Speed (Grey)

Continued

To Cancel

If there is a problem with the system when you are using the adjustable speed limiter, the beeper sounds and **OFF** comes on. The adjustable speed limiter will be turned off.



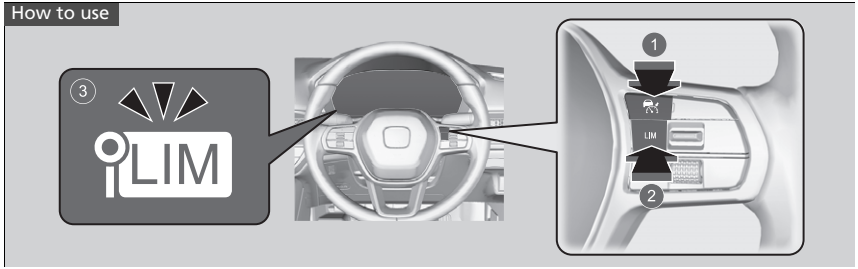
1 Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator (White)

Intelligent Speed Limiter*

Automatically sets the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects. And the speed limit cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal. If you fully depress the accelerator the speed limit can be exceeded.

Traffic Sign Recognition System* P. 543

How to use



1. Press the button on the steering wheel.
2. If a different indicator comes on, press the **LIM** button to change it to the intelligent speed limiter.
3. **The Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator (White) is on in the gauge.** Intelligent speed limiter is ready to use.

Intelligent Speed Limiter*

WARNING

Intelligent Speed Limiter has limitations. The Intelligent Speed Limiter may set itself to a speed above or below the actual speed limit, or may not work, particularly where the traffic sign recognition system does not operate correctly or where a road has no speed limit signs. It is always your responsibility to adjust the speed to obey the actual speed limit and to safely operate the vehicle.

Depending on the amount of depression of the accelerator pedal, the vehicle will accelerate until it reaches the speed identified by the traffic sign recognition system.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Intelligent Speed Limiter*

The system is designed to detect signs that follow the Vienna Convention standards. Not all signs may be detected, but any signs posted on roadsides should not be ignored. The system does not work on the designated traffic signs of all the countries you travel, nor in all situations.

Traffic Sign Recognition System* P. 543

If the intelligent speed limiter is set to the wrong speed limit, try one of the following:

To cancel

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the button.
- Press the **LIM** button.

To exceed the speed limit temporarily

- Depressing the accelerator pedal fully.

The intelligent speed limiter may not hold the set speed limit when driving downhill. If this occurs, slow down by depressing the brake pedal.

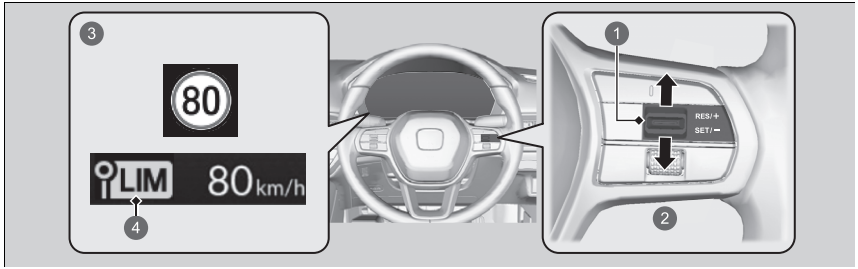
When not using the intelligent speed limiter, turn off the intelligent speed limiter by pressing the button.

You cannot use the intelligent speed limiter and adaptive cruise control (ACC) or adjustable speed limiter at the same time.

When the engine speed slows down, try to downshift.

 * Not available on all models

To Set the Speed Limit



1. **RES/+/SET/-** Switch
2. Up or down
3. On when the intelligent speed limiter is set to the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.
4. Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator (Green)

- The moment you release the switch, the intelligent speed limiter is set to the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects. The speed limit is displayed.

Intelligent Speed Limiter*

Do not use the intelligent speed limiter in areas of different units from the display unit of the intelligent speed limiter.

To Set the Speed Limit

If you set the intelligent speed limiter when the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects is less than 30 km/h, the speed limitation function and warning function may switch to pause.

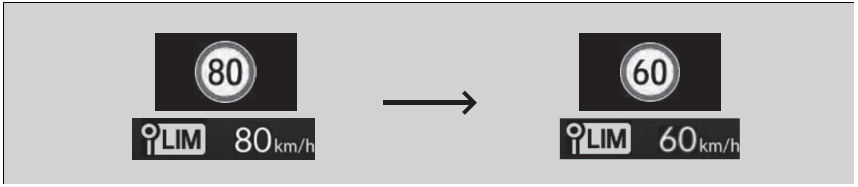
If your vehicle speed is higher than the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects, your vehicle decelerates slowly to the speed limit or less. If necessary, slow down by depressing the brake pedal. And the beeper sounds and the displayed speed limit blinks if the vehicle speed exceeds the limit by 3 km/h or more.

* Not available on all models

Continued

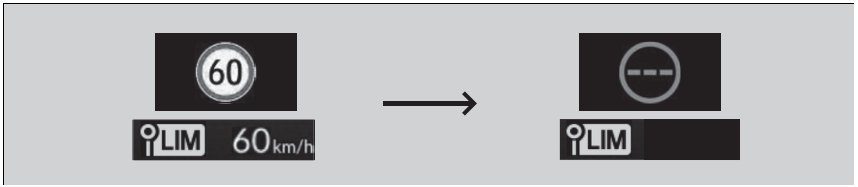
■ **When the traffic sign recognition system detects the new speed limit sign**

The intelligent speed limiter is set to the new speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.



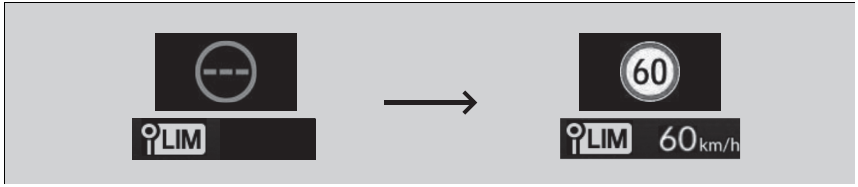
■ **The speed limitation function and warning function may switch to pause if there is no speed limit sign in the screen of the traffic sign recognition system when:**

- Other designated limit is detected.
- You make a turn with a turn signal to change direction at an intersection.



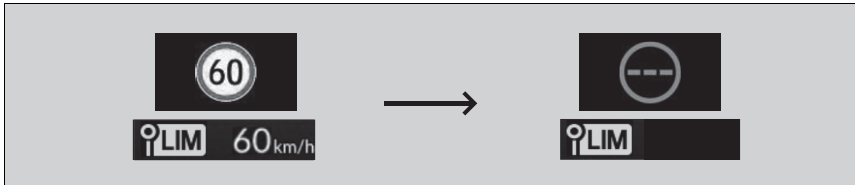
■ When the traffic sign recognition system detects the speed limit sign while the intelligent speed limiter is paused

The speed limitation function and warning function will be resumed automatically.



■ When the traffic sign recognition system does not detect the speed limit sign for a time while the intelligent speed limiter is activated

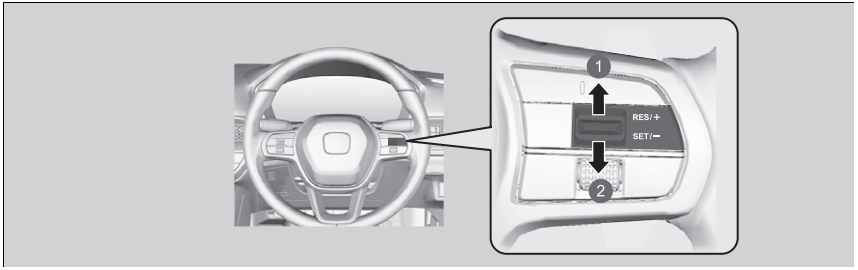
While driving, in addition to when the traffic sign recognition system detects no speed limit sign, the traffic sign recognition system may display no speed limit. But, intelligent speed limiter functions continue.



Continued

To Adjust the Speed Limit

Increase or decrease the speed limit by using the **RES/+/SET/-** switch on the steering wheel.



1. To increase speed
2. To decrease speed

- Each time you press the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up or down, the speed limit is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h accordingly.
- You can increase the speed limit until +10 km/h on the basis of the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.
- You can decrease the speed limit until -10 km/h on the basis of the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.
- You can accelerate until the set speed is reached. If your vehicle speed is higher than the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects, your vehicle decelerates slowly to the speed limit.

To Adjust the Speed Limit

A negative or positive offset with respect to the speed limit will be reset automatically when the traffic sign recognition system detects the new speed limit sign.

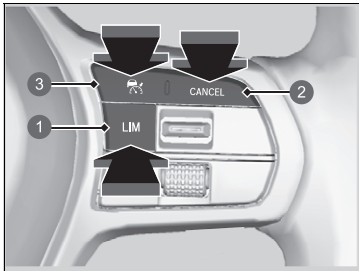
You cannot decrease the speed limit less than 30 km/h.

Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The speed limit can be exceeded by depressing the accelerator pedal fully.

▶ The displayed speed limit blinks.
The beeper sounds once the speed limit has been exceeded.

To Cancel



❶ **LIM** Button
❷ **CANCEL** Button
❸ Button

To cancel the intelligent speed limiter, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the button.
- Press the **LIM** button.

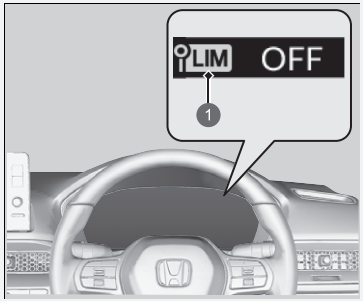
Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The beeper sounds when the vehicle speed goes higher than the set speed limit with the acceleration pedal depressed completely.

The intelligent speed limiter resumes working once the vehicle speed goes lower than the set speed limit.

To Cancel

The intelligent speed limiter changes into adaptive cruise control (ACC) or adjustable speed limiter if the **LIM** button is pressed.



❶ Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator (White)

If there is a problem with the system or traffic sign recognition system when you are using the intelligent speed limiter, the beeper sounds and **OFF** comes on. The intelligent speed limiter will be turned off.

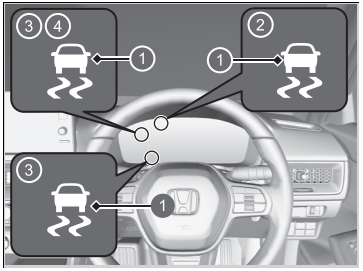
➡ **Traffic Sign Recognition System*** P. 543

* Not available on all models

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

VSA helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine output and selectively applying the brakes.

■ VSA Operation



When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic brake system. You will also see the indicator blink.

1. VSA System Indicator
2. Models with A-type meter
3. Models with B-type meter
4. When using the **+R** gauge*

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

The VSA may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures as specified.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

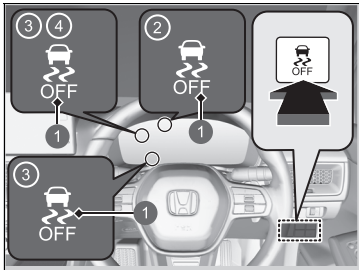
VSA cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

The main function of the VSA system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

The adaptive cruise control (ACC) with low speed follow*, adaptive cruise control (ACC)*, safety support, vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, and vehicle stability assist (VSA) **OFF*** indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

VSA On and Off



1. VSA **OFF** Indicator
2. Models with A-type meter
3. Models with B-type meter
4. When using the **+R** gauge*

This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially disable VSA functionality/features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.

Your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but traction control function will be less effective.

To restore VSA functionality/features, press the (VSA **OFF**) button until you hear a beep.

VSA is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off.

When the button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA system switched off.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Manual transmission models

■ When in +R Drive mode

To completely disable VSA, press and hold the VSA **OFF** button until you hear a single beep, then later two more beeps.

▶ **Vehicle stability assist system fully OFF** message appears on the driver information interface.

To resume VSA full function, press the VSA **OFF** button until a single beep is heard.

If VSA OFF mode is selected, and drive mode is changed to a mode other than **+R**, VSA full function will resume, and the VSA **OFF** indicator will goes off.

When in +R Drive mode

In OFF mode, your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but it will not have VSA traction and stability enhancement.

When the VSA system is off, the traction control system is also off.

We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA and traction control system switched off.

When you completely disable VSA, you cannot use Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) or the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS).

Road Departure Mitigation System, and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) do not function while VSA is completely disabled.

Some of the VSA features cannot be completely turned off while driving.

Agile Handling Assist

Lightly brakes the front wheels, as needed, when you turn the steering wheel, and helps support the vehicle's stability and performance during cornering.

Agile Handling Assist

The agile handling assist cannot enhance stability in all driving situations. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, the agile handling assist does not activate.

You may hear a sound coming from the engine compartment while the agile handling assist is activated. This is normal.

Manual transmission models

Limited Slip Differential (LSD)

■ Limited Slip Differential (LSD)

LSD (limited slip differential) is a type of differential that delivers extra torque to the wheel or the wheels with the most traction to minimise wheel slip and maintain control of the vehicle.

Limited Slip Differential (LSD)

NOTICE

Make sure both front tyres of your vehicle are of the same brand and specified size, and have equal wear. Otherwise, the LSD may not function properly.

Blind Spot Information System*

When the system detects vehicles approaching from behind in adjacent lanes, the appropriate indicator comes on, providing assistance when you change lanes.

Blind Spot Information System*

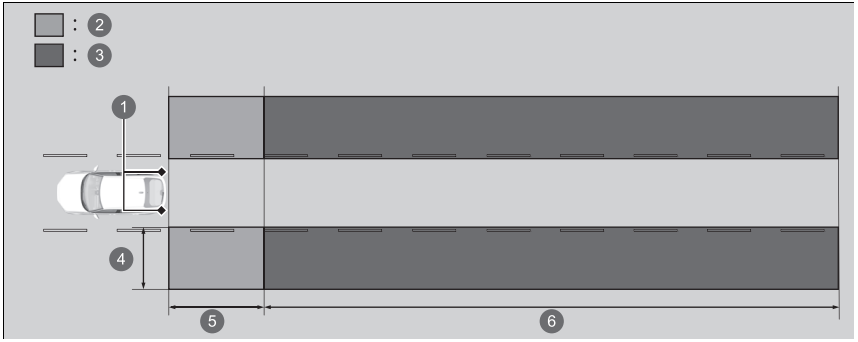
Important Safety Reminder
Like all assistance systems, the Blind Spot Information System has limitations. Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes. Overreliance on the Blind Spot Information System may result in a collision.

* Not available on all models

Continued

How the system works

The system activates when your vehicle is moving forward at about 20 km/h or above.



1. Radar Sensors: underneath the rear bumper corners
2. Alert Zone 1
3. Alert Zone 2
   Alert zone range
4. Approx. 0.5 and 3 metres from vehicle side.
5. Approx. 3 metres from rear bumper.
6. Approx. 3 and 25 metres behind from rear bumper. (The faster the approaching vehicle, the further away it will be detected.)

The initially set alert zone is alert zone 1. Over time, after the vehicle has been driven on straight roads with traffic and roadside objects, the system will adapt and expand the alert zone (alert zone 1 and 2).

Blind Spot Information System*

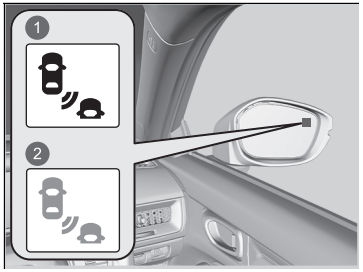
Have your vehicle checked by a dealer in the following situations:

- The rear bumper or area around the radar sensors is strongly impacted.
- The indicator does not come on even if a vehicle in the alert zone should have been detected.
- The rear bumper or any system components need to be repaired.

If the rear bumper or any system components are repaired, the system will revert to alert zone 1 only until it is able to adapt and expand to alert zone 1 and 2.

* Not available on all models

■ When the system detects a vehicle



❶ Comes On
❷ Blinks

Blind spot information system alert indicator: Located on the outside rearview mirror on both sides.

Comes on when:

- A vehicle approaches you from behind to overtake you at a speed difference of no more than about 50 km/h.
- You pass a vehicle at a speed difference of no more than about 20 km/h.

Blinks and a beeper sounds when:

You use the turn signal lever to signal a turn in the direction of the detected vehicle while the blind spot information system alert indicator is on.

▶ The beeper sounds three times.

*1: Except Philippine models
*2: Philippine models

* Not available on all models

Continued

Blind Spot Information System*

For proper blind spot information system operation:

- Always keep the rear bumper and area around the radar sensors clean.
- Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.

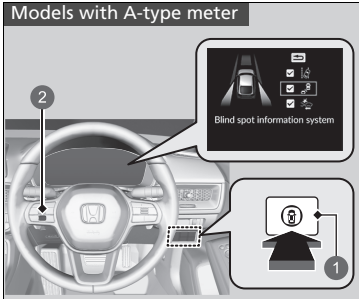
The system is for your convenience only. Even if an object is within the alert zone, the following situations may occur:

- The blind spot information system alert indicator does not come on and the message **Blind spot information not available***1/**Blind spot information system not available***2 appears on the driver information interface.
- The blind spot information system alert indicator may come on even with the message displayed.

The adaptive cruise control (ACC) with low speed follow*, adaptive cruise control (ACC)*, safety support, vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, and vehicle stability assist (VSA) **OFF*** indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Blind Spot Information System On and Off

Models with A-type meter



1. Safety Support Switch
2. Left Selector Wheel

When you turn the blind spot information system on and off, do the following.

1. Press the safety support switch.

Models with A-type meter

2. Roll the left selector wheel to the symbol and push it.

Models with B-type meter

2. Roll the right selector wheel to the symbol and push it.

▶ A message appears on the driver information interface when the system turns on or off.

▶ A tick mark appears in the box and the colour of the symbol changes to green when the system is on. The tick mark disappears and the colour of the symbol changes to grey when the system is off.

The blind spot information system will stay on in the previously selected on (ticked) or off (unticked) setting each time you start the engine.

Blind Spot Information System*

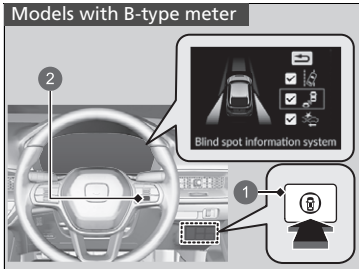
You can also select safety support content from the driver information interface.

➔ **Driver Information Interface (A-type Meter)** P. 140
➔ **Driver Information Interface Right Side Area (B-type-Meter)** P. 160

You can change the settings for the blind spot information system.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 313

* Not available on all models



❶ Safety Support Switch
❷ Right Selector Wheel

Continued

Blind Spot Information System Conditions and Limitations

The blind spot information system alert indicator may not come on under the following conditions:

- There is a large speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle in the adjacent lane.
- A vehicle is parked in a side lane.
- An object not detected by the radar sensors approaches or passes your vehicle.
- The vehicle driving in the adjacent lane is a motorcycle or other small vehicle.

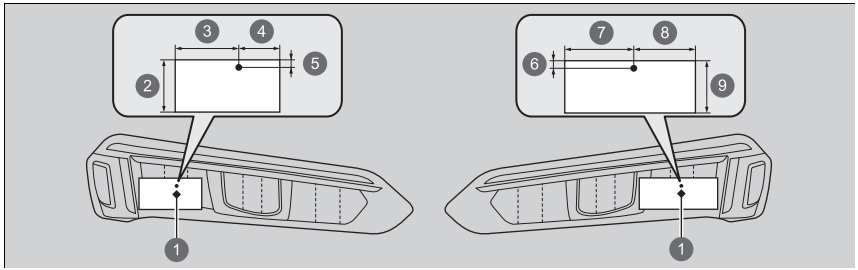
The Blind Spot Information System may not operate correctly under the following conditions:

- Making a turn at an intersection.
- Objects (guard rails, poles, trees, etc.) are detected.
- An object that does not reflect radio waves well or a motorcycle, is in the alert zone.
- Driving on a curved road.
- A vehicle is moving from a far lane to the adjacent lane.
- The system picks up signal interference such as other radar sensors from another vehicle or strong radio wave transmitted from a facility nearby.
- The rear bumper or the area around the radar sensors is covered by dirt, mud, snow, ice, etc.
- The rear bumper or the area around the radar sensors has been damaged or deformed.
- In bad weather (heavy rain, snow, and fog).
- Making a short turn or driving on a bumpy road that slightly tilts the vehicle.
- An object such as a bicycle rack is attached to the rear of the vehicle.

Australian models with 2.0 L engine, and Malaysian models

Adjusting Headlight Distribution

Driving the right-hand type vehicle in right-hand traffic, or the left-hand type vehicle in left-hand traffic causes headlight glare to oncoming vehicles. You need to alter the headlight beam distribution using masking tape.



1. Centre point
2. 40 mm
3. 48 mm
4. 32 mm
5. 10 mm
6. 10 mm
7. 52 mm
8. 48 mm
9. 40 mm

1. Prepare for two rectangular pieces of masking tape, measuring 40 mm wide and 100 mm*1 or 80 mm*2 long.
▶ Use masking tape that can shut out light, such as seal type waterproof vinyl.
2. Affix the tape to the lens as shown.

*1: For the driver's side headlight
*2: For the passenger's side headlight

Adjusting Headlight Distribution

Be careful not to adhere the tape to an incorrect location. If the headlight beam is distributed incorrectly, it may not comply with your country's legal requirements. Ask your dealer for details.

Honda Sensing

Honda Sensing is a driver support system which employs the use of a front wide view camera mounted to the interior side of the windscreen, behind the rearview mirror.

Honda Sensing has the following functions.

■ The functions which do not require switch operations to activate

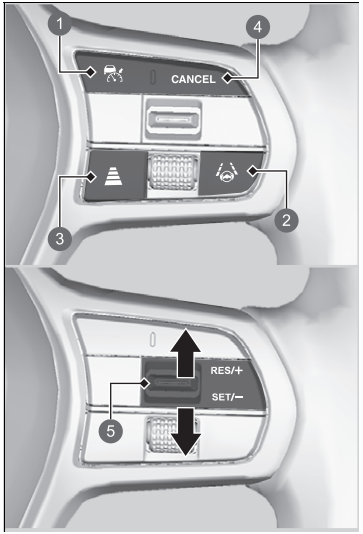
- Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) ➔ P. 460
- Road Departure Mitigation System ➔ P. 530
- Traffic Sign Recognition System* ➔ P. 543
- Lead Car Departure Notification System* ➔ P. 549

■ The functions which require switch operations to activate

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow* ➔ P. 473
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)* ➔ P. 490
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ➔ P. 508
- Traffic Jam Assist* ➔ P. 521

* Not available on all models

Operation Switches for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*/Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*/ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)/Traffic Jam Assist*



❶ Button
Press to activate standby mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow*/ACC*.
Or press to cancel the system.

❷ LKAS Button
Press to activate standby mode for LKAS and Traffic Jam Assist*. Or press to cancel these systems.

❸ Interval Button
Press to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow*/ACC* following-interval.

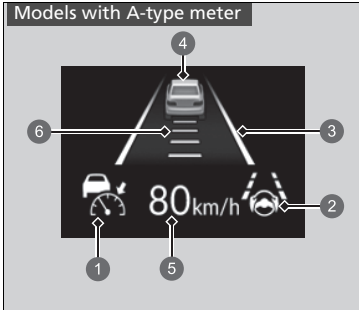
❹ **CANCEL** Button
Press to cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow*/ACC*.

❺ **RES/+/SET/–** Switch
Press the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up to set or resume the ACC with Low Speed Follow*/ACC* or increase the vehicle speed.
Press the **RES/+/SET/-** switch down to set the ACC with Low Speed Follow*/ACC* or decrease the vehicle speed.

* Not available on all models

Continued

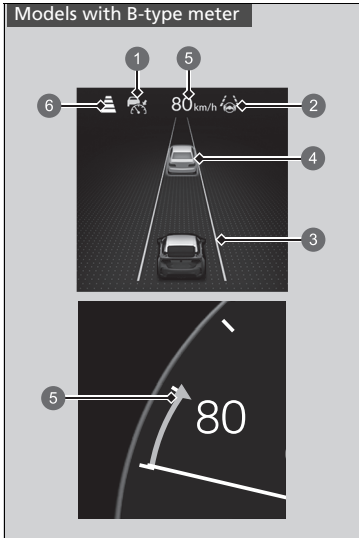
Gauge Content

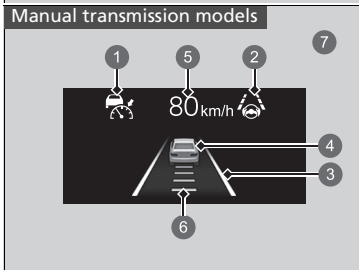


You can see the current state of ACC with Low Speed Follow*/ACC*, LKAS and Traffic Jam Assist*.

1. Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow*/ACC* is ready to be activated.
   - Green: The system is on.
   - White: The system is standby.
   - Amber: There is a problem with the system.
2. Indicates that LKAS or Traffic Jam Assist* is ready to be activated.
   - Green: The system is on.
   - White: The system is standby.
   - Amber: There is a problem with the system.
3. Indicates that LKAS or Traffic Jam Assist* is activated and whether or not traffic lane lines are detected.
   - Green lines: The system is on.
   - White lines: Traffic lane lines are detected.
   - Amber line: Lane departure is detected.

 * Not available on all models





❹ Indicates whether or not a vehicle is detected ahead.

Models with B-type meter*1

- Control target vehicle: White and outlined in green
- Outside of control target vehicle: Grey

❺ Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow*/ACC* shows the set vehicle speed.

❻ Indicates that ACC with Low Speed Follow*/ACC* shows the set vehicle interval.

❼ When using the **+R** gauge*.

*1: When the **+R** gauge is not being used

* Not available on all models

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

The system can assist you when it determines there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle (including motorcycles) ahead from behind, an oncoming vehicle in front, a pedestrian, or someone riding a bicycle (moving bicycle). The CMBS is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as assist in reducing speed, avoiding collisions, and reducing collision severity.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

Important Safety Reminder
The CMBS is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collisions nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

The CMBS may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under certain conditions:
➡ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 466

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.
➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 553

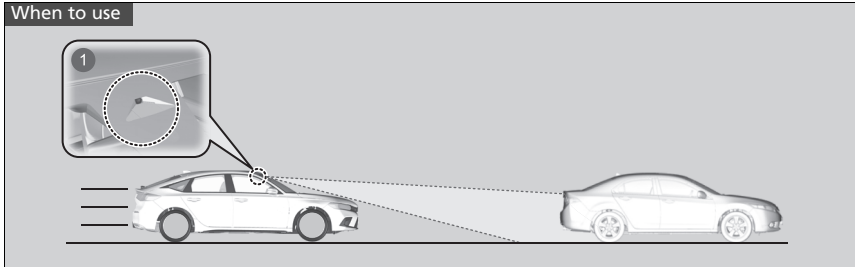
When the CMBS is activated, it will continue to operate even if the accelerator pedal is partially depressed. However, it will be cancelled if the accelerator pedal is fully depressed.

Manual transmission models
When the CMBS activates, the engine may stop automatically. Start the engine by normal operation if the engine stops.
➡ **Starting the Engine** P. 397

Manual transmission models
CMBS does not function while VSA is completely disabled.

■ How the system works

When to use



❶ The front wide view camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 5 km/h or above and will search for a vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle in front of you.

The CMBS activates when:

- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle detected in front of you becomes about 5 km/h and over with a chance of a collision.
- Your vehicle drives at about 30 km/h or less and there is a chance of in frontal collision with a detected oncoming vehicle when you turn left*1/right*2 at an intersection.
- Your vehicle speed is about 100 km/h or less and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with:

- An oncoming or stationary vehicle detected in front of you.
- A pedestrian or moving bicycle detected in front of you.

*1: Left-hand Drive Type
*2: Right-hand Drive Type

Continued

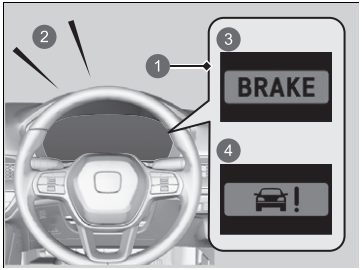
How the system works

The camera in the CMBS is also designed to detect pedestrians.
However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions.
Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.

➡ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 466

The CMBS will be cancelled when your vehicle stops or the system determines there no longer is the potential for a collision.
The CMBS may also be cancelled when a driver operates the steering wheel and the brake or accelerator pedal to avoid a collision.

■ When the system activates



The system provides visual and audible alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.

▶ Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)

❶ Visual Alerts
❷ Audible Alert
❸ Philippine models
❹ Except Philippine models

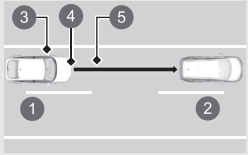
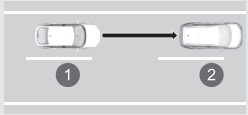
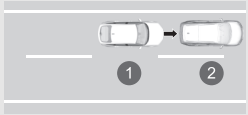
You can change the distance (**Long***1/**Far***2, **Normal** or **Short***1/**Near***2) between vehicles at which the system's earliest collision alert will come on.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 313

*1: Hong Kong, Macanese and Philippine models
*2: Except Hong Kong, Macanese and Philippine models

■ Collision Alert Stages

The system has three alert stages for a possible collision. However, depending on circumstances, the CMBS may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

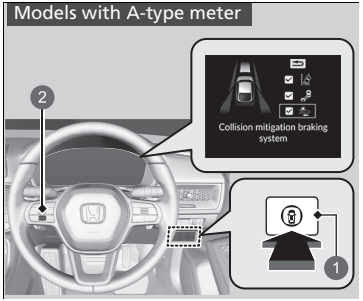
Distance between vehicles		CMBS		
		The sensors detect a vehicle	Audible & Visual WARNINGS	Braking
Stage one		There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you.	When in **Long***1/**Far***2, visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in **Normal** setting, and in **Short***1/**Near***2, at a shorter distance than in **Normal**.	—
Stage two		The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced.	Visual and audible alerts.	Lightly applied
Stage three		The CMBS determines that a collision is unavoidable.		Forcefully applied

❶ Your Vehicle
❷ Vehicle Ahead
❸ **Long***1/**Far***2
❹ **Normal**
❺ **Short***1/**Near***2

*1: Hong Kong, Macanese and Philippine models
*2: Except Hong Kong, Macanese and Philippine models

Continued

■ CMBS On and Off



❶ Safety Support Switch
❷ Left Selector Wheel

When you turn the CMBS on and off, do the following.

1. Press the safety support switch.

Models with A-type meter

2. Roll the left selector wheel to the symbol and push it.

Models with B-type meter

2. Roll the right selector wheel to the symbol and push it.

▶ A message appears on the driver information interface when the system turns on or off.

▶ A tick mark appears in the box and the colour of the symbol changes to green when the system is on. The tick mark disappears and the colour of the symbol changes to grey when the system is off.

The CMBS is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

CMBS On and Off

You cannot turn the CMBS off while driving.

The CMBS may automatically shut off, and the safety support indicator (amber) and collision mitigation braking system (CMBS) indicator (amber)* will come and stay on under certain conditions.

➔ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 466

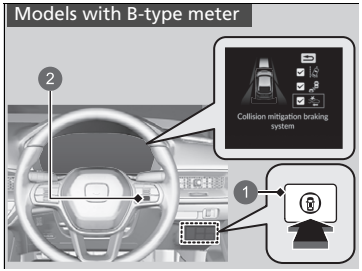
The CMBS is not activated for about 15 seconds after the engine starts.

You can also select the safety support content from the driver information interface.

➔ **Driver Information Interface (A-type Meter)** P. 140
➔ **Driver Information Interface Right Side Area (B-type-Meter)** P. 160

The adaptive cruise control (ACC) with low speed follow*, adaptive cruise control (ACC)*, safety support, vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, and vehicle stability assist (VSA) **OFF*** indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models



1. Safety Support Switch
2. Right Selector Wheel

Continued

CMBS Conditions and Limitations

In the following situations, the camera may be unable to correctly detect vehicles, pedestrians, moving bicycles, or road conditions, potentially causing the CMBS to operate improperly.

Front Wide View Camera P. 553

Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles, pedestrians, moving bicycles, or road surfaces.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, vehicles, pedestrians, or moving bicycles may not be illuminated).

Roadway conditions

- Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- Driving on rutted roads (snowy or unpaved roads, etc.).
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

CMBS Conditions and Limitations

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behaviour of the system (e.g. the warning message appears too frequently).

■ Vehicle conditions

- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- Tyre chains* are installed.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.

Vehicle conditions

Make sure that all the tyres are of the same specified size, type and brand, and that they are evenly worn. If you use tyres of different sizes, types, brands, or degree of wear, the system may not work properly.

Do not modify the suspension. Altering the height of the vehicle may prevent the system from working properly.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ **Examples of limitations on the correct detection of the camera due to the condition of the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicles, pedestrians, or moving bicycles**

- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle ahead of you is too short.
- The vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle suddenly cuts in front of or jumps out in front of you.
- The bicycle is stopped.
- The oncoming vehicle or vehicle ahead of you is sideways or facing diagonally.
- When the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising them.
- When several pedestrians are moving ahead of you in a group.
- When several bicycles are moving ahead of you in a group.
- When a pedestrian or moving bicycle crosses the road too quickly.
- A pedestrian or moving bicycle approaches from the opposite direction.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you or oncoming vehicle are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.
- When part of a pedestrian (heads, limbs, etc.) is hidden by luggage.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, when their hands are raised, or they are running.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 1 metre or taller than about 2 metres in height.
- When the pedestrian is pushing a stroller or bicycle.

■ Examples of other limitations on detection or system operation

- When the vehicle ahead of you is a small motorcycle, motorcycle with a sidecar, wheelchair, or other specially shaped vehicle.
- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as lorries that are not carrying a load, or a narrow vehicle.
- When the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian or moving bicycle is not in front of the vehicle.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian or moving bicycle is significantly large.
- When the vehicle or moving bicycle in front of you slows suddenly.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel to avoid a collision.
- When you approach the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrians or moving bicycles while accelerating rapidly or operating the steering wheel (except when turning left*1/right*2 at an intersection etc.)*3.
- When the moving bicycle is a child-sized bicycle, folding bicycle, three-wheeler or other bicycle with small tyres, or a long bicycle like a tandem bicycle.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle ahead of you, oncoming vehicle, pedestrian, or moving bicycle.
- When the minimum ground clearance of a vehicle ahead of you is extremely high.

*1: Left-hand Drive Type
*2: Right-hand Drive Type
*3: When there is a possibility of a frontal collision with the oncoming vehicle while turning left*1/right*2, the CMBS is activated. However, it may not be activated if you suddenly turn the steering wheel.

Continued

■ Automatic shutoff

The CMBS may automatically shut itself off and the safety support indicator (amber) and collision mitigation braking system (CMBS) indicator (amber)* come and stay on when:

- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected (incorrect tyre size, flat tyre, etc.).

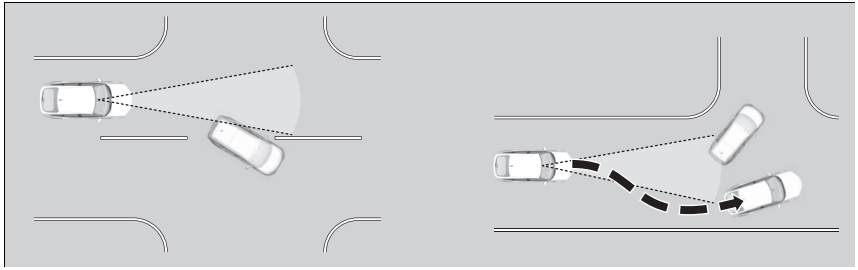
Once the conditions that caused the CMBS to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

* Not available on all models

■ With Little Chance of a Collision

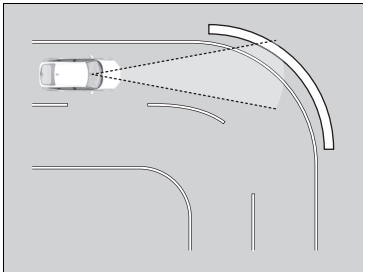
Even if there is little chance of a collision, the CMBS may activate under the following conditions.
Also, the system may activate if it detects a possibility of collision with pedestrians, moving bicycles, or vehicles.

- Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.
- Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.

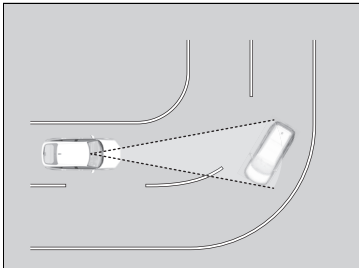


Continued

- When your vehicle approaches vehicles, pedestrians, or moving bicycles.
- When vehicles, pedestrians, or moving bicycles are passing in front of you.
- When you drive under a low structure or through a narrow gate at high speed.
- When there are traffic signs or structures such as guard rails are beside the road along a curve.



- When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where the oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.

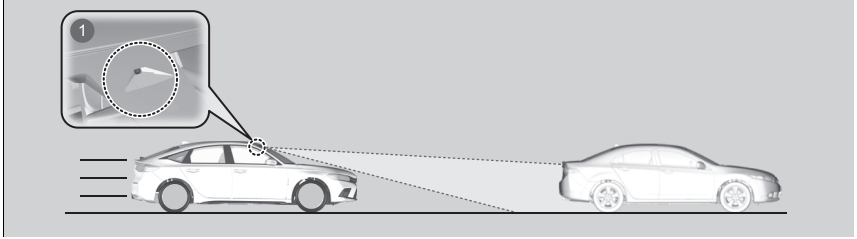


- When approaching stationary vehicles or walls, such as when parking.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.
When ACC with Low Speed Follow slows your vehicle by applying the brakes, your vehicle's brake lights will illuminate.

When to use



1 The front wide view camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

- Vehicle speed for ACC with Low Speed Follow: **A vehicle is detected ahead within ACC with Low Speed Follow range** – ACC with Low Speed Follow operates at speeds up to 180 km/h.
  No vehicle is detected within ACC with Low Speed Follow range – ACC with Low Speed Follow operates at the speed of 30 km/h or above.
- Shift position for ACC with Low Speed Follow: In D.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*

WARNING

Improper use of ACC with Low Speed Follow can lead to a crash.

Use ACC with Low Speed Follow only when driving on motorways and in good road and weather conditions.

WARNING

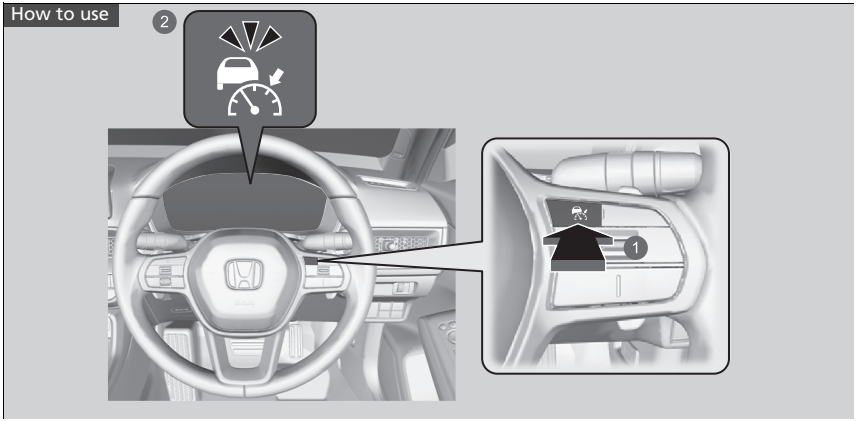
ACC with Low Speed Follow has limited braking capability and may not stop your vehicle in time to avoid a collision with a vehicle that quickly stops in front of you.

Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal if the conditions require.

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ How to activate the system



❶ Button
Press the button on the steering wheel.

❷ **(White) is on in the gauge.**
ACC with Low Speed Follow is ready to use.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*

⚠WARNING

Exiting a vehicle that has been stopped while the ACC with Low Speed Follow system is operating can result in the vehicle moving without operator control.
A vehicle that moves without operator control can cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.
Never exit a vehicle when the vehicle is stopped by ACC with Low Speed Follow.

Important Reminder
As with any system, there are limits to ACC with Low Speed Follow. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe interval between your vehicle and other vehicles.

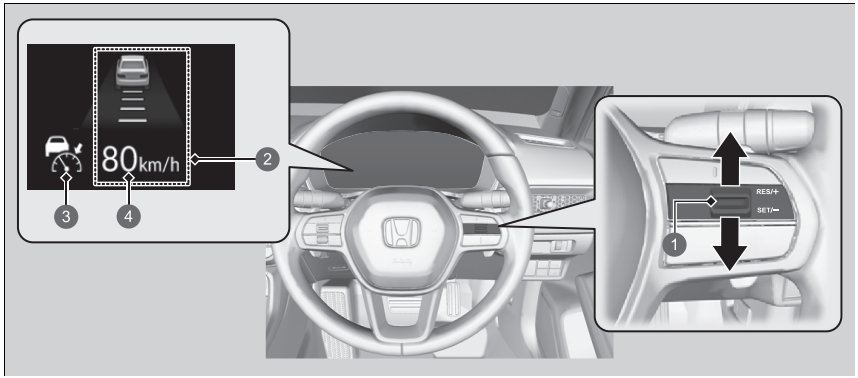
You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.
➔ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 553

ACC with Low Speed Follow may not work properly under certain conditions.
➔ **ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations** P. 480

When not using ACC with Low Speed Follow: Turn off adaptive cruise by pressing the button.

* Not available on all models

■ To Set the Vehicle Speed



❶ **RES/+/SET/–** Switch
Up or down
❷ On when ACC with Low Speed Follow begins
❸ (Green)
❹ Set Vehicle Speed (White)

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*

Do not use ACC with Low Speed Follow under the following conditions:

- On roads with frequent lane change or continuous stop and go traffic, ACC with Low Speed Follow cannot keep an appropriate distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.
- On roads with bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.), ACC with Low Speed Follow may not detect the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you properly.
- On roads with slippery or icy surfaces. The wheels may spin out and your vehicle may lose the control on the condition.
- On roads with steep uphill or steep downhill slopes.
- On roads with undulating slopes.

The adaptive cruise control (ACC) with low speed follow, safety support, vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, and vehicle stability assist (VSA) **OFF** indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Continued

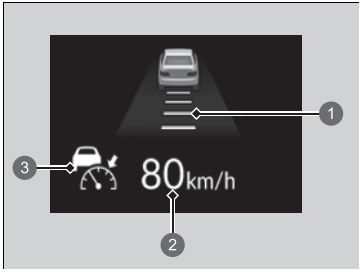
When driving at about 30 km/h or above: Take your foot off the pedal and press the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up or down when you reach the desired speed. The moment you release the switch, the set speed is fixed, and ACC with Low Speed Follow begins.

When you use ACC with Low Speed Follow, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated.

By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.

When driving slower than about 30 km/h: If the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is not depressed, pressing the switch fixes the set speed to about 30 km/h regardless of current vehicle speed.

If your vehicle is stationary, you can set the vehicle speed even with the brake pedal depressed.



When ACC with Low Speed Follow starts operating, the vehicle icon, interval bars and set speed appear on the gauge.

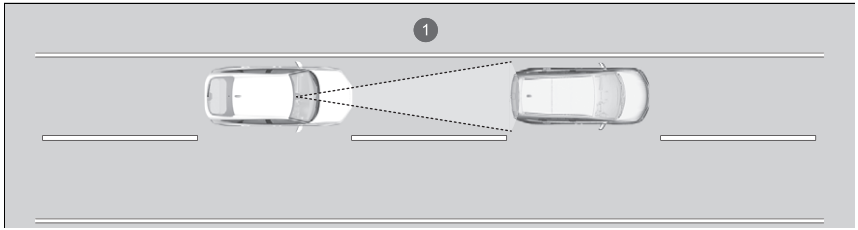
1. Set Vehicle Interval
2. Set Vehicle Speed
3. (Green)

When in Operation

There is a vehicle ahead

ACC with Low Speed Follow monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC with Low Speed Follow range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC with Low Speed Follow system maintains or decelerates your vehicle's set speed in order to keep the vehicle's set following-interval from the vehicle ahead.

To Set or Change Following-interval P. 485



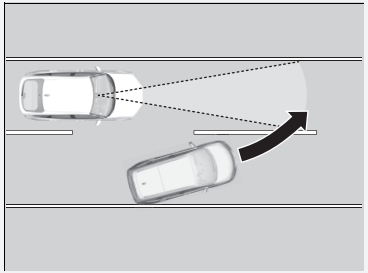
1 ACC with Low Speed Follow Range: 120 m

A vehicle icon appears on the gauge.

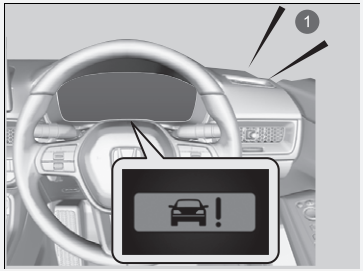
When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed comes in or cuts in front of you and is detected by the camera, your vehicle starts to slow down.

When in Operation

If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, a beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface.



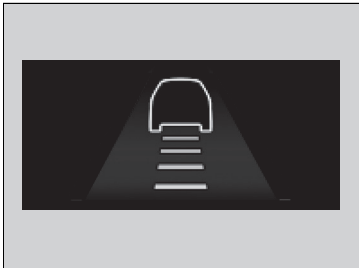
Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate interval from the vehicle ahead.



1 Audible Alert

Continued

■ There is no vehicle ahead



A vehicle icon with line contour appears on the gauge.

Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal.
If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from travelling at the set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

On steep downhill during ACC with Low Speed Follow, it brakes to inhibit excessive acceleration for maintaining the set speed. However the vehicle speed may become faster than the set speed.

■ When you depress the accelerator pedal

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC with Low Speed Follow range.
ACC with Low Speed Follow stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes the set speed.
There are times when the vehicle speed will decrease when the accelerator pedal is lightly applied.

When in Operation

Even if the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, ACC with Low Speed Follow may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
- A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the interval between the vehicles.

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle detected in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC with Low Speed Follow detecting range. A vehicle detect beep on and off can be selected.

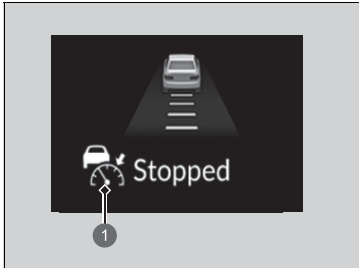
➡ **Customized Features** P. 313

Limitations

You may need to use the brake to maintain a safe interval when using ACC with Low Speed Follow. Additionally, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not work properly under certain conditions.

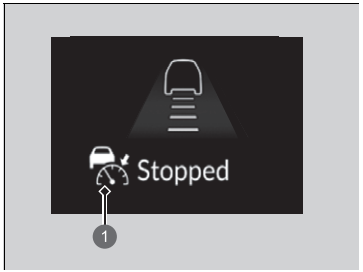
➡ **ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations** P. 480

■ A vehicle detected ahead is within ACC with Low Speed Follow range and slows to a stop



❶ (Green)

Your vehicle also stops, automatically. The **Stopped** message appears on the gauge. When the vehicle ahead of you starts again, if you press the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up or down, or depress the accelerator pedal, ACC with Low Speed Follow will operate again within the prior set speed.

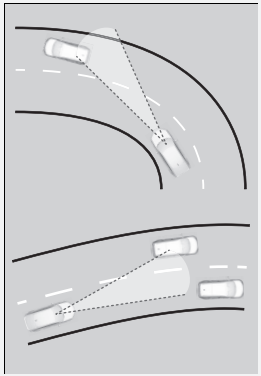


❶ (Green)

If no vehicle is ahead of you before you resume driving, depress the accelerator pedal and ACC with Low Speed Follow will operate again within the prior set speed.

When in Operation

- ACC with Low Speed Follow may temporarily control the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle in adjacent lane or surroundings of your vehicle depending on the road conditions (e.g. curves) or vehicle conditions (e.g. operating the steering wheel or the vehicle location in the lane).



- When the vehicle ahead of you moves away, such as when entering an interchange or rest area, ACC with Low Speed Follow may continue to maintain the set following-interval for a short time.

Continued

ACC with Low Speed Follow Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC with Low Speed Follow functions.

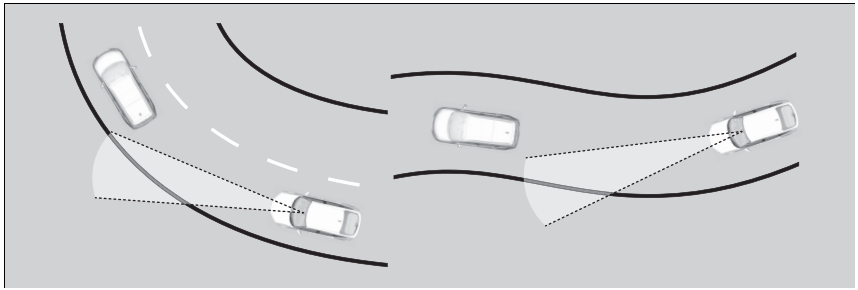
Front Wide View Camera P. 553

Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles or road surfaces.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, the whole vehicle may not be illuminated).
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads.



- Driving on rutted roads (snowy or unpaved roads, etc.).
- Puddles or a film of water is on the road surface.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

■ Vehicle conditions

- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- Tyre chains are installed.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film of the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.

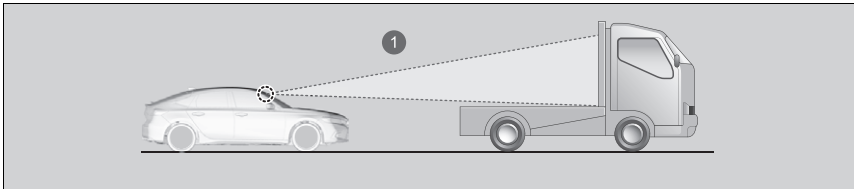
Continued

■ Examples of conditions under which the camera may not correctly detect the vehicle ahead of you

- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- When the vehicle ahead of you blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising it.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.

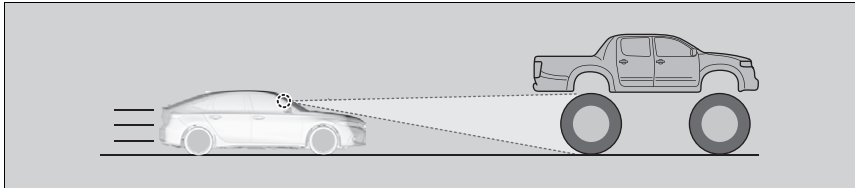
■ Examples of conditions under which the system may not work properly

- A vehicle ahead of you stops and the speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is significantly large.
- When the vehicle ahead of you slows suddenly.
- When a vehicle ahead of you is specially-shaped.
- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as lorries that are not carrying a load, or a narrow vehicle.



1 Camera detects upper section of an empty carrier lorry.

- When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on the edge of the lane.
- When the vehicle ahead of you is a narrow vehicle such as a motorcycle.
- When the minimum ground clearance of a vehicle ahead of you is extremely high.

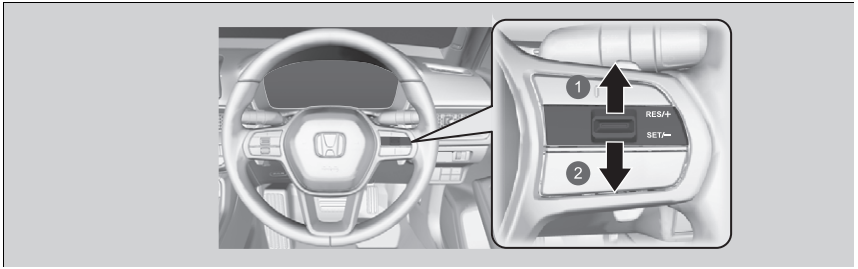


- When the camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle ahead of you.

Continued

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+/SET/-** switch on the steering wheel.



1. To increase speed
2. To decrease speed

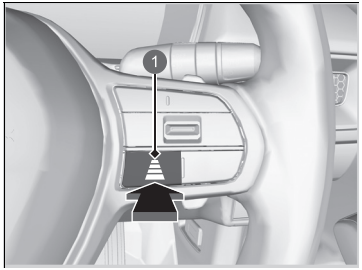
- Each time you press the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up or down, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you keep the **RES/+/SET/-** switch pressed up or down, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 10 km/h accordingly.

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC with Low Speed Follow may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

When you depress the accelerator pedal and then press down and release the **RES/+/SET/-** switch, the current speed of the vehicle is set.

■ To Set or Change Following-interval



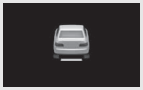
❶ Interval Button

Press the interval button to change the ACC with Low Speed Follow following-interval. Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through extra long, long, middle, and short following-intervals.

Determine the most appropriate following-interval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation.

Continued

The higher your vehicle's following-speed is, the longer the short, middle, long or extra long following-interval becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

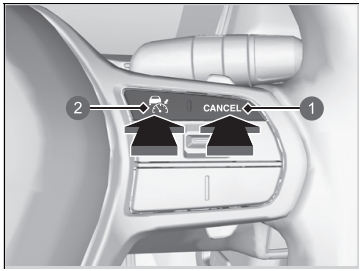
Following-interval		When the Set Speed is:	
		80 km/h	104 km/h
Short		26.6 metres 1.2 sec	33.7 metres 1.2 sec
Middle		34.6 metres 1.6 sec	44.9 metres 1.6 sec
Long		44.0 metres 2.0 sec	57.1 metres 2.0 sec
Extra Long		53.6 metres 2.4 sec	70.0 metres 2.4 sec

When your vehicle stops automatically because a vehicle detected ahead of you has stopped, the interval between the two vehicles will vary based on the ACC with Low Speed Follow interval setting.

To Set or Change Following-interval

The driver must in all circumstances preserve a sufficient braking interval from the vehicle which precedes it and be aware that minimum intervals or times of spacing can be provided by the provisions of the Motorway Code locally applicable and that it is the driver's responsibility to respect those laws.

■ To Cancel



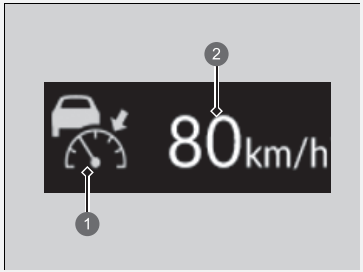
❶ **CANCEL** Button
❷ Button

To cancel ACC with Low Speed Follow, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
  ▶ The indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the indicator (white).
- Press the button.
  ▶ indicator (green) goes off.
- Depress the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving forward.
  ▶ The indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the indicator (white).

To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have cancelled ACC with Low Speed Follow, you can activate the ACC with Low Speed Follow with the prior set speed displayed on the gauge (in grey) by pressing the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up even if the vehicle is stopped.
When you turn the ACC with Low Speed Follow off by pressing the **CANCEL** button or depressing the brake pedal, the prior set speed is displayed on the gauge in grey.
When pressing the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up, the ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated with displayed speed.
If the indicator (white) is displayed and you press the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up, but no prior set speed (in grey) is displayed, the speed will be set to your vehicle's current speed.



❶ (White)
❷ Prior Set Speed (Grey)

Continued

■ Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the gauge when ACC with Low Speed Follow is automatically cancelled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC with Low Speed Follow to automatically cancel:

- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected, or the tyres are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road for extended periods, or driving off road.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA, or CMBS is activated.
- When the VSA system indicator comes on.
- When the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC with Low Speed Follow range is too close to your vehicle.
- When accelerating rapidly.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- The vehicle is loaded heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- When passing through a dark place, such as tunnel.
- When the parking brake and brake system indicator (amber) comes on.
- The vehicle has repeatedly applied the brakes to maintain the set speed (for example, you are descending a long slope).
- When the system doesn't detect any driving actions from the driver for a certain amount of time while the LKAS is also activated.

To Cancel

The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC with Low Speed Follow has been turned off using the button. Press the button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.

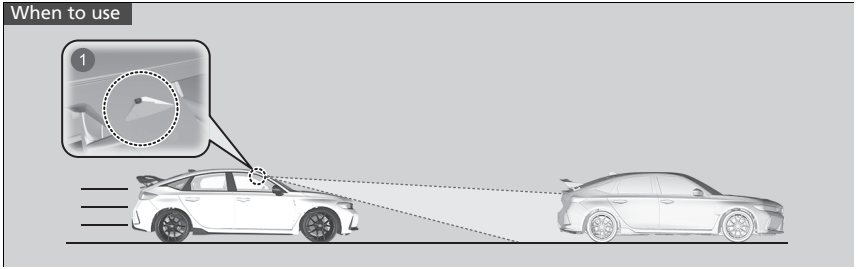
The ACC with Low Speed Follow automatic cancellation can be also triggered by the following causes. In these cases, the parking brake will be automatically applied.

- The driver's seat belt is unfastened when the vehicle is stationary.
- The vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes.
- The engine is turned off.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.
When ACC slows your vehicle by applying the brakes, your vehicle's brake lights will illuminate.

When to use



❶ The front wide view camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

- Vehicle speed for ACC: Desired speed in a range above roughly 30 km/h.
- Shift position for ACC: In 2 or higher position.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*

⚠WARNING

Improper use of ACC can lead to a crash. Use ACC only when driving on motorways and in good road and weather conditions.

⚠WARNING

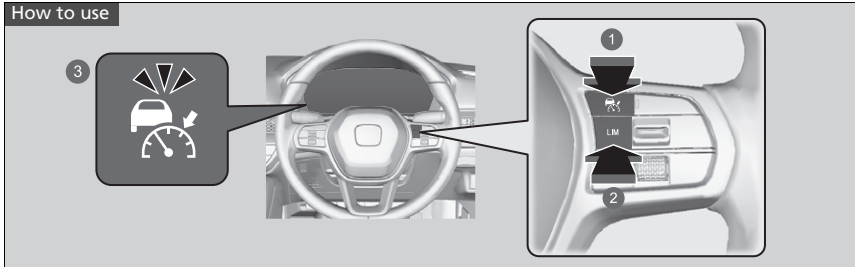
ACC has limited braking capability.
When your vehicle speed drops below 25 km/h, ACC will automatically cancel and no longer will apply your vehicle's brakes. Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal when conditions require.

Important Reminder
As with any system, there are limits to ACC. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe interval between your vehicle and other vehicles.

Thai models
CAUTION: This equipment should be operated keeping the radiator at least 20 cm or more away from person's body (excluding extremities: hands, wrists, feet and ankles).
This telecommunication equipment conforms to NTC technical requirement.
This telecommunication equipment has EMF radiation conforms to NTC EMF exposure standard.

* Not available on all models

■ How to activate the system



❶ Button
Press the button on the steering wheel.

❷ **LIM** Button*
If a different indicator comes on, press the **LIM** button to change it to ACC.

❸ **(White) is on in the gauge.**
ACC is ready to use.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.
➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 553

ACC may not work properly under certain conditions.
➡ **ACC Conditions and Limitations** P. 498

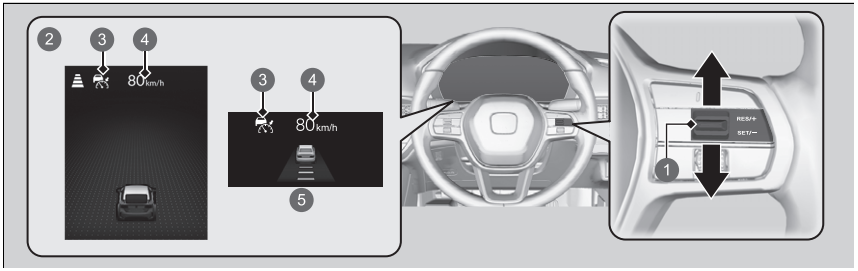
When not using ACC: Turn off adaptive cruise by pressing the button.

Do not use ACC under the following conditions:
- On roads with frequent lane change or continuous stop and go traffic, ACC cannot keep an appropriate distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.
- On roads with bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.), ACC may not detect the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you properly.
- On roads with slippery or icy surfaces. The wheels may spin out and your vehicle may lose the control on the condition.
- On roads with steep uphill or steep downhill slopes.
- On roads with undulating slopes.

* Not available on all models

Continued

To Set the Vehicle Speed



1. **RES/+/SET/–** Switch
   Up or down
2. On when ACC begins
3. (Green)
4. Set Vehicle Speed (White)
5. When using the **+R** gauge

Take your foot off the pedal and press the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up or down when you reach the desired speed. The moment you release the button, the set speed is fixed, and ACC begins.

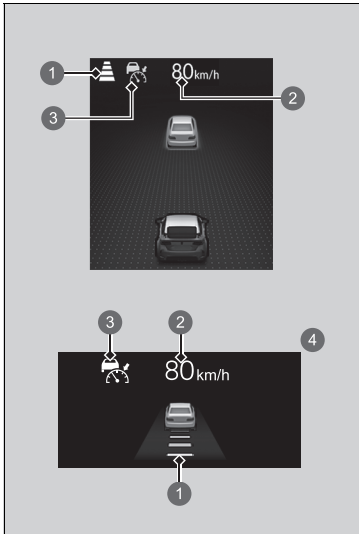
When you use ACC, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated.
By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*

The adaptive cruise control (ACC), safety support, and vehicle stability assist (VSA) system indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

When you completely disable VSA, you cannot use ACC.

* Not available on all models



1. Set Vehicle Interval
2. Set Vehicle Speed
3. (Green)
4. When using the **+R** gauge

When ACC starts operating, the vehicle icon, interval bars and set speed appear on the gauge.

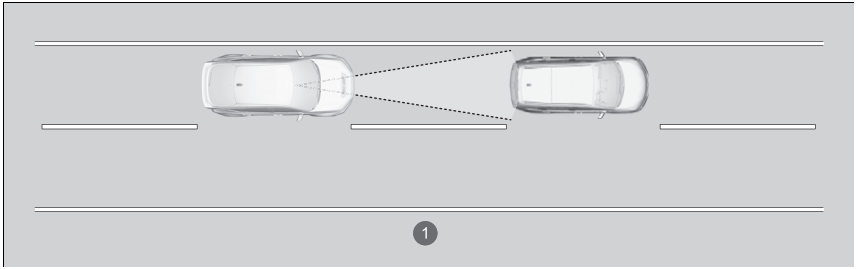
Continued

When in Operation

There is a vehicle ahead

ACC monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC system maintains or decelerates your vehicle's set speed in order to keep the vehicle's set following-interval from the vehicle ahead.

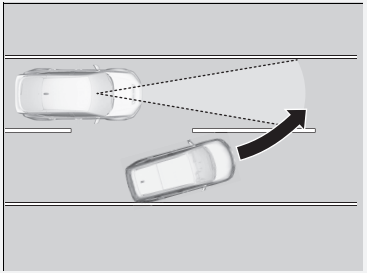
To Set or Change Following-interval P. 503



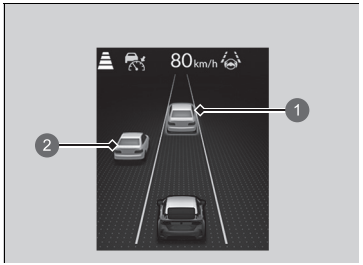
1 ACC Range: 120 m

When in Operation

If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, a beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface.



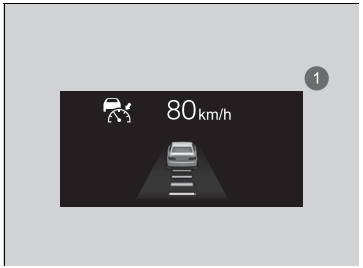
Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate interval from the vehicle ahead.



❶ Control target vehicle
❷ Outside of control target vehicle

A vehicle icon appears on the gauge.

Control target vehicle: White and outlined in green
Outside of control target vehicle: Grey

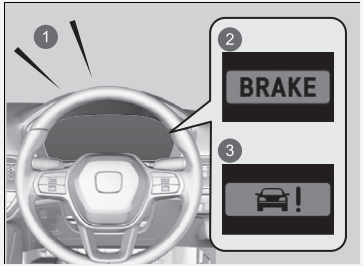


❶ When using the **+R** gauge

A vehicle icon appears on the gauge.

When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed comes in or cuts in front of you and is detected by the camera, your vehicle starts to slow down.

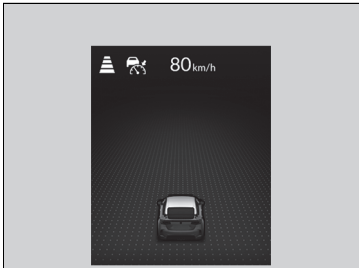
When in Operation



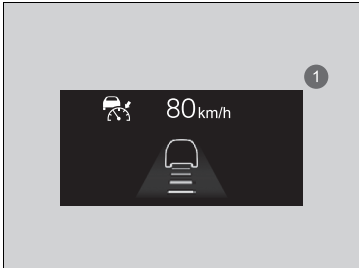
❶ Audible Alert
❷ Philippine models
❸ Except Philippine models

Continued

■ There is no vehicle ahead



Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal.
If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from travelling at the set speed, ACC accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.



On steep downhill during ACC, it brakes to inhibit excessive acceleration for maintaining the set speed.
However, the vehicle speed may become faster than the set speed.

❶ When using the **+R** gauge
A vehicle icon with line contour appears on the gauge.

When in Operation

Even if the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, ACC may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:
- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
- A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the interval between the vehicles.

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle detected in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC detecting range. A vehicle detect beep on and off can be selected.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 313

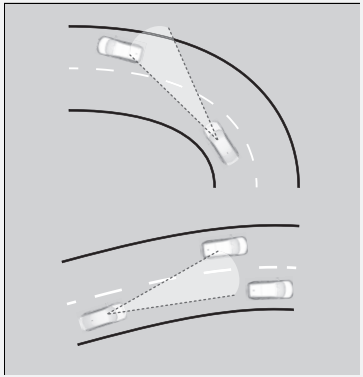
Limitations
You may need to use the brake to maintain a safe interval when using ACC. Additionally, ACC may not work properly under certain conditions.
➡ **ACC Conditions and Limitations** P. 498

■ When you depress the accelerator pedal

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC range.
ACC stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes the set speed.
There are times when the vehicle speed will decrease when the accelerator pedal is lightly applied.

When in Operation

- ACC may temporarily control the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle in adjacent lane or surroundings of your vehicle depending on the road conditions (e.g. curves) or vehicle conditions (e.g. operating the steering wheel or the vehicle location in the lane).



- When the vehicle ahead of you moves away, such as when entering an interchange or rest area, ACC may continue to maintain the set following-interval for a short time.

Continued

■ ACC Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC functions.

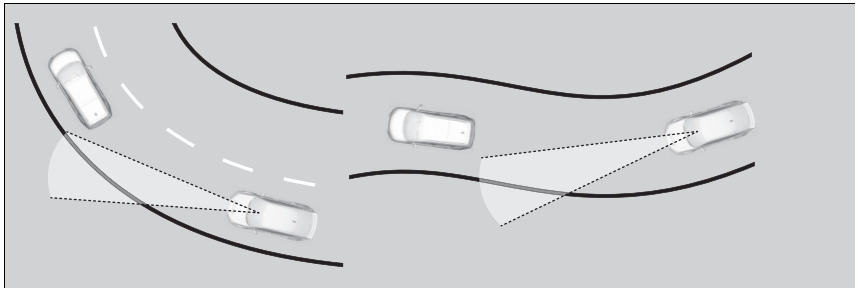
➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 553

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles or road surfaces.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, the whole vehicle may not be illuminated).
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads.



- Driving on rutted roads (snowy or unpaved roads, etc.).
- Puddles or a film of water is on the road surface.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

■ Vehicle conditions

- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film of the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.

* Not available on all models

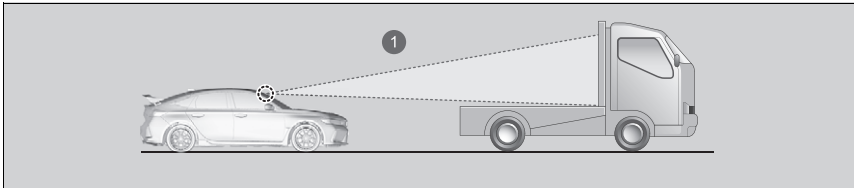
Continued

■ Examples of conditions under which the camera may not correctly detect the vehicle ahead of you

- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- When the vehicle ahead of you blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising it.
- The headlights of the vehicle ahead of you are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.

■ Examples of conditions under which the system may not work properly

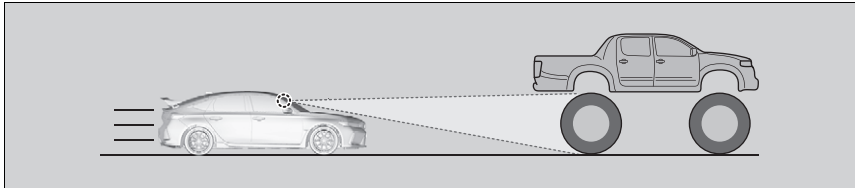
- A vehicle ahead of you stops and the speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is significantly large.
- When the vehicle ahead of you slows suddenly.
- When the vehicle ahead of you is a three-wheeled vehicle or specially shaped vehicle.
- When a vehicle is lower in the rear than the front such as lorries that are not carrying a load, or a narrow vehicle.



1 Camera detects upper section of an empty carrier lorry.

- When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on the edge of the lane.
- When the vehicle ahead of you is a narrow vehicle such as a motorcycle.

- When the minimum ground clearance of a vehicle ahead of you is extremely high.

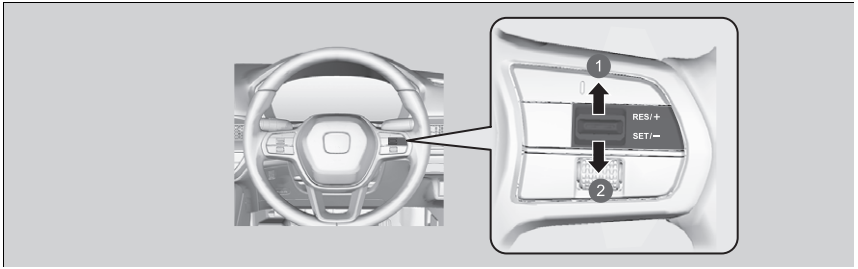


- When the camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the vehicle ahead of you.

Continued

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+/SET/-** switch on the steering wheel.



1. To increase speed
2. To decrease speed

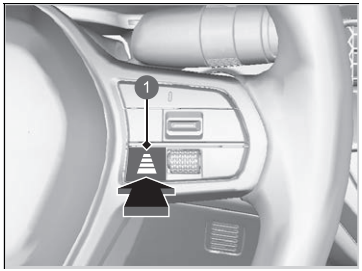
- Each time you press the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up or down, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you keep the **RES/+/SET/-** switch pressed up or down, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 10 km/h accordingly.

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

When you depress the accelerator pedal and then press down and release the **RES/+/SET/-** switch, the current speed of the vehicle is set.

To Set or Change Following-interval



1 Interval Button

Press the interval button to change the ACC following-interval.
Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through extra long, long, middle, and short following-intervals.

Determine the most appropriate following-interval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation.

Continued

The higher your vehicle's following-speed is, the longer the short, middle, long or extra long following-interval becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

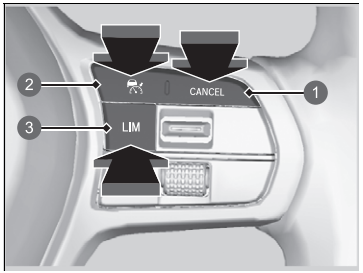
Following-interval			When the Set Speed is:	
			80 km/h	104 km/h
Short		❶	26.6 metres 1.2 sec	33.7 metres 1.2 sec
Middle		❶	34.6 metres 1.6 sec	44.9 metres 1.6 sec
Long		❶	44.0 metres 2.0 sec	57.1 metres 2.0 sec
Extra Long		❶	53.6 metres 2.4 sec	70.0 metres 2.4 sec

❶ When using the **+R** gauge

To Set or Change Following-interval

The driver must in all circumstances preserve a sufficient braking interval from the vehicle which precedes it and be aware that minimum intervals or times of spacing can be provided by the provisions of the Motorway Code locally applicable and that it is the driver's responsibility to respect those laws.

To Cancel



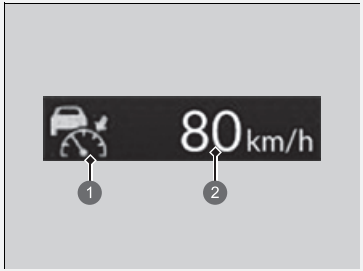
❶ **CANCEL** Button
❷ Button
❸ **LIM** Button*

To cancel ACC, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
  ▶ The indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the indicator (white).
- Press the button.
  ▶ indicator (green) goes off.
- Press the **LIM** button*.
- Depress the brake pedal while the vehicle is moving forward.
  ▶ The indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the indicator (white).
- Depress the clutch pedal for five seconds or more.
  ▶ The indicator (green) on the gauge changes to the indicator (white).

To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have cancelled ACC, you can activate the ACC with the prior set speed displayed on the gauge (in grey) by pressing the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up.
When you turn the ACC off by pressing the **CANCEL** button or depressing the brake pedal, the prior set speed is displayed on the gauge in grey.
When pressing the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up, the ACC is activated with displayed speed.
If the indicator (white) is displayed and you press the **RES/+/SET/-** switch up, but no prior set speed (in grey) is displayed, the speed will be set to your vehicle's current speed.



❶ (White)
❷ Prior Set Speed (Grey)

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the gauge when ACC is automatically cancelled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC to automatically cancel:

- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected, or the tyres are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road for extended periods, or driving off road.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA, or CMBS is activated.
- When the VSA system indicator comes on.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- When vehicle speed is less than 25 km/h.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC range is too close to your vehicle.
- When accelerating rapidly.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- The engine is turned off.
- The vehicle is loaded heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- When passing through a dark place, such as tunnel.
- When the parking brake and brake system indicator (amber) comes on.
- The vehicle has repeatedly applied the brakes to maintain the set speed (for example, you are descending a long slope).
- When the system doesn't detect any driving actions from the driver for a certain amount of time while the LKAS is also activated.

To Cancel

The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC has been turned off using the button. Press the button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.
If the vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h you cannot resume.

- Ignoring shift down indication shown in the gauge will cancel the ACC after about 10 seconds.
- The engine speed goes into the tachometer red zone.
- The engine speed goes to below 1,000 rpm.
- You shift into neutral temporarily when shifting into a higher or lower gear.
- When the transmission is put into N without depressing the clutch pedal.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

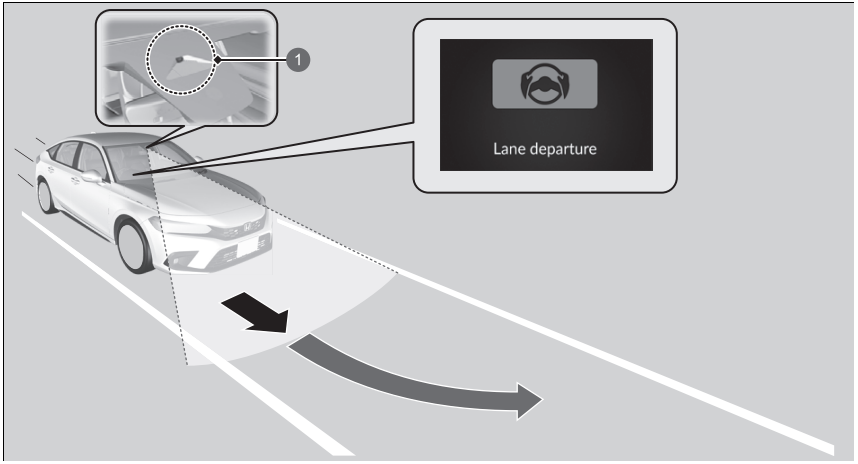
Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile, audible and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

■ Steering input assist

The system applies torque to the steering to keep the vehicle between the left and right lane lines. The applied torque becomes stronger as the vehicle gets closer to either of the lane lines.

■ Tactile, audible and visual alerts

Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, audible and a warning display alert you that the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane.



1 Front wide view camera: Monitors the lane lines

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

Important Safety Reminders

The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not an autonomous driving system and always requires driver attention and control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

The LKAS is convenient when it is used on motorways or a dual carriage way.

Do not place objects on the instrument panel. Objects may reflect on the windscreen and prevent correct detection of the traffic lanes.

The LKAS only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The LKAS may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition.
It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

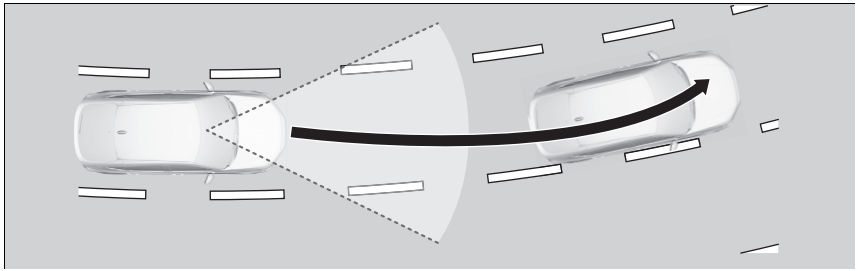
You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.
➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 553

The LKAS may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:
➡ **LKAS Conditions and Limitations** P. 517

When you operate the turn signals to change lanes, the system is suspended, and resumes after the signals are off.
If you make a lane change without operating the turn signals, the LKAS alerts activate, and torque is applied to the steering.

■ Lane Keep Support Function

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane. When the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.



Continued

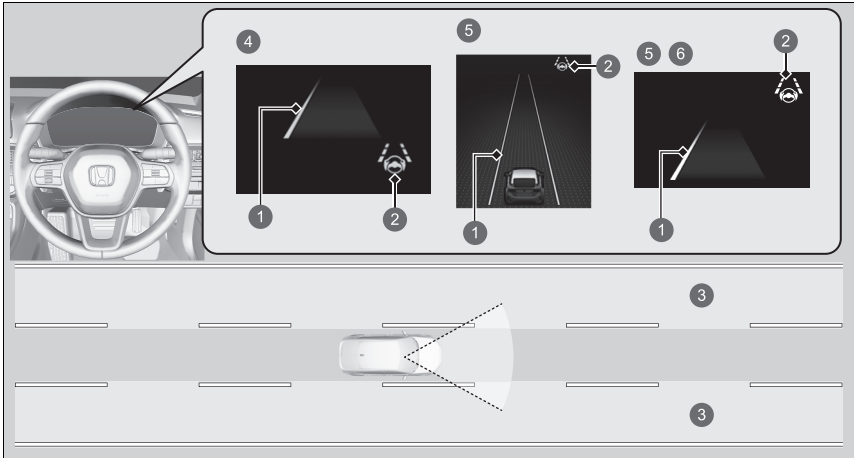
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

When it fails to detect lanes, the system will temporarily be cancelled. When a lane is detected, the system will recover automatically.

The LKAS may not function as designed while driving in frequent stop and go traffic, or on roads with sharp curves.

■ Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration, and audible and visual warnings.



1. Amber line
2. LKAS indicator (Green)
3. Warning Area
4. Models with A-type meter
5. Models with B-type meter
6. When using the **+R** gauge*

* Not available on all models

■ When the System can be Used

The system can be used when the following conditions are met.

- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.
- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h.
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.

When the System can be Used

If the vehicle drifts towards either left or right lane line due to the system applying torque, turn off the LKAS and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Be sure to keep the following below to activate the system properly;

- Always keep the windscreen around the camera clean.
- When cleaning the windscreen, be careful not to apply windscreen cleanser to the camera lens.
- Do not touch the camera lens.
- Do not attach a sticker to the area around the camera.

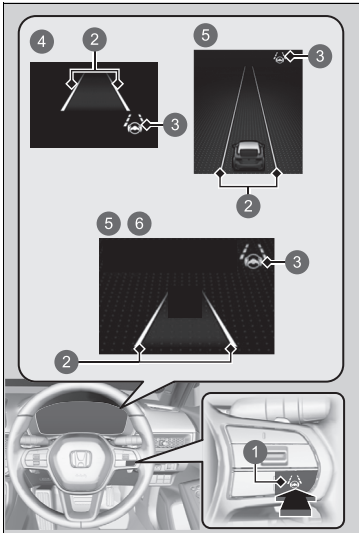
If LKAS button is pressed when the system can be used, LKAS is on without standby.

Manual transmission models

When you completely disable VSA, you cannot use LKAS.

Continued

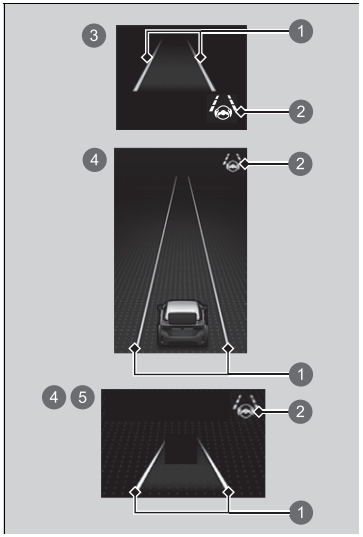
■ How to activate the system



1. LKAS Button
2. White lines
3. Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White)
4. Models with A-type meter
5. Models with B-type meter
6. When using the **+R** gauge*

1. Press the LKAS button.
- ▶ LKAS indicator (white) appears on the gauge.
  The system is standby.
- ▶ If traffic lane lines are detected, white lines appear on the gauge.

* Not available on all models



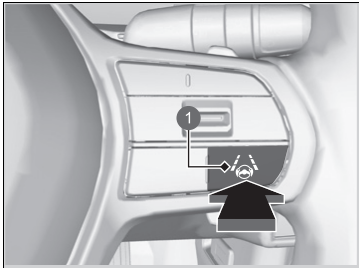
❶ Green lines
❷ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Green)
❸ Models with A-type meter
❹ Models with B-type meter
❺ When using the **+R** gauge*

2. Keep your vehicle near the centre of the lane while driving.
▶ The LKAS indicator changes from white to green, and white lines change to green once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

* Not available on all models

Continued

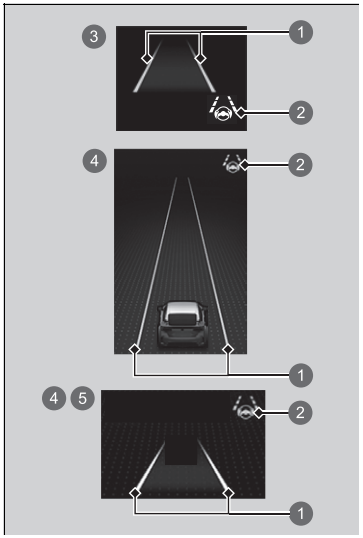
To Cancel



Press the LKAS button.

The LKAS is turned off every time you stop the engine, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

1 LKAS Button



❶ White lines
❷ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (White)
❸ Models with A-type meter
❹ Models with B-type meter
❺ When using the **+R** gauge*

When the LKAS is suspended, green lines on the gauge change to white lines or disappear, and the beeper sounds (if activated).

■ The system operation is suspended if you:

- Decrease the vehicle speed to about 64 km/h or less.
  ▶ Increasing the vehicle speed to about 72 km/h or more resumes the LKAS.
- Depress the brake pedal.
  ▶ The LKAS resumes and starts detecting the lane lines again once you release the brake pedal.
- Your vehicle is driving to the right or the left of the lane.

The system operation is suspended if you:

You can change the setting for the LKAS.
LKAS suspended beep on and off can be selected.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 313

* Not available on all models

Continued

■ The LKAS may be automatically suspended when:

- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is turned quickly.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- Driving through a sharp curve.
- Driving at a speed in excess of approximately 185 km/h.

Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.

■ The LKAS may be automatically cancelled when:

In the following cases, traffic lane lines may disappear on the gauge, the beeper may sound, and the LKAS may be automatically cancelled:

- The camera temperature gets extremely high.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, gets dirty.
- The ABS or VSA system engages.

■ LKAS Conditions and Limitations

The system may not detect lane markings and therefore may not keep the vehicle in the middle of the lane under certain conditions, including the following:

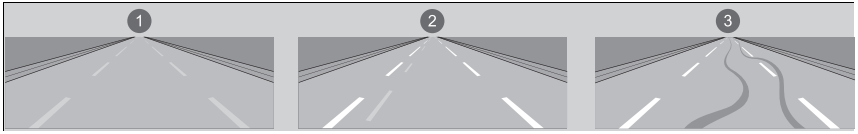
■ Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines or the road surface may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.

Continued

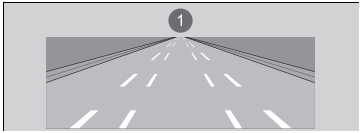
■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.



❶ Faded lines
❷ Duplicate lines
❸ Tyre tracks

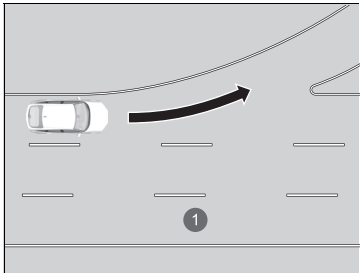
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.



❶ Very wide or narrow traffic lane

- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.

- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- Passing through a junction.



1 Lane void of lines at junction

Continued

■ Vehicle conditions

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tyre chains* are installed.

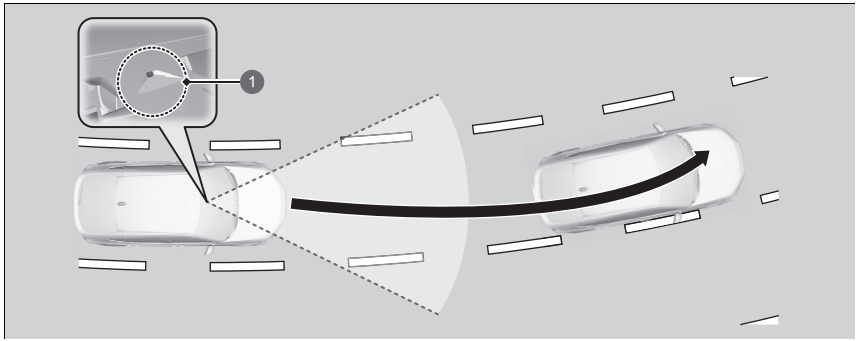
* Not available on all models

Traffic Jam Assist*

The Traffic Jam Assist system uses a front wide view camera mounted to the upper portion of the windscreen to detect and monitor left and right white (or yellow) traffic lane lines.
Based on inputs from the camera, the system can apply steering torque to keep your vehicle in the centre of the detected lane.

■ How Traffic Jam Assist works

When you are in heavy traffic and Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) is active, the Traffic Jam Assist system, upon detecting the traffic lane lines, will apply steering torque to help keep your vehicle in the centre of the lane.



❶ Front Wide View Camera: Detects left and right white (or yellow) traffic lane lines

When you use the turn signal to indicate a lane change, Traffic Jam Assist is temporarily deactivated. It is reactivated once the vehicle is travelling in the centre of the lane and the system has detected the traffic lane lines.
When the driver takes full control of the steering, the steering assist function is temporarily cancelled.

Traffic Jam Assist*

Important Safety Reminders
Traffic Jam Assist is for your convenience only. It is not an autonomous driving system and always requires driver attention and control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

Traffic Jam Assist is convenient when it is used on motorways or a dual carriage way.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.
➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 553

The Traffic Jam Assist only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The Traffic Jam Assist may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition.
It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

Traffic Jam Assist may not work properly under certain conditions:
➡ **Traffic Jam Assist Conditions and Limitations** P. 526

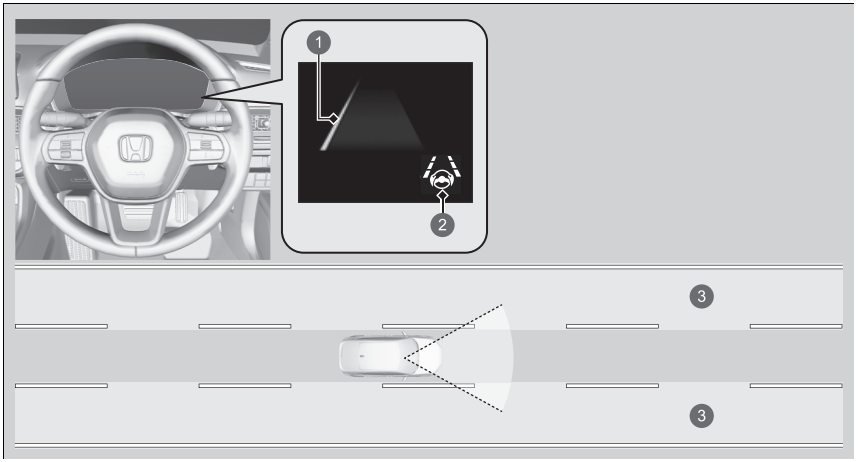
* Not available on all models

Continued

The torque applied to the steering may not be noticeable when the driver has full control of the steering, or when the surface of the road is rough or uneven.

■ Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, Traffic Jam Assist alerts you with an audible alert as well as a warning display.



❶ Amber line
❷ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Green)
❸ Warning Area

■ Traffic Jam Assist Activation

Traffic Jam Assist is activated when all of the following conditions exist:
- LKAS is activated.
- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.
- The vehicle is travelling between about 0 and 72 km/h.
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The driver is gripping the steering wheel.
- The shift position is in D.

Do not use Traffic Jam Assist in any of the following situations:
- You are travelling on a road with sharp curves.
  ▶ The system may not allow your vehicle to respond in a manner best suited for the road conditions.
- You are entering a toll booth, interchange, service area, or parking area.
- You are driving in adverse weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- The surface of the road is slippery; for example, it is icy or covered with snow.
  ▶ The tyres may slip, causing you to lose control of the vehicle.

Traffic Jam Assist Activation

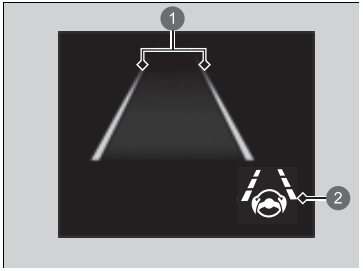
Refer to the following page for proper handling of the LKAS:
➔ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 508

Refer to the following page for steering buttons and displays:
➔ **Operation Switches for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*/Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*/ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)/Traffic Jam Assist*** P. 457

* Not available on all models

Continued

How Traffic Jam Assist Works



1 Green Lines
2 LKAS Indicator (Green)

Keep your vehicle near the centre of the lane while driving.

▶ The LKAS indicator changes from white to green, and white lines change to green once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

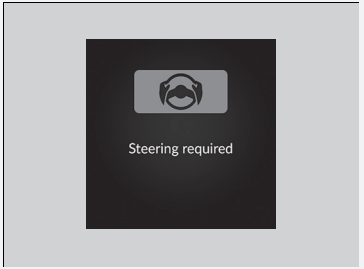
How Traffic Jam Assist Works

If your vehicle veers too far to the right or the left of the white (or yellow) traffic lane lines while Traffic Jam Assist is active, deactivate Traffic Jam Assist and have your vehicle inspected by an authorized Honda dealer.

In some cases the system cannot properly detect the traffic lane lines and, as a result, will not provide steering assistance.

➡ **Traffic Jam Assist Conditions and Limitations** P. 526

If the driver takes their hands off the steering wheel or does not adequately maintain control of steering, the warning below will appear.



If the driver does not grip the steering wheel after the warning above has repeatedly appeared, a warning buzzer will sound and Traffic Jam Assist will be cancelled.

■ Cancelling Traffic Jam Assist

Press the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) button to cancel Traffic Jam Assist.

■ Traffic Jam Assist may be automatically suspended when:

The system is automatically temporarily cancelled under the following circumstances.

- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is turned sharply.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- You are driving through a sharp curve.
- The brake pedal is depressed.

Once these conditions no longer exist, Traffic Jam Assist automatically resumes.

■ Traffic Jam Assist may be automatically cancelled when:

The traffic lane lines will disappear from the screen, the beeper may sound, and Traffic Jam Assist will be cancelled under the following circumstances:

- The temperature of the camera is too high.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, is dirty.

Traffic Jam Assist may be automatically suspended when:

You are travelling over 72 km/h.
▶When the speed of the vehicle reaches 72 km/h, Traffic Jam Assist is deactivated and LKAS is activated instead. Once the speed of the vehicle drops to under 64 km/h, Traffic Jam Assist is reactivated.

Continued

Traffic Jam Assist Conditions and Limitations

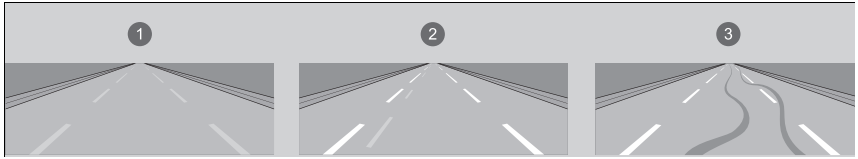
The system may not detect lane markings and therefore may not keep the vehicle in the middle of the lane under certain conditions, including the following:

Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines or the road surface may not be illuminated).
- When the lane lines or road surface are not visible, such as when the distance to the vehicle in front of you is extremely short or when at a junction.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.

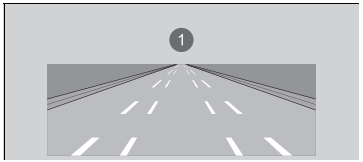
■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.



❶ Faded lines
❷ Duplicate lines
❸ Tyre tracks

- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.

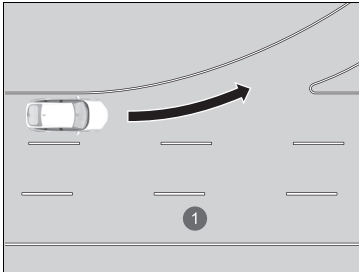


❶ Very wide or narrow traffic lane

- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.

Continued

- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- There is a film of water or puddles on the road surface.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- Passing through a junction.



1 Lane void of lines at junction

■ **Vehicle conditions**

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Tyre chains are installed.

Road Departure Mitigation System

Australian and New Zealand models

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, or approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel border) or a detected oncoming vehicle.

Except Australian and New Zealand models

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

Road Departure Mitigation System

Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, the Road Departure Mitigation system has limitations.
Overreliance on the Road Departure Mitigation system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

Australian and New Zealand models

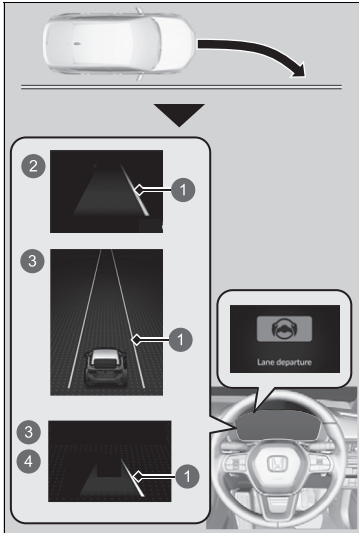
The Road Departure Mitigation system alerts you when the system detects that you are approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel border), an oncoming vehicle, or drifting into another lane without using a turn signal.
The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect all lane markings or every instance of lane drift.
The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect that you are approaching the outer edge of the pavement (bordered by grass or gravel) or an oncoming vehicle.
The Road Departure Mitigation system may not be able to assist you depending on weather, speed or road conditions.

Except Australian and New Zealand models

The Road Departure Mitigation system only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect all lane markings or lane or roadway departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

How the System Works

Australian and New Zealand models



❶ Amber line
❷ Models with A-type meter
❸ Models with B-type meter
❹ When using the **+R** gauge*

The front camera behind the rearview mirror monitors left and right lane markings in white or yellow, the outer edge of the pavement (bordered by grass or gravel) or a detected oncoming vehicles.
If your vehicle approaches any detected lane markings, the outer edge of the pavement (bordered by grass or gravel) or a detected oncoming vehicles when the turn signals have not been engaged, the system activates.

▶ If the system cannot detect lane markings (in white or yellow), no assistance will be provided to avoid approaching oncoming vehicles. In addition to a visual alert, the system assists with steering and alerts you with rapid steering wheel vibrations to help you remain within the detected lane.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 313

As a visual alert, the **Lane departure** message appears on the driver information interface.

Road Departure Mitigation System

The Road Departure Mitigation system is not activated for about 15 seconds after the engine starts.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.
➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 553

The Road Departure Mitigation system may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:
➡ **Road Departure Mitigation system Conditions and Limitations** P. 539

Manual transmission models

The Road Departure Mitigation system does not function while VSA is completely disabled.

There are times when you may not notice the Road Departure Mitigation system functions due to your operation of the vehicle, or road surface conditions.

* Not available on all models

Continued

The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings or approaching the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel border) or an oncoming vehicle.

Road Departure Mitigation System

Australian and New Zealand models

You can change the settings for the Road Departure Mitigation system.
If LKAS is off, the message below may appear if the system has determined that there is a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings, the outer edge of the pavement (into a grass or gravel border) or oncoming vehicle.

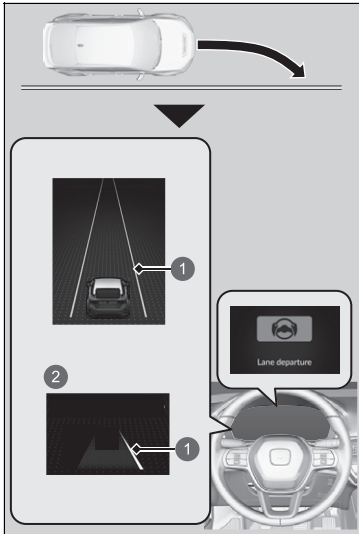
➡ **Customized Features** P. 313

Except Australian and New Zealand models

You can change the settings for the Road Departure Mitigation system.
If LKAS is off, the message below may appear if the system has determined that there is a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 313

Except Australian and New Zealand models



The front camera located behind the rearview mirror monitors left and right lane markings (in white or yellow). If your vehicle is getting too close to detected lane markings without a turn signal activated, the system, in addition to a visual alert, applies steering torque and alerts you with rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, to help you remain within the detected lane.

➡ **Customized Features** P. 313

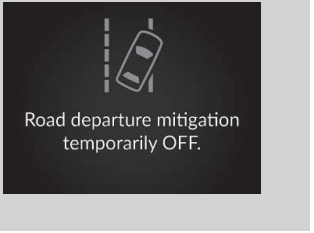
As a visual alert, the **Lane departure** message appears on the driver information interface.

1. Amber line
2. When using the **+R** gauge

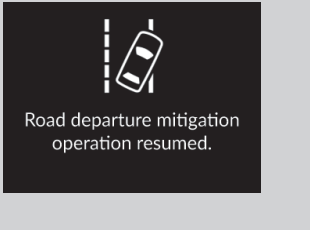
The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings.

Continued

Models with A-type meter

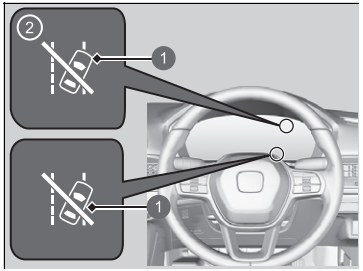


If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you. After that, the Road Departure Mitigation steering assist is temporarily stopped, and the system will only alert you with the warning sound.



After a few minutes, the message to the left is displayed and the Road Departure Mitigation system is fully restored.

Models with B-type meter



❶ Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator
❷ When using the **+R** gauge

If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you. After that, Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator comes on, the Road Departure Mitigation steering assist is temporarily stopped, and the system will only alert you with the warning sound.

After a few minutes, the Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF indicator goes off and the Road Departure Mitigation system is fully restored.

Continued

How the System Activates

The system activates when all of the following conditions are met:

- The lane markings is white (yellow).
  The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h.

  Australian and New Zealand models

  ▶ When oncoming vehicles are running
  The vehicle is travelling between about 30 and 180 km/h.

Australian and New Zealand models

- The outer edge of the pavement is grass or gravel border.
  The vehicle is travelling between about 30 and 180 km/h.

All models

- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The system makes a determination that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking, or steering.

How the System Activates

The Road Departure Mitigation system may automatically shut off and the safety support indicator (amber) and road departure mitigation indicator (amber)* come and stay on.

➡ **Indicators** P. 114

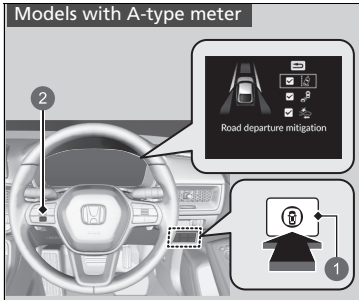
The Road Departure Mitigation system function can be impacted when the vehicle is:

- Driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane.
- Driven in a narrow lane.

* Not available on all models

■ Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off

Models with A-type meter



❶ Safety Support Switch
❷ Left Selector Wheel

When you turn the Road Departure Mitigation system on and off, do the following.

1. Press the safety support switch.

Models with A-type meter

2. Roll the left selector wheel to the symbol and push it.

Models with B-type meter

2. Roll the right selector wheel to the symbol and push it.

▶ A message appears on the driver information interface when the system turns on or off.

▶ A tick mark appears in the box and the colour of the symbol changes to green when the system is on. The tick mark disappears and the colour of the symbol changes to grey when the system is off.

Except Australian, New Zealand models

The Road Departure Mitigation system is in the previously selected on (ticked) or off (unticked) setting each time you start the engine.

*1: Hong Kong, Macanese and Philippine models
*2: Except Hong Kong, Macanese and Philippine models

Road Departure Mitigation system On and Off

You can also select the safety support content from the driver information interface.

➡ **Driver Information Interface (A-type Meter)** P. 140
➡ **Driver Information Interface Right Side Area (B-type-Meter)** P. 160

Except Australian and New Zealand models

When you have selected **Warning Only***1/**Warning only***2 from the customized options using the audio/information screen, the system does not operate the steering wheel.

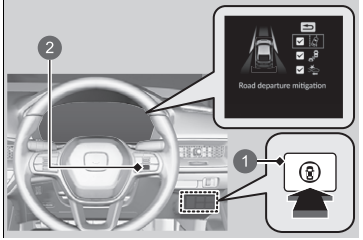
➡ **Customized Features** P. 313

The adaptive cruise control (ACC) with low speed follow*, adaptive cruise control (ACC)*, safety support, vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, and vehicle stability assist (VSA) **OFF*** indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the gauge when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Models with B-type meter



❶ Safety Support Switch
❷ Right Selector Wheel

Australian, New Zealand models

The Road Departure Mitigation system is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you start the engine.

■ Road Departure Mitigation system Conditions and Limitations

Australian and New Zealand models

The system may not properly detect lane markings (in white or yellow), the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel border) or an oncoming vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

Except Australian and New Zealand models

The system may not properly detect lane markings and the position of your vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

■ Environmental conditions

- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Shadows of adjacent objects (trees, buildings, guard rails, vehicles, etc.) are parallel to white (or yellow) lines.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, lane lines, the road surface, or oncoming vehicles may not be illuminated).
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short, and lane lines and the road surface are not visible.

Australian and New Zealand models

- The outer edge of the road is bordered by objects, materials, etc. other than grass or gravel.

Continued

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines, such as at an intersection or crosswalk.
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- Part of the lane markings are hidden by an object, such as a vehicle.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white (or yellow) lines.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- Driving on roads with double lane lines.
- Driving on snowy or slippery roads.
- Passing through a junction.
- The pavement is only partially visible due to snow or puddles on the road.
- Driving on unpaved or rutted roads.
- White (or yellow) lines are not recognised correctly due to road conditions such as curves, twists, or hills.

■ Vehicle conditions

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- When the driver operates the brake pedal and steering wheel.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- Tyre chains* are installed.
- The suspension has been modified.

Australian and New Zealand models

■ Examples of limitations on detection due to the condition of oncoming vehicles

- The oncoming vehicle or vehicle ahead of you is sideways.
- The oncoming vehicle jumps out in front of you.
- When the oncoming vehicle blends in with the background, preventing the system from recognising it.
- The headlights of an oncoming vehicle are lit on one side or not lit on either side in a dark place.
- The distance between your vehicle and the oncoming vehicle is too short.
- Part of the oncoming vehicle is not visible due to the vehicle ahead of you.
- There are multiple oncoming lanes or turning lanes.
- The vehicle in the adjacent lane is parked or moving at an extremely slow speed.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Australian and New Zealand models

■ Examples of other limitations on detection or system operation

- When the oncoming vehicle is specially-shaped.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify the shape of the oncoming vehicle.

Australian and New Zealand models

■ With Little Chance of a Collision

The Road Departure Mitigation system may activate in the below conditions.

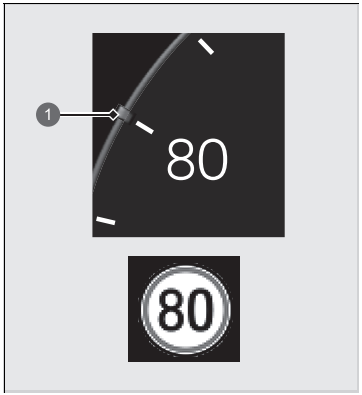
- When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where an oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.

Traffic Sign Recognition System*

Reminds you of road sign information, such as the current speed limit, your vehicle has just passed through, showing it on the gauge.

■ How the System Works

When the front wide view camera located behind the rearview mirror captures traffic signs while driving, the system displays the ones that are recognised as designated for your vehicle. The sign icon will be displayed until the vehicle reaches a predetermined time and distance.



❶ Speed Limit Sign

The sign icon also may switch to another one, or disappear when:
- Other designated limit is detected.
- You make a turn with a turn signal at an intersection.

Traffic Sign Recognition System*

Not all signs may be displayed, but any signs posted on roadsides should not be ignored. The system does not work on the designated traffic signs of all the countries you travel, nor in all situations.
Do not rely too much on the system. Always drive at speeds appropriate for the road conditions.

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windscreen that could obstruct the front wide view camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.
Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windscreen within the front wide view camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windscreen with a genuine Honda replacement windscreen. Making even minor repairs within the front wide view camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windscreen may also cause the system to operate abnormally. After replacing the windscreen, have a dealer recalibrate the front wide view camera.
Proper calibration of the front wide view camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

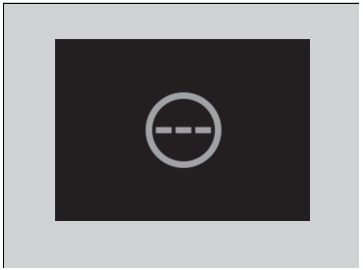
The Traffic Sign Recognition System is not activated for about 15 seconds after the power system is turned on.

You can turn the traffic sign recognition system on and off.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 313

* Not available on all models

Continued

If the system does not detect any traffic signs while you are driving, the (white) may appear.



Traffic Sign Recognition System*

To help reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the front wide view camera's sensing system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing.
Covering the front wide view camera can concentrate heat on it.

You can read about handling information for the front wide view camera equipped with this system.
➡ **Front Wide View Camera** P. 553

If your vehicle exceeds the detected speed limit, an icon representing the speed limit sign for the current area will blink in the display.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 313

The system's ability to accurately notify the driver of the speed limit is dependent on certain conditions such as the units displayed on the traffic sign as well as the speed and direction of travel of the vehicle. In some cases, the system may display false warnings or other inaccurate information.
➡ **Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations** P. 545

* Not available on all models

Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations

The Traffic Sign Recognition system may incorrectly recognise, be slow to identify, or fail to recognise the traffic sign in the following cases.

Environmental conditions

- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving at night, in dark areas such as long tunnels.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.

Roadway conditions

- Your vehicle is strongly shaken on uneven road surfaces.

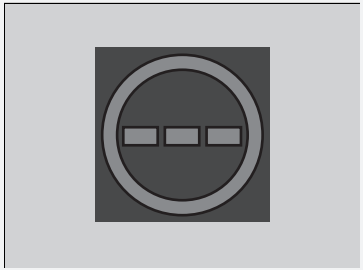
Vehicle conditions

- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.
- The front of the front wide view camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The suspension has been modified.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.

Continued

Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations

When the Traffic Sign Recognition System malfunctions, (amber) appears on the gauge. If this message does not disappear, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



■ The position or the condition of the traffic sign

- The sign is in a place that makes it hard to find.
- The sign is located far away from your vehicle.
- The sign is located where it is hard for headlight beams to reach.
- The sign is on a corner or bend in the road.
- The sign is faded or bent.
- The sign is rotated or damaged signs.
- The sign is covered with mud, snow, or frost.
- Part of the sign is hidden by the trees, or is in the shadow of a vehicle or other object.
- Light (such as a streetlight) is reflected on the surface of the sign, or it is hidden in shadow.
- The sign is too bright or too dark (electric signs).
- Small signs (auxiliary signs, etc.).

■ Other conditions

- When you are driving at a high speed.

The Traffic Sign Recognition System may not operate correctly, such as displaying signs that do not adhere to the actual regulations for the roadway or do not exist at all in the following cases:

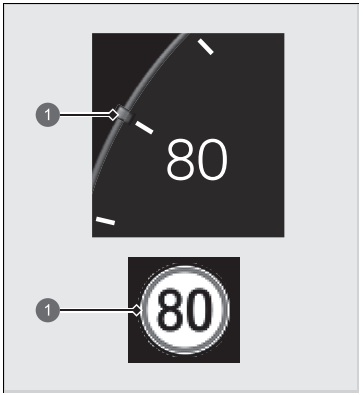
▶ A speed limit sign may display at a higher or lower speed than the actual speed limit.

- There is a supplementary sign with further information such as weather, time, vehicle type, etc.
- Figures on the sign are hard to read (electric sign, numbers on the signs are blurred, etc.).
- The sign is in the vicinity of the lane you are driving in, even though it is not for the lane, such as a speed limit sign situated at the junction between the side road and the main road.
- There are things that look similar in colour or shape to recognised objects (similar sign, electric sign, signboard, structure, etc.).

Continued

Signs Displayed on the Gauge

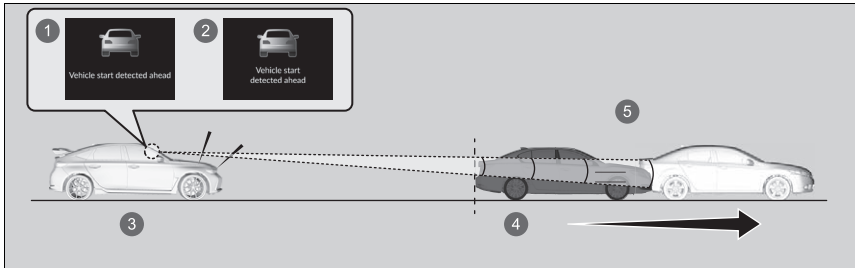
The speed limit sign icon is displayed on the gauge.



1 Speed Limit Sign

Lead Car Departure Notification System*

Informs you with visual and audible alerts when your vehicle is stopped even though the vehicle ahead of you has started moving.



1. Philippine models
2. Except Philippine models
3. When stopped
4. Vehicle ahead is stopped
5. Vehicle ahead starts moving

How the system works

The system detects a stopped vehicle in front of you, on the condition that the vehicles are within 10 m of each other and both vehicles have been stopped for a period of time. When the detected vehicle moves but yours does not, the system will activate.

When the shift position is in any gear other than R

The system will work when the brake pedal is depressed, the parking brake is in operation, the brake hold function of the automatic brake hold system is in operation.

Lead Car Departure Notification System*

WARNING

Lead Car Departure Notification System is an supplemental system that provides driving assistance. It is not a system that informs you if it is safe to start driving.

Improper use of this system may lead to a collision.

Always visually confirm the safety of your surroundings before driving the vehicle and maintain a safe following-interval when driving.

You can read about handling information for the camera located behind the rearview mirror.
Front Wide View Camera P. 553

Like other assistance systems, this system may not function properly depending on weather, environmental conditions, and so on.

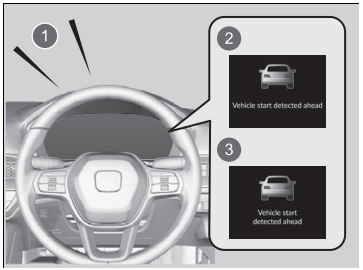
* Not available on all models

Continued

You can choose from two system operation timing modes, **Normal** and **Early**.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 313

In **Normal** mode, the system operates when the vehicle ahead of you has moved approximately 3 m from where it stopped.
In **Early** mode, the system operates as soon as movement has been detected.

■ When the System Activates



The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when the system is activated.

❶ Audible Alert
❷ Philippine models
❸ Except Philippine models

Lead Car Departure Notification System*

You can turn off the Lead Car Departure Notification System.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 313

The Lead Car Departure Notification System will not activate while the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Indicator (amber) is on.
➡ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*** P. 490

* Not available on all models

■ Lead Car Departure Notification System Conditions and Limitations

In the following conditions, the system may or may not activate regardless of whether the vehicle ahead of you starts to move.

■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Water is sprayed by or snow blown from a vehicle ahead.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as the entrance or exit of a tunnel or the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Strong light is reflected onto vehicles or road surfaces.
- Driving at night or in a dark place such as a tunnel (due to low-light conditions, the whole vehicle may not be illuminated).
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).

■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on curvy, winding, undulating, or sloping roads or immediately after turning to the left or right.

■ Vehicle conditions

- The vehicle is tilted due to heavy luggage in the luggage area or rear seats.
- The vehicle is only stopped for a short time.
- The front of the camera is covered by dirt, fog, rain, mud, wet snow, seals, accessories, stickers, or film on the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark place (e.g., a tunnel) with the headlights off.
- There is residue on the windscreen from the windscreen wipers.
- When lighting is weak due to dirt covering the headlight lenses, or there is poor visibility in a dark place due to the headlights being improperly adjusted.

Continued

- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (incorrect sizes, varied sizes or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre*, etc.).
- The suspension has been modified.

■ Examples of conditions under which the camera may not correctly detect the vehicle ahead of you

- The vehicle ahead of you is only stopped for a short time.
- The space between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- The vehicle ahead of you is moving too slowly.
- The vehicle ahead of you suddenly turns around or to the left or right.
- The vehicle ahead of you blends into the scenery and can't be detected.
- The vehicle ahead of you has only one or neither of their taillights on.

■ Examples of other limitations on detection

- There is a pedestrian, bicycle, motorcycle, or other specially-shaped vehicle in front of you.
- Another vehicle, pedestrian, or bicycle comes between your vehicle and the vehicle in front of you.
- The vehicle ahead of you is not directly in front of you.

■ Examples of other limitations on system operation

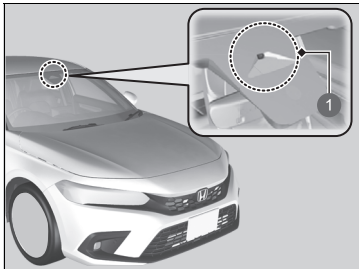
- The camera cannot correctly detect the shape of the vehicle ahead of you.
- The vehicle ahead of you has very high ground clearance.
- The vehicle ahead of you, such as a lorry without a trailer, has a rear that is smaller than the front.

* Not available on all models

Front Wide View Camera

The camera, used in systems such as Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*, Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), Traffic Jam Assist*, Road Departure Mitigation System, Traffic Sign Recognition System*, and Lead Car Departure Notification System* is designed to detect an object that triggers any of the systems to operate its functions.

■ Camera Location and Handling Tips



❶ Front Wide View Camera

This camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

To help to reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

Front Wide View Camera

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windscreen, the bonnet, or the front grille that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.
Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windscreen within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windscreen with a genuine Honda replacement windscreen. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an after market replacement windscreen may also cause the system to operate abnormally.
After replacing the windscreen, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windscreen and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.

* Not available on all models

Continued

Front Wide View Camera

If the **Some driver assist systems cannot operate: Camera temperature too high** message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use demister mode with the air flow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the **Some driver assist systems cannot operate: Clean front windshield or poor viewing condition.**[*1]/ **Some driver assist system cannot operate: Clean front windscreen or poor viewing condition.**[*2] message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and make sure the windscreen is clean.

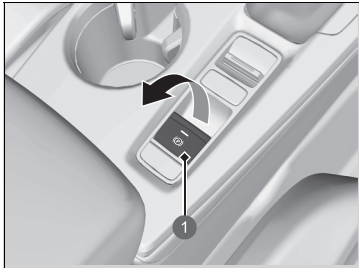
Clean the windscreen if it is dirty. If the message does not disappear after driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

*1: Philippine models
*2: Except Philippine models

Brake System

Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parked. When the parking brake is applied, you can manually or automatically release it.



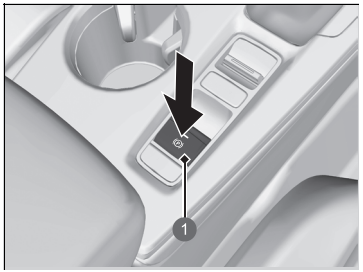
❶ Electric Parking Brake Switch

To apply

The electric parking brake can be applied any time the vehicle has battery, no matter which position the power mode is in.

Pull the electric parking brake switch up gently and securely.

▶ The indicator in the switch comes on.
▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) comes on.



❶ Electric Parking Brake Switch

To release

The power mode must be in ON in order to release the electric parking brake.

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the electric parking brake switch.
▶ The indicator in the switch goes off.
▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

Manually releasing the parking brake using the switch helps your vehicle to start slowly and smoothly when facing downhill on steep hills.

Continued

Parking Brake

You may hear the electric parking brake system motor operating from the rear wheel area when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

The brake pedal may slightly move due to the electric parking brake system operation when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

You cannot apply or release the parking brake if the battery goes dead.
If the Battery Is Dead P. 695

If you pull up and hold the electric parking brake switch while driving, the brakes on all four wheels are applied by the VSA system until the vehicle comes to a stop. The electric parking brake then applies, and the switch should be released.

In the following situations, the parking brake automatically operates.
- When the vehicle stops with the automatic brake hold system activated for more than 10 minutes.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped and brake hold is applied.
- When there is a problem with the Brake Hold System while brake hold is applied.

Continuously variable transmission models

■ Automatic parking brake feature operation

If the automatic parking brake feature has been activated:

- The parking brake is applied automatically when you set the power mode to OFF.
- To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

➡ **Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature** P. 559

Parking Brake

Models with Continuously variable transmission models

- When the vehicle stops more than 10 minutes while ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped automatically by ACC with Low Speed Follow.
- When the engine is turned off, except by Auto Idle Stop system, while ACC with Low Speed Follow is activated.
- When the engine is turned off, except by Auto Idle Stop system, while brake hold system is applied.

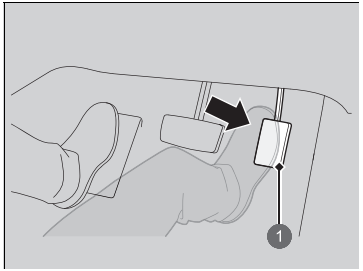
Models without Continuously variable transmission models

- When the engine is turned off while brake hold is applied.

■ To release automatically

Continuously variable transmission models

Depressing the accelerator pedal releases the parking brake.
Use the accelerator pedal to release the brake when you are starting the vehicle facing uphill, or in a traffic jam.



Gently depress the accelerator pedal. When on a hill, it may require more accelerator input to release.

▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off.

❶ Accelerator Pedal

You can release the parking brake automatically when:
- You are wearing the driver's seat belt.
- The engine is running.
- The transmission is not in P or N.

Manual transmission models

Depress the accelerator pedal while releasing the clutch pedal releases the parking brake.
Use the accelerator pedal to release the parking brake when you are starting the vehicle facing uphill, or in a traffic jam.

To release automatically

If the parking brake cannot be released automatically, release it manually.

When the vehicle is travelling uphill, the accelerator pedal may need to be pressed farther to automatically release the electric parking brake.

The parking brake cannot be released automatically while the following indicators are on:
- Malfunction indicator lamp
- Transmission system indicator*

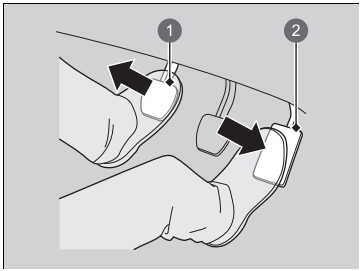
The parking brake may not be released automatically while the following indicators are on:
- Parking brake and brake system indicator (amber)
- VSA system indicator
- **ABS** indicator
- Supplemental restraint system indicator

Manual transmission models

The clutch pedal is fully depressed before gently depress the accelerator pedal and release the clutch pedal.

* Not available on all models

Continued



❶ Clutch Pedal
❷ Accelerator Pedal

Gently depress the accelerator pedal and release the clutch pedal.

▶ The parking brake indicator goes off.

The parking brake automatically releases as you depress the accelerator pedal when:

- You are wearing the driver's seat belt.
- The engine is running.
- The transmission is not in N.

Continuously variable transmission models

■ Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

With the power mode in ON, carry out the following steps to either activate or deactivate the automatic parking brake feature.

1. Put the transmission into P.

2. Without depressing the brake pedal, pull up the electric parking brake switch.
- ▶ Check that the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) has come on.

3. Pull up and hold the parking brake switch. When you hear a beeping sound, release the switch and within 3 seconds pull up and hold the switch again.

4. When you hear a sound indicating that the procedure is completed, release the switch.
- ▶ Two beeps indicates that the feature has been activated.
- ▶ One beep indicates that the feature has been deactivated.
- ▶ When you have completed activating the feature, the parking brake will remain applied after you turn off the engine.
- ▶ To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

If you need to temporarily deactivate the feature while having your vehicle towed, you can follow the procedure explained below.

1. Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.

2. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF and then within two seconds push down the electric parking brake switch.
- ▶ Activation and deactivation settings for the feature will not be affected.
- ▶ Before temporarily deactivating the feature, make sure to first turn off both Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow and the automatic brake hold system.
- ▶ To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator (red) is on.

Continued

Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

In cold climates, the parking brake may freeze in place if applied.

When parking the vehicle, chock the wheels and make sure the automatic parking brake feature is deactivated.

Also, when putting your vehicle through a conveyor-type car wash or when having your vehicle towed, deactivate the automatic parking brake feature and leave the parking brake released.

■ Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. A vacuum power assist helps reduce the effort needed on the brake pedal. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you to retain steering control when braking very hard.

➡ **Brake Assist System** P. 568
➡ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 567

Manual transmission models

■ Brake squeal

To satisfy the performance under a wide range of driving conditions, a high performance braking system is equipped on your vehicle. You may hear the brake squeal under certain conditions, such as vehicle speed, deceleration, humidity, and so on. This is not a malfunction.

Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, the brake pads need to be replaced. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Constantly using the brake pedal while going down a long hill builds up heat, which reduces the brake effectiveness. Apply engine braking by taking your foot off the accelerator pedal and downshifting to a lower gear/speed position. With manual transmission use a lower gear for greater engine braking.

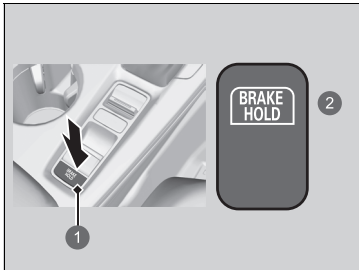
Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

■ Automatic Brake Hold

Continuously variable transmission models

Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until the accelerator pedal is pressed. You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.

■ Turning on the system



❶ Automatic Brake Hold Button
❷ Comes On

Fasten your seat belt properly, then start the engine. Press the automatic brake hold button.

▶ The automatic brake hold system indicator comes on. The system is turned on.

Continued

Automatic Brake Hold

⚠WARNING

Activating the automatic brake hold system on steep hills or slippery roads may still allow the vehicle to move if you remove your foot from the brake pedal.

If a vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Never activate the automatic brake hold system or rely on it to keep a vehicle from moving when stopped on a steep hill or slippery roads.

Continuously variable transmission models

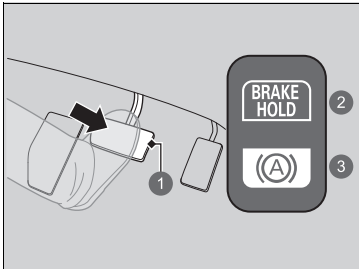
⚠WARNING

Using the automatic brake hold system to park the vehicle may result in the vehicle unexpectedly moving.

If a vehicle moves unexpectedly, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never leave the vehicle when braking is temporarily kept by automatic brake hold and always park the vehicle by putting the transmission in P and applying the parking brake.

■ Activating the system



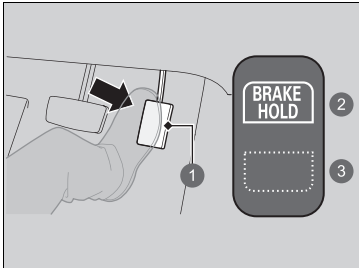
❶ Brake Pedal
❷ On
❸ Comes On

Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop. The transmission must not be in P or R.

▶ The automatic brake hold indicator comes on. Braking is kept for up to 10 minutes.

▶ Release the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

■ Cancelling the system



❶ Accelerator Pedal
❷ On
❸ Goes Off

Depress the accelerator pedal while the transmission is in a position other than P or N. The system is cancelled and the vehicle starts to move.

▶ The automatic brake hold indicator goes off. The system continues to be on.

Automatic Brake Hold

⚠WARNING

When using the automatic brake hold, keep your foot on the brake pedal until the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

If the vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Release your foot from the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

While the system is activated, you can turn off the engine or park the vehicle through the same procedure as you normally do.

➡ **When Stopped** P. 570

Whether the system is on, or the system is activated, the automatic brake hold turns off once the engine is off.

Manual transmission models

The system turns off if the engine stalls while automatic brake hold is active or the system is on.

You may hear an operating noise if the vehicle moves while the automatic brake hold system is in operation.

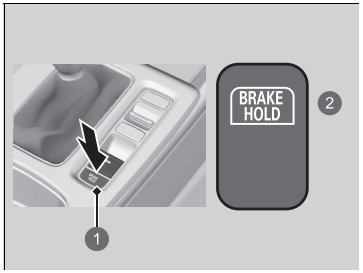
Manual transmission models

Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until you shift into one of the gears other than N and:

- Release the clutch pedal on a level road or when facing downhill.
- Release the clutch pedal and depress the accelerator pedal when facing uphill.

You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.

■ Turning on the system



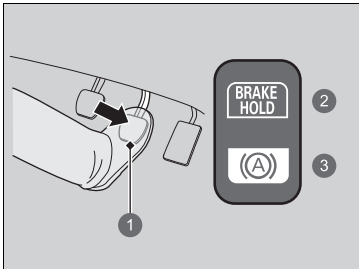
Fasten your seat belt properly, then start the engine. Press the automatic brake hold button.

▶ The automatic brake hold system indicator comes on. The system is turned on.

❶ Automatic Brake Hold Button
❷ Comes On

Continued

■ Activating the system



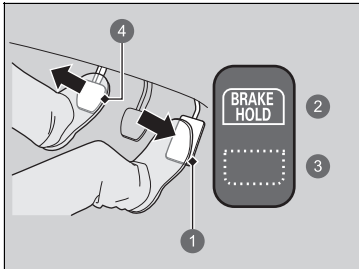
❶ Brake Pedal
❷ On
❸ Comes On

Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop.

▶ The automatic brake hold indicator comes on. Braking is kept for up to 10 minutes.

▶ Release the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

■ Canceling the system



❶ Accelerator Pedal
❷ On
❸ Goes Off
❹ Clutch Pedal

Shift into one of the gears other than N and:

▶ Release the clutch pedal on a level road or when facing downhill.

▶ Release the clutch pedal and depress the accelerator pedal when facing uphill.
The system is canceled and the vehicle starts to move.

▶ The automatic brake hold indicator goes off.
The system continues to be on.

■ The system automatically cancels when:

- You engage the parking brake.

Continuously variable transmission models

- You depress the brake pedal and put the transmission into P or R.

■ The system automatically cancels and the parking brake is applied when:

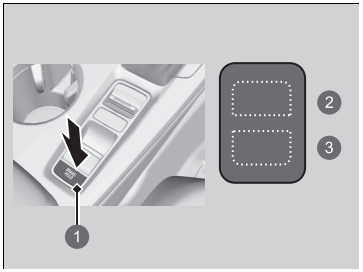
- Braking is kept for more than 10 minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The engine is turned off.
- There is a problem with automatic brake hold system.

Manual transmission models

- The engine stalls.

Continued

■ Turning off the automatic brake hold system



❶ Automatic Brake Hold Button
❷ Goes Off
❸ Goes Off

Only the automatic brake hold system indicator comes on:

- Press the automatic brake hold button.
  ▶ The automatic brake hold system indicator goes off.

When the automatic brake hold indicator comes on at the same time:

- Press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.
  ▶ The automatic brake hold system indicator and the automatic brake hold indicator go off.

Turning off the automatic brake hold system

Make sure to turn off the automatic brake hold system before using an automated car wash.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

■ ABS

Helps to prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you to retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you can.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as "stomp and steer."

■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Depress the brake pedal and keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

ABS may activate when you depress the brake pedal when driving on:
- Wet or snow covered roads.
- Roads paved with stone.
- Roads with uneven surfaces, such as potholes, cracks, manholes, etc.

When the vehicle speed goes under 10 km/h, the ABS stops.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

NOTICE
The ABS may not function correctly if you use a tyre of the incorrect size or type.

If the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system.
While normal braking will not be affected, there is a possibility that the ABS will not be operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS is not designed for the purpose of reducing the time or distance it takes for a vehicle to stop: It is designed to limit brake lockup which can lead to skidding and loss of steering control.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more distance to stop than a vehicle without the ABS:
- You are driving on rough or uneven road surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- The tyres are equipped with tyre chains*.

The following may be observed with the ABS system:
- Motor sounds coming from the engine compartment when the brakes are applied, or when system checks are being performed after the engine has been started and while the vehicle accelerates.
- Brake pedal and/or the vehicle body vibration when ABS activates.

These vibrations and sounds are normal to ABS systems and are no cause for concern.

* Not available on all models

Brake Assist System

Is designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

■ Brake assist system operation

Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

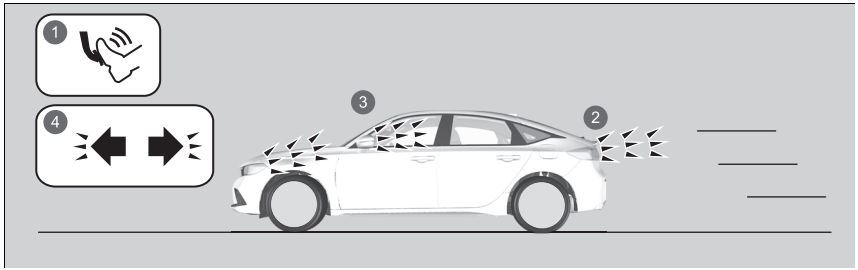
When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

Continuously variable transmission models

Emergency Stop Signal

Activates when you brake hard while driving at 60 km/h or above to alert drivers behind you about sudden braking by rapidly flashing hazard warning lights. This may help to alert drivers behind you to take appropriate means to avoid a possible collision with your vehicle.

■ When the system activates:



❶ Hard Braking
❷ Brake Lights Come On
❸ Hazard Warning Lights Flash
❹ Hazard Warning Indicators Blink

The hazard warning lights stop flashing when:
- You release the brake pedal.
- The ABS is deactivated.
- Your vehicle's decelerating speed becomes moderate.
- You press the hazard warning button.

Emergency Stop Signal

The emergency stop signal is not a system that can prevent a possible rear-end collision caused by your hard braking. It flashes the hazard warning lights at the time you are braking hard. It is always recommended to avoid hard braking unless it is absolutely necessary.

The emergency stop signal does not activate with the hazard warning button pressed in.

If the ABS stops working for a certain period during braking, the emergency stop signal may not activate at all.

When Stopped

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
2. With the brake pedal depressed, pull up the electric parking brake switch slowly, but fully.

Continuously variable transmission models

3. Change the shift position to P.
4. Turn off the engine.
   ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off in about 30 seconds.

Manual transmission models

3. Move the shift lever to N.
4. Turn off the engine and move the shift lever to R or 1.
   ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator (red) goes off in about 30 seconds.

Always set the parking brake, in particular if you are parked on an incline.

Parking Your Vehicle

Continuously variable transmission models

⚠WARNING

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that P is shown on the shift position indicator.

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber.
Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

When Stopped

Continuously variable transmission models

NOTICE

The following can damage the transmission:
- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Holding the vehicle in place when facing uphill by depressing the accelerator pedal.
- Moving the shift lever into P before the vehicle stops completely.

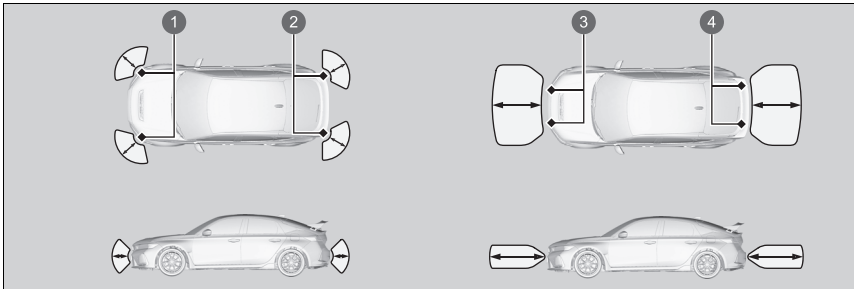
When Stopped

In extremely cold temperatures, the parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

Parking Sensor System*

The corner and centre sensors monitor obstacles around your vehicle, and the beeper, driver information interface and audio/information screen let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

■ The sensor location and range



❶ Front Corner Sensors
❷ Rear Corner Sensors
❸ Front Centre Sensors
❹ Rear Centre Sensors

Parking Sensor System*

Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The system may not work properly when:
- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud, or dirt.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- There is something nearby that emits ultrasonic waves or high frequency sounds.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Any accessories have been put on or around the sensors.

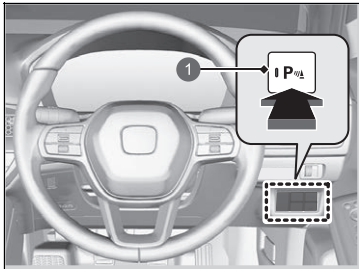
The system may not detect these obstacles:
- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

The system may falsely detect obstacles in the following situations:
- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- When close to other vehicles with sonar sensors or other objects that emit ultrasonic waves.
- There is splashing water near the sensors due to heavy rains, etc.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.
▶If you put any accessories (such as a bicycle rack) on or around the rear sensors, the system may activate if it detects these accessories as an obstacle. In this case, turn off the rear sensor.
➡ **Turning off All Rear Sensors** P. 576

* Not available on all models

■ Parking sensor system on and off



❶ Parking Sensor System Button

With the power mode in ON, press the parking sensor system button to turn on or off the system. The indicator in the button comes on when the system is on.

The front corner, rear corner and rear centre sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is in R, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

The front corner and front centre sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is in any position other than R, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.
You also need to release the parking brake.

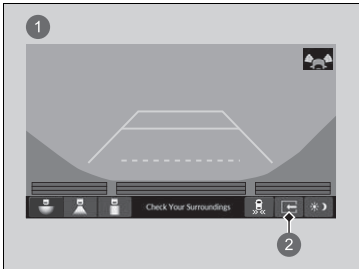
Parking Sensor System*

When you set the power mode to ON, the system will be in the previously selected condition.

* Not available on all models

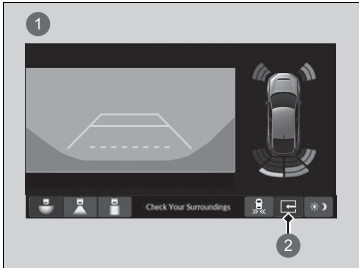
Continued

■ Screen Operation



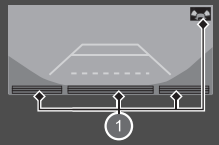
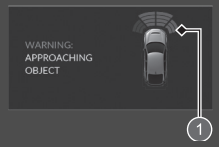
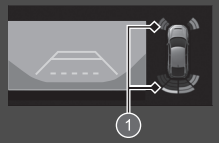
❶ Split View Off
❷ Split Screen Tab

You can switch between split view off and split view on by touching the split screen tab.



❶ Split View On
❷ Split Screen Tab

■ When the distance between your vehicle and obstacles becomes shorter

Interval between beeps	Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle		Indicator	Driver information interface	Audio/Information Screen
	Corner Sensors	Centre Sensors			
Moderate	—	About 110-60 cm	Comes on*1/ Blinks*2 in Yellow*3		
Short	About 60-45 cm	About 60-45 cm	Comes on*1/ Blinks*2 in Amber		
Very short	About 45-35 cm	About 45-35 cm			
Continuous	About 35 cm or less	About 35 cm or less	Comes on*1/ Blinks*2 in Red		

❶ Indicators light up where the sensor detects an obstacle.
*1:On the driver information interface
*2:On the audio/information screen
*3:At this stage, only the centre sensors detect obstacles.

Continued

Turning off All Rear Sensors

To deactivate the rear sensors, please take the following steps:

1. Make sure that the parking sensor system is not activated.
▶ The indicator in the button turns off.

2. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

3. Press and hold the parking sensor system button, and set the power mode to ON.

4. Keep pressing the button for 10 seconds. Release the button when the indicator in the button flashes.
▶ The beeper sounds once.

5. While the indicator is flashing, press the button again. The indicator in the button turns off.
▶ The beeper sounds twice. The rear sensors are now turned off. They will remain turned off until manually turned back on again. To turn the rear sensors on again, follow the above procedure. The beeper sounds three times when the rear sensors come back on.

Turning off All Rear Sensors

When you put the transmission into R, the indicator in the parking sensor system button blinks as a reminder that the rear sensors have been turned off.

Cross Traffic Monitor*

Monitors the rear corner areas using the radar sensors when reversing, and alerts you if a vehicle approaching from a rear corner is detected.

The system is convenient especially when you are getting out of a parking space backwards.

Cross Traffic Monitor*

WARNING

Cross traffic monitor cannot detect all approaching vehicles and may not detect an approaching vehicle at all.

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to back up the vehicle before doing so may result in a collision.

Do not solely rely on the system when reversing; always also use your mirrors, and look behind and to the sides of your vehicle before reversing.

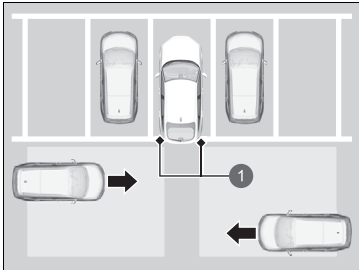
Models with parking sensor system

The parking sensor system's alerting buzzer overrides the Cross Traffic Monitor buzzer when the sensors are detecting obstacles at the closest range.

* Not available on all models

Continued

How the System Works



1 Radar sensors:
underneath the rear bumper corners.

The system activates when:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The Cross Traffic Monitor is turned on.
  ➡ **Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off** P. 580
  ➡ **Customized Features** P. 313
- The transmission is in R.
- Your vehicle is moving at 5 km/h or lower.

When a vehicle is detected approaching from a rear corner, Cross Traffic Monitor alerts you with a buzzer and a displayed warning.

The system will not detect a vehicle that approaches from directly behind your vehicle, nor will it provide alerts about a detected vehicle when it moves directly behind your vehicle.

The system does not provide alerts for a vehicle that is moving away from your vehicle, and it may alert for pedestrians, bicycles, or stationary objects.

Cross Traffic Monitor*

Cross traffic monitor may not detect or may delay detecting an approaching vehicle, or may alert detection without an approaching vehicle under the following conditions:

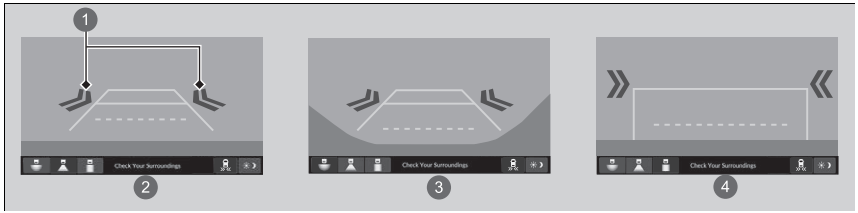
- An obstacle, such as another vehicle and a wall, near your vehicle's rear bumper, is blocking the radar sensor's scope.
- Your vehicle is moving at the speed of about 5 km/h or higher.
- A vehicle is approaching at the speed other than between about 10 km/h and 25 km/h.
- The system picks up external interference such as other radar sensors from another vehicle or strong radio wave transmitted from a facility nearby.
- Either corner of the rear bumper is covered with snow, ice, mud or dirt.
- When there is bad weather.
- Your vehicle is on an incline.
- Your vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load in the rear.
- Your vehicle is reversing towards a wall, a pole, a vehicle, and so on.

The rear bumper or the sensors have been improperly repaired or the rear bumper has been deformed. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

For proper operation, always keep the rear bumper corner area clean.
Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.

 * Not available on all models

When the System Detects a Vehicle



1. Arrow Icon
2. Normal View
3. Wide View
4. Top Down View

An arrow icon appears on the side a vehicle is approaching on the audio/information screen.

When the System Detects a Vehicle

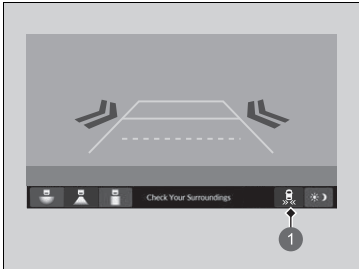
If the on the lower right changes to in amber when the transmission is in R, mud, snow, ice and other debris may have accumulated in the vicinity of the sensor. The system is temporarily cancelled. Check the bumper corners for any obstructions, and thoroughly clean the area if necessary.

If the comes on when the transmission is in R, there may be a problem with the Cross Traffic Monitor system. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If the display remains the same with the transmission in R, there may be a problem with the rear camera system and the Cross Traffic Monitor system.
Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Continued

Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off



The system can be turned on and off on the audio/information screen by pressing the Cross Traffic Monitor icon.

1 Cross Traffic Monitor Icon

Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off

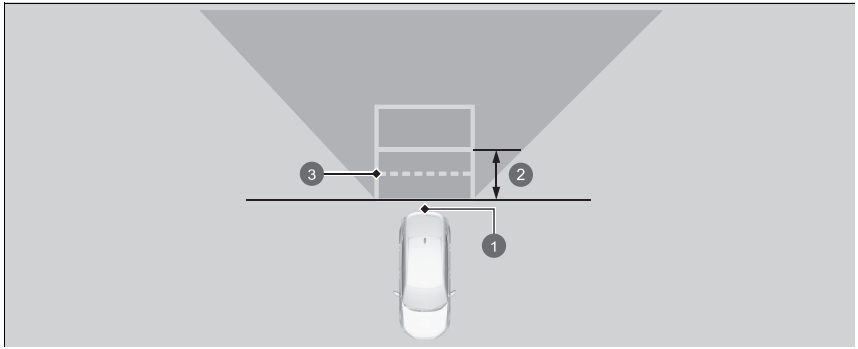
You can also switch the system on and off from the customized feature on the audio/information screen.

Customized Features P. 313

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The audio/information screen can display your vehicle's rear view. The display automatically changes to the rear view when the transmission is put into R.

Multi-View Rear Camera Display Area



1. Camera
2. Approx. 1 metre
3. Approx. 50 cm

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

The rear camera view is displayed prior to the audio/information screen.

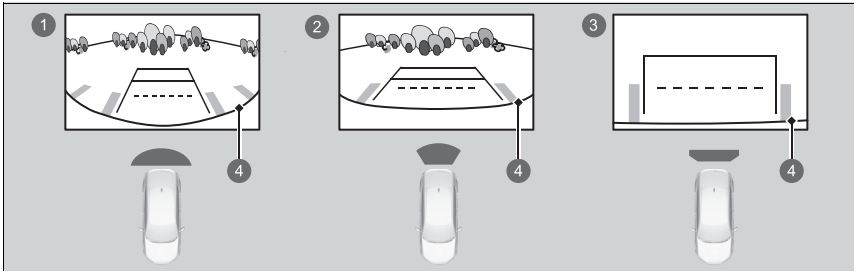
If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

You can change the **Fixed Guideline** and **Dynamic Guideline** settings.
Customized Features P. 313

Fixed Guideline
ON: Guidelines appear when you put the transmission into R.
OFF: Guidelines do not appear.
Dynamic Guideline
ON: Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.
OFF: Guidelines do not move.

Continued

You can view three different camera modes on the audio/information screen. Touch the appropriate icon to switch the mode.



1. Wide View Mode
2. Normal View Mode
3. Top Down View Mode
4. Bumper

- If you were last using Wide view mode or Normal view mode, the same view mode will be activated the next time you put the transmission into R.
- If you were using Top down view mode before you turned off the engine, Wide view mode will be activated the next time you set the power mode to ON and put the transmission into R.
- If you were using Top down view mode and 10 seconds elapsed after you took the transmission out of R, Wide view mode will be activated the next time you put the transmission into R.
- If you were using Top down view mode and put the transmission back into R within 10 seconds after you took it out of R, Top down view mode will be activated.

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

If the vehicle's rear view is not displayed on the audio/information screen while the shift position is in R, there may be a problem with the system. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

Fuel Information

■ Fuel recommendation

Continuously variable transmission models

Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher

Use of lower octane petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

Manual transmission models

Australian, New Zealand, Malaysian, Philippine, Vietnamese, Indonesian models

Unleaded premium petrol, research octane number 95 or higher

Use of lower octane petrol can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.
Use of petrol with a research octane less than 91 can lead to engine damage.

Hong Kong and Macanese models

Unleaded premium petrol, research octane number 95 or higher

Use of lower octane petrol can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.
We recommend that you use a research octane of 98 or higher to maximise the performance of the engine.
Use of petrol with a research octane less than 91 can lead to engine damage.

Thai models

Unleaded premium petrol/gasohol up to E10 (90% petrol and 10% ethanol), research octane number 95 or higher

Use of lower octane petrol can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.
Use of petrol with a research octane less than 91 can lead to engine damage.

■ Fuel tank capacity: 47 L

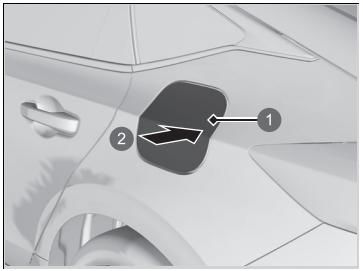
Fuel Information

NOTICE

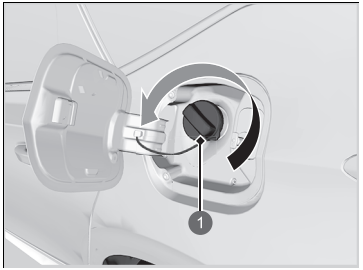
Use of petrol that contains lead presents the following risks:

- Damage to the exhaust system including the catalytic converter
- Damage to the engine and fuel system
- Detrimental effects on the engine and other systems

How to Refuel



1 Fuel fill door
2 Press



1 Cap

1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Unlock the driver's door.
   ▶ The fuel fill door on the outer side of the vehicle will unlock.
4. Press and release the area indicated by the arrow to release the fuel fill door. You will hear a click and the lid will open slightly.
5. Manually pull the fuel fill door to a fully open position.
6. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. If you hear a release of air, wait until this stops, then turn the knob slowly to open the fuel fill cap.

How to Refuel

⚠WARNING

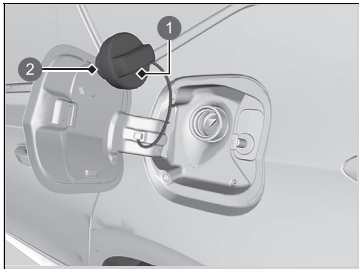
Petrol is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- **Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flames away.**
- **Handle fuel only outdoors.**
- **Wipe up spills immediately.**

Use the lock tab or the master door lock switch to unlock the fuel fill door.
The vehicle doors and fuel fill door automatically relock if the remote unlock function is used. This can be deactivated by briefly opening then closing the driver's door.

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity.



❶ Cap
❷ Holder

7. Place the fuel fill cap in the holder.

8. Insert the fuel filler nozzle fully.

▶ When the tank is full, the filler nozzle will click off automatically. This leaves space in the fuel tank in case the fuel expands with a change in the temperature.

9. After filling, replace the fuel fill cap, tightening it until you hear it click at least once.

▶ Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO_2 Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing CO_2 emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Follow the maintenance schedule* and, if necessary, consult your warranty booklet.

Maintenance Schedule P. 602

- Use engine oil with the viscosity recommended.
  Recommended Engine Oil P. 611
- Maintain the specified tyre pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess luggage.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO_2 Emissions

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.

100	×	Litres of fuel	÷	Kilometres driven	=	L per 100 km
Kilometres driven	÷	Litres of fuel	=	Kilometres per Litre		

* Not available on all models

Handling Precautions

The turbocharger is a high-precision device to obtain greater horsepower by delivering a large volume of compressed air into the engine using a turbine driven by the engine's exhaust gas pressure.

- When the engine is cold just after starting, avoid revving the engine or sudden acceleration.

- Always replace the engine oil and engine oil filter according to the Oil Monitor system schedule. The turbine rotates at very high speeds over 100,000 rpm and its temperature reaches over 700°C. It is lubricated and cooled by engine oil. If you fail to replace the engine oil and filter at the scheduled distance or interval, deteriorated engine oil may cause failure such as sticking and abnormal noise of the turbine bearing.

Turbo Engine Vehicle

The scheduled maintenance intervals for replacing the engine oil and filter is indicated on the driver information interface. Follow the information on replacement timing.

➔ **Oil Monitor System** P. 593
➔ **Recommended Engine Oil** P. 611

Models with A-type meter

The **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** or **Engine temperature near limit. Avoid strong acceleration and high speed.** message may appear on the driver information interface when you restart the engine after driving under high load conditions such as at high speed or in hilly terrain.
This is normal. The message goes off after you idle or drive the vehicle for about one minute.

Models with B-type meter

The temperature gauge is at the upper level when you restart the engine after driving under high load conditions such as at high speed or in hilly terrain.
This is normal. The gauge goes down after you idle or drive the vehicle for about one minute.

Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.

Before Performing Maintenance
Inspection and Maintenance 590
Safety When Performing Maintenance 591
Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service 592
Oil Monitor System 593
Maintenance Schedule 602
Maintenance Under the Bonnet
Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet .. 606
Opening the Bonnet 608
Recommended Engine Oil 611
Oil Check 613
Adding Engine Oil 615
Engine Coolant 616
Transmission Fluid 620
Brake/Clutch* Fluid 621
Refilling Window Washer Fluid..... 623
Fuel Filter 624
Replacing Light Bulbs 625
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades 633
Checking and Maintaining Tyres
Checking Tyres 636
Wear Indicators..... 637
Tyre Service Life 638
Tyre and Wheel Replacement..... 638
Tyre Rotation 639
Snow Traction Devices 640
Battery
Checking the Battery 642
Charging the Battery 643
Remote Transmitter Care
Replacing the Remote Battery 645
Climate Control System Maintenance
Dust and Pollen Filter 649
Cleaning
Interior Care 651
Exterior Care..... 654
Accessories and Modifications 658

* Not available on all models

Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. Refer to the Service Book* that came with your vehicle/maintenance schedule in this owner's manual for detailed maintenance and inspection information.

➔ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 602

Types of Inspection and Maintenance

Routine inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

Periodic inspections

- Check the brake/clutch* fluid level monthly.
  ➔ **Brake/Clutch* Fluid** P. 621
- Check the tyre pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
  ➔ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 636
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
  ➔ **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 625
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
  ➔ **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** P. 633

 * Not available on all models

Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether you should perform a given task.

■ Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the bonnet.
  ▶ Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite them, causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not petrol.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
  ▶ Only operate the engine if there is sufficient ventilation.

■ Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
  ▶ Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
  ▶ Make sure to let the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
  ▶ Do not start the engine unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts.
  ▶ Do not open the bonnet while the Auto Idle Stop* function is activated.

Safety When Performing Maintenance

⚠WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual/Service Book*.

⚠WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

* Not available on all models

Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

The use of Honda genuine parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda genuine parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

2.0 L engine models

Do not press the engine cover forcibly. This may damage the engine cover and component parts.

Oil Monitor System

The warning message notifies you when to change the engine oil, or when to bring your vehicle to a dealer for indicated maintenance services.

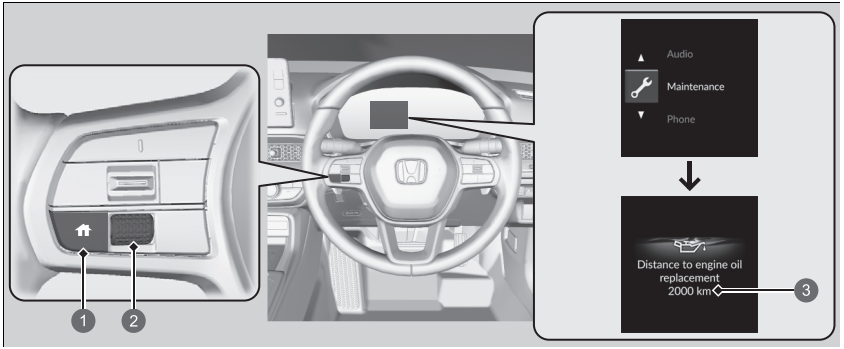
Models with A-type meter

Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information

Certain maintenance items due soon, along with the estimated remaining oil life, appear on the driver information interface.
You can view them on the oil monitor system information screen at any time.

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the (home) button.
3. Roll the left selector wheel until is displayed.
4. Press the left selector wheel to go to the oil monitor system information screen.
The engine oil life appears on the driver information interface.

The system message indicator ( ) stays on in the instrument panel after the maintenance period reached. Have the indicated maintenance done by a dealer immediately.



❶ (home) Button
❷ Left Selector Wheel
❸ Remaining distance to the next engine oil maintenance period

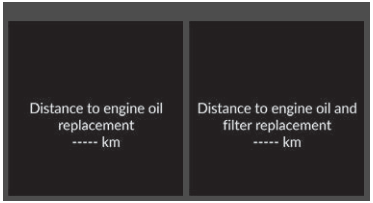
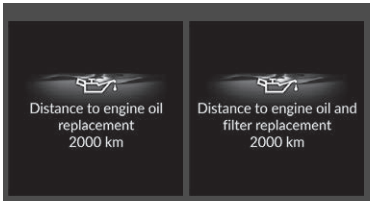
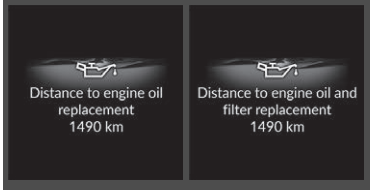
Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information

Based on the engine operating and engine oil conditions, the remaining distance to the next maintenance period is calculated and displayed.

By driving conditions, actual travel distance might be shorter than the displayed distance.

Independent of the oil monitor system information, perform maintenance after 1 year has elapsed since the last oil change.

Oil Monitor System Information on the Driver Information Interface

Warning Message	Oil Life Display	Information
Normal —		When you reset the remaining distance after an oil change, a series of dots will appear in the oil life display. These dots will remain displayed until the system determines, based on the driving conditions, the remaining distance until the next oil change, or the next oil and filter change.
		When you select the oil monitor system information screen, the remaining engine oil life, or the remaining engine oil and oil filter life is displayed.
Replacement Due Soon 		The engine oil, or the oil filter and engine oil are approaching the end of their life.

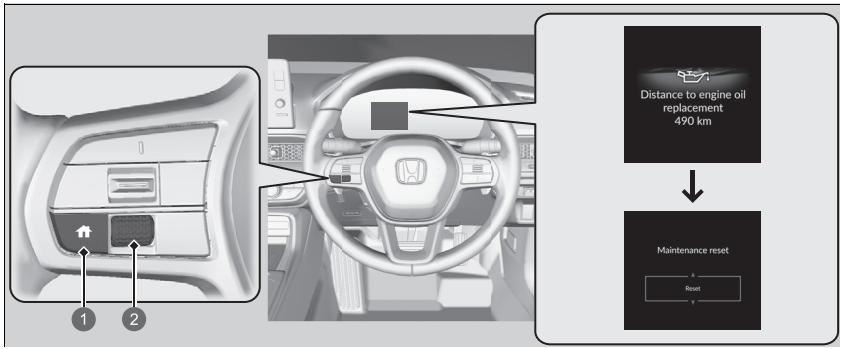
Continued

Warning Message	Oil Life Display	Information
Replacement Due Now Engine oil replacement due now Engine oil and filter replacement due now	Distance to engine oil replacement 490 km Distance to engine oil and filter replacement 490 km	The engine oil, or the engine oil and oil filter have almost reached the end of their service life, and the maintenance service item(s) should be inspected and serviced as soon as possible.
Replacement Overdue Engine oil replacement overdue Engine oil and filter replacement overdue	Distance to engine oil replacement -10 km Distance to engine oil and filter replacement -10 km	The engine oil, or the oil filter and engine oil have passed their service life. The maintenance service item(s) must be inspected and serviced immediately.

■ Resetting the Display

Reset the engine oil monitor system information if you have performed the maintenance service.

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the (home) button.
3. Roll the left selector wheel until is displayed.
4. Press the left selector wheel to go to the oil monitor system information screen.
5. Press and hold the left selector wheel for about 10 seconds to enter the reset mode.
6. Roll the left selector wheel to select **Reset** (You can also select **Cancel** to end the process).
7. Press the left selector wheel to reset the selected item.
▶ When the oil monitor system information display is reset, the engine oil life is reset to ----- km.



❶ (home) Button
❷ Left Selector Wheel

Resetting the Display

NOTICE
Failure to reset the engine oil life after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

You can also reset the oil monitor system information display using the audio/information screen.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 313

The dealer will reset the engine oil life display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the engine oil life display yourself.

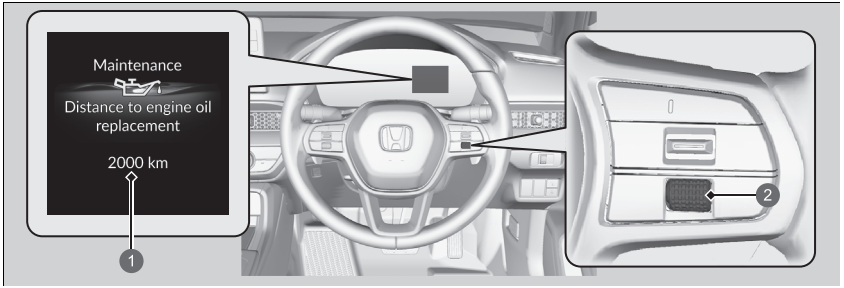
Models with B-type meter

Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information

Certain maintenance items due soon, along with the estimated remaining oil life, appear on the driver information interface.
You can view them on the oil monitor system information screen at any time.

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Roll the right selector wheel until the oil monitor system information screen is displayed. The engine oil life appears on the driver information interface.

The system message indicator (ⓘ) stays on in the instrument panel after the maintenance period reached. Have the indicated maintenance done by a dealer immediately.



❶ Remaining distance to the next engine oil maintenance period
❷ Right Selector Wheel

Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information

Based on the engine operating and engine oil conditions, the remaining distance to the next maintenance period is calculated and displayed.

By driving conditions, actual travel distance might be shorter than the displayed distance.

Independent of the oil monitor system information, perform maintenance after 1 year has elapsed since the last oil change.

Oil Monitor System Information on the Driver Information Interface

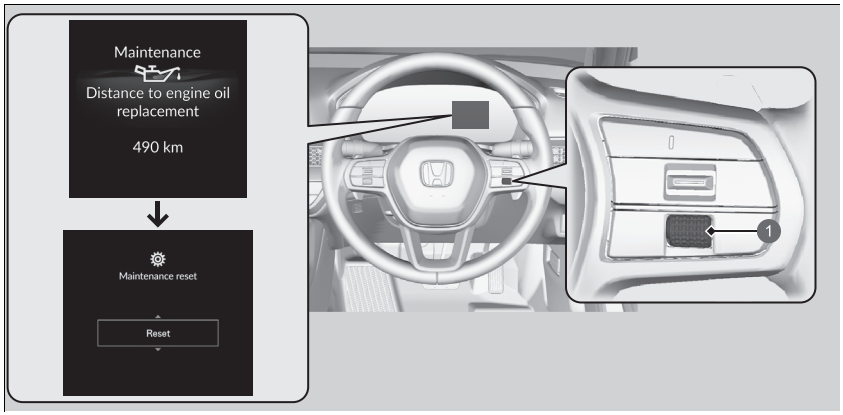
Warning Message	Oil Life Display	Information
Normal —	Maintenance Distance to engine oil replacement ----- km Maintenance Distance to engine oil and filter replacement ----- km	When you reset the remaining distance after an oil change, a series of dots will appear in the oil life display. These dots will remain displayed until the system determines, based on the driving conditions, the remaining distance until the next oil change, or the next oil and filter change.
	Maintenance Distance to engine oil replacement 2000 km Maintenance Distance to engine oil and filter replacement 2000 km	When you select the oil monitor system information screen, the remaining engine oil life, or the remaining engine oil and oil filter life is displayed.
Replacement Due Soon Engine oil replacement due soon Engine oil and filter replacement due soon	Maintenance Distance to engine oil replacement 1490 km Maintenance Distance to engine oil and filter replacement 1490 km	The engine oil, or the oil filter and engine oil are approaching the end of their life.

Continued

Warning Message	Oil Life Display	Information
Replacement Due Now Engine oil replacement due now Engine oil and filter replacement due now	Maintenance Distance to engine oil replacement 490 km Maintenance Distance to engine oil and filter replacement 490 km	The engine oil, or the engine oil and oil filter have almost reached the end of their service life, and the maintenance service item(s) should be inspected and serviced as soon as possible.
Replacement Overdue Engine oil replacement overdue Engine oil and filter replacement overdue	Maintenance Distance to engine oil replacement -10 km Maintenance Distance to engine oil and filter replacement -10 km	The engine oil, or the oil filter and engine oil have passed their service life. The maintenance service item(s) must be inspected and serviced immediately.

Resetting the Display

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Roll the right selector wheel until the oil monitor system information screen is displayed.
3. Press and hold the right selector wheel for about 10 seconds to enter the reset mode.
4. Roll the right selector wheel to select Reset (You can also select Cancel to end the process).
5. Press the right selector wheel to reset the selected item.
   ▶ When the oil monitor system information display is reset, the engine oil life is reset to ----- km.



❶ Right Selector Wheel

Resetting the Display

NOTICE
Failure to reset the engine oil life after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

You can also reset the oil monitor system information display using the audio/information screen.
➡ **Customized Features** P. 313

The dealer will reset the engine oil life display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the engine oil life display yourself.

Maintenance Schedule

If your vehicle comes with the service book, the maintenance schedule for your vehicle is available in the book. For vehicles without the service book, refer to the following maintenance schedules.

The maintenance schedule outlines the minimum required maintenance that you should perform to ensure the troublefree operation of your vehicle. Due to regional and climatic differences, some additional servicing may be required. Please consult your warranty booklet for a more detailed description.

Maintenance work should be performed by properly trained and equipped technicians. Your authorised dealer meets all of these requirements.

Except Australian and New Zealand models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km X 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil		When warning appears on or 1 year									
Replace engine oil filter		When warning appears on or 2 years									
Replace air cleaner element		Every 30,000 km									
Inspect valve clearance*1		Every 120,000 km									
Replace spark plugs		Every 100,000 km									
Inspect drive belt			•		•		•		•		•
Replace engine coolant		At 200,000 km or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km or 5 years									
Add genuine injector cleaner agent*2		Every 10,000 km or 1 year									

*1:Sensory Method
Adjust the valves during service 120,000 km if they are noisy.
*2:Regular use of injector cleaner may be required for models designated for the following countries, it will depend on the quality of the fuel used. Consult your dealer for details: Philippine, Vietnamese and Indonesian.

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.		km X 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
		months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace transmission fluid	Normal							•				
	Severe				•			•			•	
Replace dust and pollen filter			•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect front and rear brakes			Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Replace brake fluid			Every 3 years									
Replace fuel filter in tank*1	Normal		Every 140,000 km									
	Severe		Every 90,000 km*3									
Replace fuel filter in tank*2	Normal		Every 120,000 km									
	Severe		Every 60,000 km*3									
Check expiry date for tyre repair kit bottle (If equipped)			Every 1 year									
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)			Every 10,000 km									
Visually inspect the following items:												
Driveshaft boots Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots Suspension components			Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS/VSA) Exhaust system Fuel lines and connections All fluid levels and condition of fluid			•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

*1:Except Indonesian models
*2:Indonesian models
*3:It is recommended that you replace the fuel filter if the fuel you are using is suspected to be contaminated with dust, etc. because the filter may be clogged sooner.

Severe Conditions

Follow the Severe Conditions Maintenance Schedule if you drive your car MAINLY under one or more of the following conditions:

- Driving less than 8 km per trip or, in freezing temperatures, driving less than 16 km per trip.
- Driving in extremely hot, over 35°C condition.
- Extensive idling or long periods of stop-and-go driving.
- Driving with a loaded car-top carrier, or driving in mountainous conditions.
- Driving on muddy, dusty, or de-iced roads.

NOTE: If you only OCCASIONALLY drive under “severe” conditions, you should follow the Normal Conditions Maintenance Schedule.

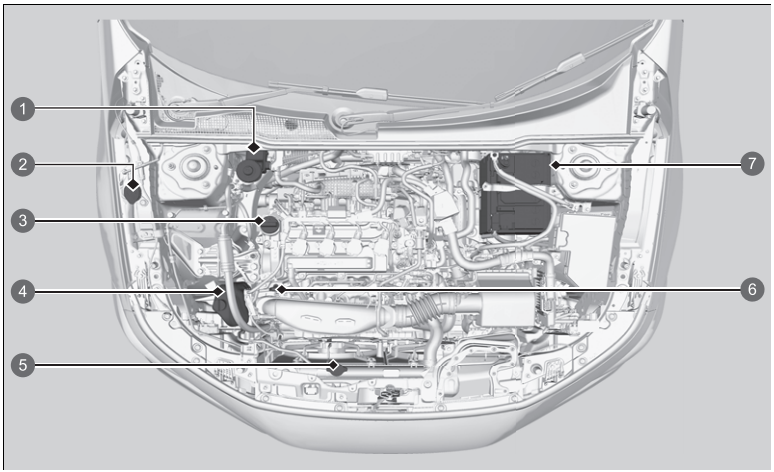
Maintenance Record (On Vehicles without Service Book)

Have your servicing dealer record all required maintenance below. Keep receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

	Km or Month	Date	Sign or Stamp
20,000 km (or 12 Mo.)			
40,000 km (or 24 Mo.)			
60,000 km (or 36 Mo.)			
80,000 km (or 48 Mo.)			
100,000 km (or 60 Mo.)			
120,000 km (or 72 Mo.)			
140,000 km (or 84 Mo.)			
160,000 km (or 96 Mo.)			
180,000 km (or 108 Mo.)			
200,000 km (or 120 Mo.)			

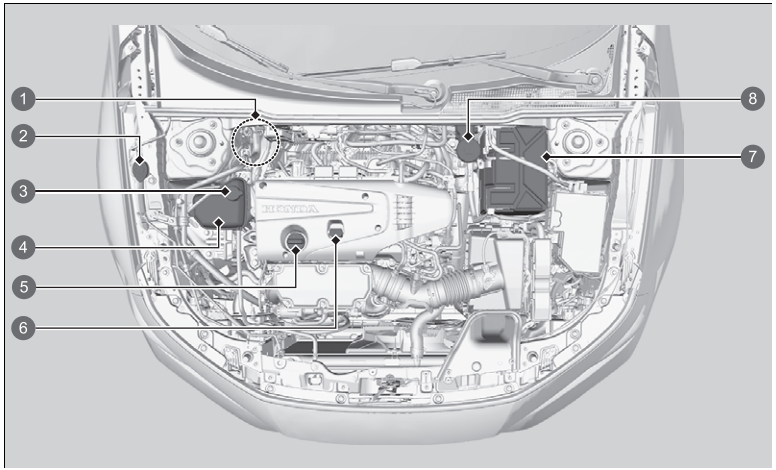
Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet

1.5 L engine models



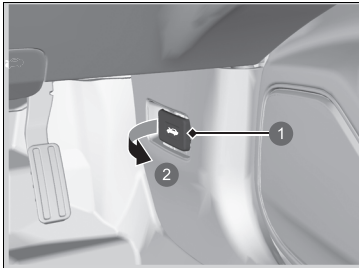
1. Brake Fluid (Black Cap)
2. Washer Fluid (Blue Cap)
3. Engine Oil Fill Cap
4. Engine Coolant Reserve Tank
5. Radiator Cap
6. Engine Oil Dipstick (Orange)
7. Battery

2.0 L engine models



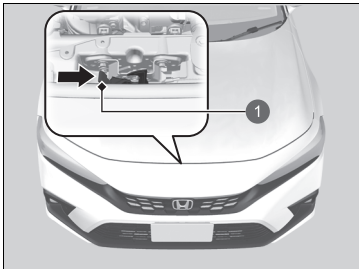
1. Brake/Clutch Fluid (Black Cap) (Right-hand Drive Type)
2. Washer Fluid (Blue Cap)
3. Engine Coolant Reserve Tank Cap
4. Engine Coolant Reserve Tank
5. Engine Oil Fill Cap
6. Engine Oil Dipstick (Black)
7. Battery
8. Brake/Clutch Fluid (Black Cap) (Left-hand Drive Type)

Opening the Bonnet



❶ Bonnet Release Handle
❷ Pull

1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.
   ▶ The bonnet will pop up slightly.



❶ Lever

3. Push the bonnet latch lever (located under the front edge of the bonnet to the centre) to the side and raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.

Opening the Bonnet

⚠WARNING

The bonnet support rod can become very hot due to heat from the engine.

To ensure against possible burns, do not handle the metal section of the rod: Use the foam grip instead.

NOTICE
Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are raised. The bonnet will strike the wipers, resulting in possible damage to the bonnet and/or the wipers.

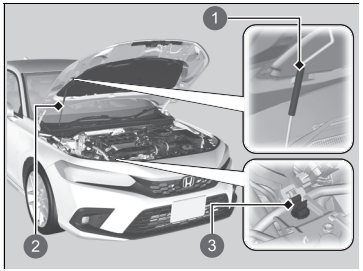
2.0 L engine models
NOTICE
Do not press the engine cover forcibly. This may damage the engine cover and component parts.

When closing the bonnet, check that the bonnet is securely latched.

If the bonnet latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the bonnet without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

Do not open the bonnet while the Auto Idle Stop* function is activated.

* Not available on all models



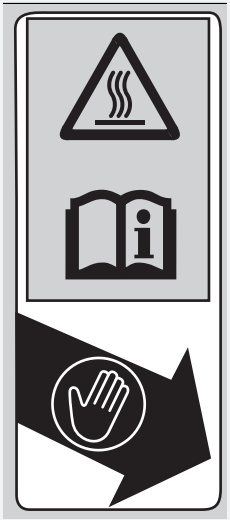
❶ Grip
❷ Support Rod
❸ Clamp

4. Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the bonnet.

When closing, remove the support rod, and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the bonnet. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 30 cm and let the bonnet close.

Opening the Bonnet

Models with pictogram label



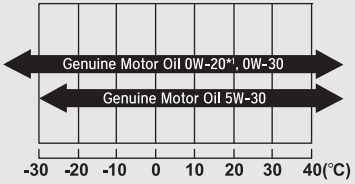
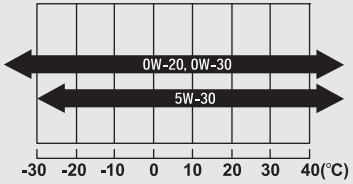
- Grab the foam.
- The support rod gets very hot.
- Refer to the owner's manual.

1.5 L engine models

Recommended Engine Oil

Use a genuine engine oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable type and viscosity (for the ambient temperature) as shown in the image that follows.

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

Genuine Engine Oil	Commercial Engine Oil
• Honda Genuine Motor Oil	• API service SM or higher grade fuel-efficient oil • ACEA A5/B5
 Ambient Temperature	 Ambient Temperature

*1:Formulated to improve fuel economy.

Recommended Engine Oil

Engine Oil Additives
Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

2.0 L engine models

Recommended Engine Oil

Use a genuine engine oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable type and viscosity (for the ambient temperature) as shown in the image that follows.

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

See the engine oil fill cap markings in the image that follows and on the actual cap to check if the vehicle is equipped with a gasoline particulate filter*.

Adding Engine Oil P. 615

Recommended Engine Oil

Engine Oil Additives

Models with gasoline particulate filter

You cannot use Engine Oil Additives.

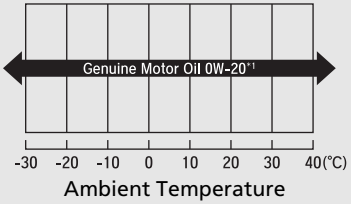
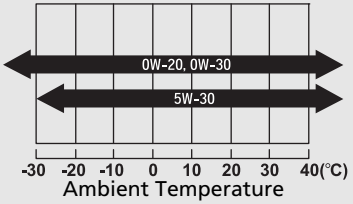
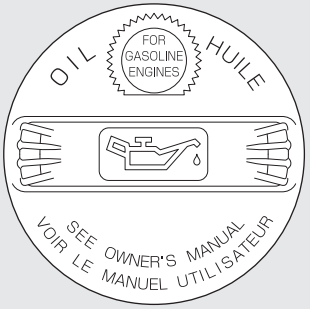
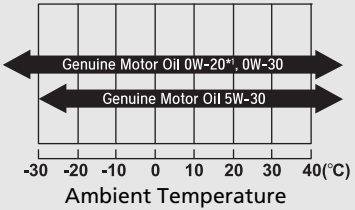
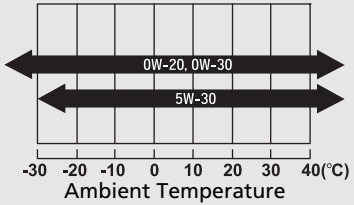
Models without gasoline particulate filter

Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

The following seal indicates the oil is energy conserving and that it meets the American Petroleum Institute's latest requirements.

* Not available on all models

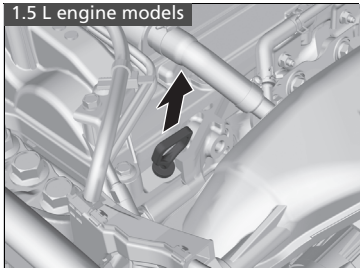
Continued

Model	Engine Oil Fill Cap Markings	Genuine Engine Oil	Commercial Engine Oil
With Gasoline Particulate Filter		• Honda Genuine Motor Oil*1 	• ACEA C2/C3/C5 
Without Gasoline Particulate Filter		• Honda Genuine Motor Oil*1 	• API service SN or higher grade fuel-efficient oil • API Certification Mark "Starburst" • ACEA A5/B5 

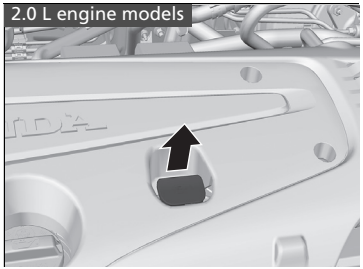
*1:Formulated to improve fuel economy.

Oil Check

We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel.
Park the vehicle on level ground.
Wait approximately three minutes after turning the engine off before you check the oil.



1. Remove the dipstick (orange or black).
2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.



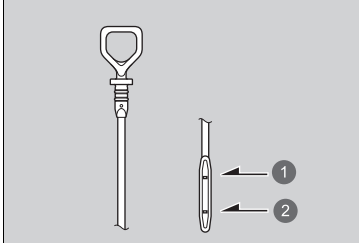
4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

Oil Check

If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil, being careful not to overfill.

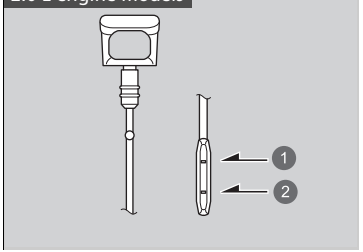
Continued

1.5 L engine models



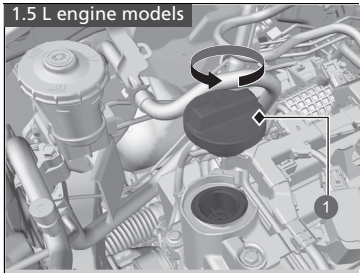
1 Upper Mark
2 Lower Mark

2.0 L engine models

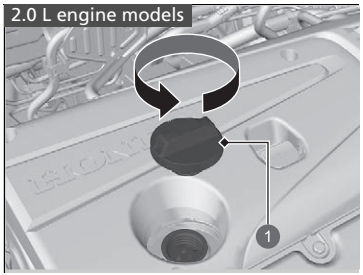


1 Upper Mark
2 Lower Mark

Adding Engine Oil



❶ Engine Oil Fill Cap



❶ Engine Oil Fill Cap

1. Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
2. Add oil slowly.
3. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
4. Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

Adding Engine Oil

NOTICE

Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil may result in leaks and engine damage.

If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

1.5 L engine models

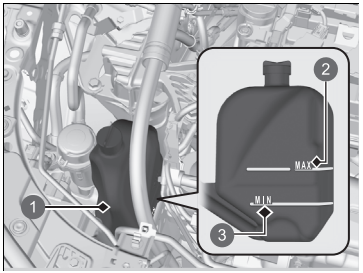
Engine Coolant

Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

■ Reserve Tank



❶ Reserve Tank
❷ **MAX**
❸ **MIN**

1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
   ▶ If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.

Engine Coolant

⚠WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

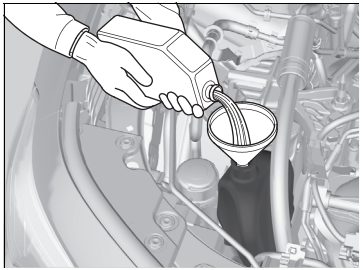
Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

NOTICE

If temperatures consistently below –30°C are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult your Honda dealer for details about a suitable coolant mixture.

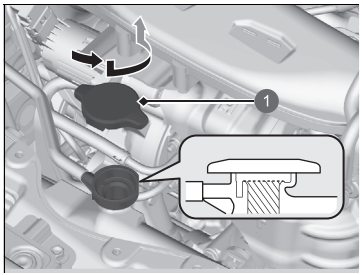
If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.



3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Radiator



❶ Radiator Cap

1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Turn the radiator cap 1/8 turn anticlockwise and relieve any pressure in the cooling system.
3. Push down and turn the radiator cap anticlockwise to remove it.
4. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
5. Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.

Radiator

NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

2.0 L engine models

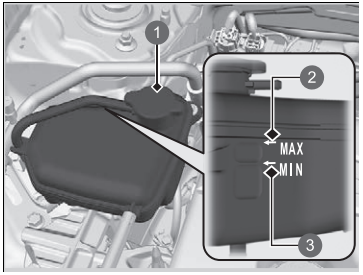
Engine Coolant

Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

■ Checking the Coolant



❶ Reserve Tank
❷ **MAX**
❸ **MIN**

1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
   ▶ If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Engine Coolant

⚠WARNING

Removing the reserve tank cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the reserve tank cap.

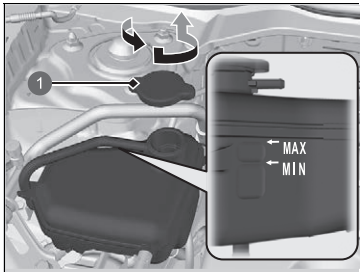
NOTICE

If temperatures consistently below –30°C are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult your Honda dealer for details about a suitable coolant mixture.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

Adding the Coolant

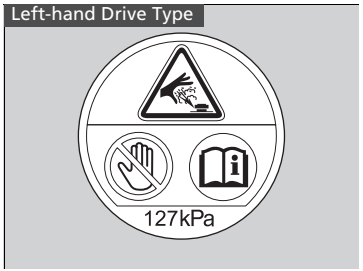


1 Reserve Tank Cap

1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Turn the reserve tank cap 1/8 turn anticlockwise and relieve any pressure in the cooling system.
3. Push down and turn the reserve tank cap anticlockwise to remove it.
4. Pour coolant into the reserve tank until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
5. Put the reserve tank cap back on, and tighten it fully.

Engine Coolant Reserve Tank Cap

Left-hand Drive Type



- Never open when hot.
- Hot coolant will scald you.
- Relief pressure valve begins to open at 127 kPa.

Radiator

NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

Transmission Fluid

Continuously variable transmission models

■ Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda HCF-2

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.
Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change continuously variable transmission fluid.

Do not attempt to check or change the continuously variable transmission fluid yourself.

➔ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 602

Manual transmission models

■ Manual Transmission Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda MTF

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary. Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change manual transmission fluid.

➔ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 602

Do not attempt to check or change the manual transmission fluid yourself.

Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) Fluid

NOTICE

Do not mix Honda HCF-2 with other transmission fluids.
Using a transmission fluid other than Honda HCF-2 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission.
Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda HCF-2 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle limited warranty.

Manual Transmission Fluid

NOTICE

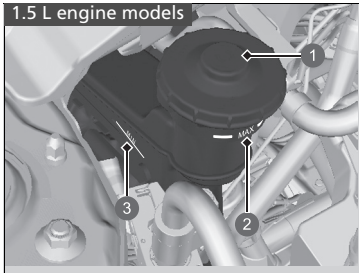
If Honda MTF is not available, you may use the API certificated SAE 0W-20 or 5W-20 viscosity motor oil as a temporary measure.
Replace with MTF as soon as possible. Motor oil does not contain the proper additives for the transmission and continued use can cause decreased shifting performance and lead to transmission damage.

Brake/Clutch* Fluid

Specified fluid: Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

Checking the Brake Fluid

1.5 L engine models



1 Reserve Tank
2 **MAX**
3 **MIN**

The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

Manual transmission models

The brake fluid reserve tank is also used for your vehicle's clutch fluid. As long as you keep the brake fluid level as instructed above, there is no need for checking the clutch fluid level.

Brake/Clutch* Fluid

NOTICE

Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

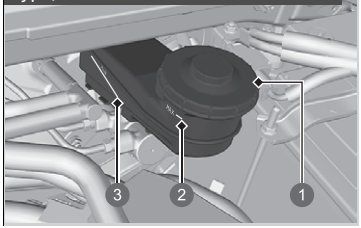
We recommend using a genuine product.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

* Not available on all models

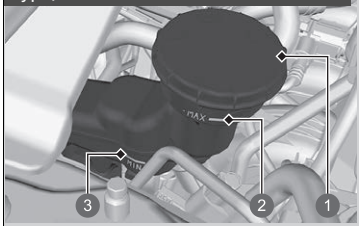
Continued

2.0 L engine models (Left-hand Drive Type)



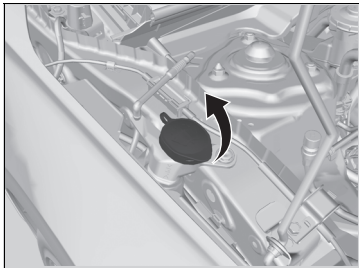
1. Reserve Tank
2. **MAX**
3. **MIN**

2.0 L engine models (Right-hand Drive Type)



1. Reserve Tank
2. **MAX**
3. **MIN**

Refilling Window Washer Fluid



Check the amount of window washer fluid.

If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

Refilling Window Washer Fluid

NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windscreen washer pump.

Use only commercially available windscreen washer fluid.

Avoid prolonged use of hard water to prevent lime scale buildup.

Fuel Filter

Replace the fuel filter according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

Have a qualified technician change the fuel filter. Fuel in the system can spray out and create a hazard if all fuel line connections are not handled correctly.

Headlights

Headlights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Headlights

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

Front Fog Lights*

Front fog lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Front Turn Signal Lights

Front turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Position/Daytime Running Lights

Position/daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights

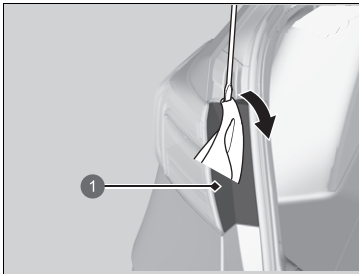
Door mirror side turn lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

* Not available on all models

Brake Light, Taillight, and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

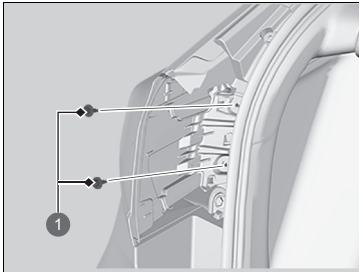
When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Brake Light: LED
Taillight: LED
Rear Turn Signal Light: 21 W (Amber)



1 Cover

1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

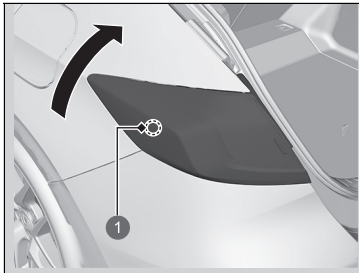


1 Bolts

2. Unscrew the bolts.

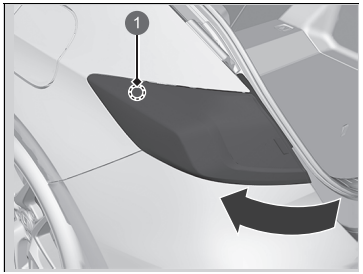
Brake Light, Taillight, and Rear Turn Signal Light Bulbs

Brake lights and taillights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.



❶ Lower Snap Pin

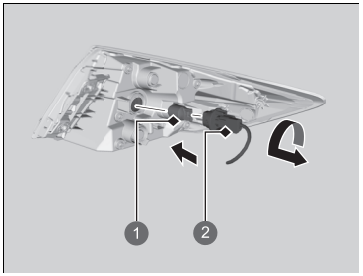
3. Grasp underneath the taillight and rotate it upward to release the lower snap pin.



❶ Upper Snap Pin

4. Rotate the taillight outward to release the upper snap pin.
5. Pull the light assembly out of the rear pillar.

Continued



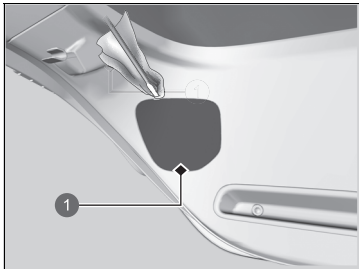
1 Bulb
2 Socket

6. Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it.
7. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.
8. Align the pins with the body grommets, then push in until they fully seat.

Taillight and Back-Up Light Bulbs

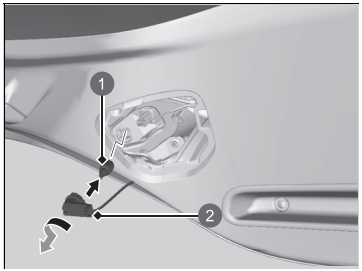
When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Taillight: LED
Back-Up Light: 16 W



❶ Cover

1. Remove the cover by prying on the edge using a flat-tip screwdriver.
   ▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



❶ Bulb
❷ Socket

2. Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it.
   Remove the old bulb.
3. Insert a new bulb.

Taillight and Back-Up Light Bulbs

Taillights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Rear Licence Plate Light

Rear licence plate light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

High-Mount Brake Light

High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Rear Fog Light*

Rear fog light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

* Not available on all models

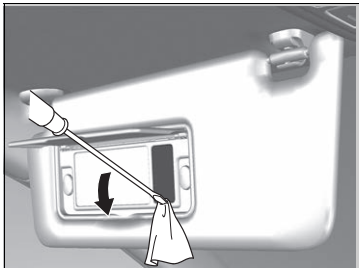
Other Light Bulbs

■ Vanity Mirror Light Bulbs

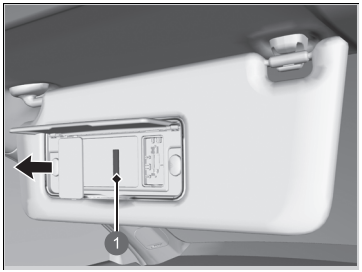
When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Vanity Mirror Light: 2 W

1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.



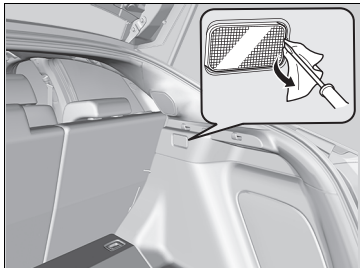
❶ Bulb

■ Luggage Area Light Bulb

When replacing, use the following bulb.

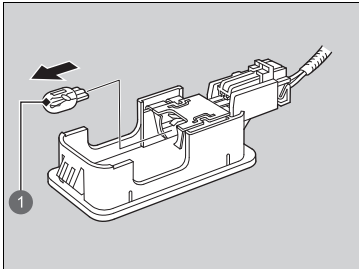
Luggage Area Light: 5 W

1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



Continued

2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

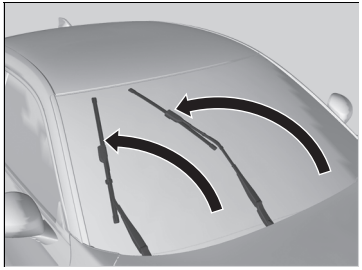


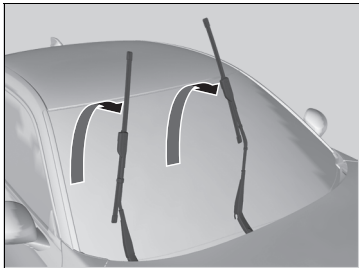
1 Bulb

Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks, become noisy, and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

Changing the Front Wiper Blade





1. Set the power mode to ON, then to VEHICLE OFF.
2. Within 10 seconds of setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, hold the wiper switch in the **MIST** position for more than two seconds.
   ▶ Both wiper arms are set to the maintenance position as shown in the image.
3. Lift both wiper arms.

Changing the Front Wiper Blade

NOTICE

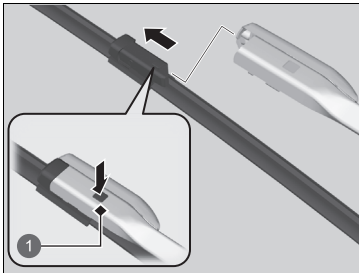
When lifting the wiper arms, always follow the instructions to move them into the maintenance position.

The wiper arms may be damaged if they are moved manually.

NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windscreen, it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windscreen.

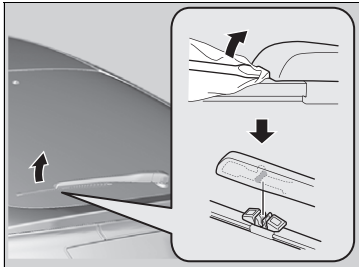
Continued



1 Tab

4. Depress the lock tab, then slide the wiper blade off the wiper arm.
5. Slide the new wiper blade onto the wiper arm until it clicks into place.
6. Lower both wiper arms.
7. Set the power mode to ON, then set the wiper switch to the **MIST** position once.
   ▶ The wiper arms return to the standard position.

Changing the Rear Wiper Blade



1. Hold up the wiper arm.
2. Insert a flat tip screwdriver into the groove of the wiper arm to remove the wiper blade.
   ▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.
3. Insert a new wiper blade and put the wiper arm back.

Checking Tyres

To safely operate your vehicle, your tyres must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tyres provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tyres wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tyres make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tyres. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tyre gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tyres, including the spare*. Even tyres in good condition can lose 10–20 kPa (0.1–0.2 bar, 1–2 psi) per month.

■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tyres and valve stems.
Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tyre if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tyre. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.
  ➡ **Wear Indicators** P. 637
- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

* Not available on all models

Checking Tyres

⚠WARNING

Using tyres that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

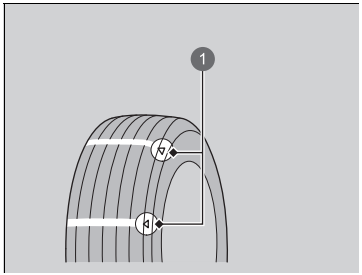
Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tyres are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1.6 km. If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

If checked when hot, tyre pressure can be as much as 30–40 kPa (0.3–0.4 bar, 4–6 psi) higher than if checked when cold.

Have a dealer check the tyres if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tyres and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

Wear Indicators



1 Example of a Wear Indicator mark

The groove where the wear indicator is located is about 1.6 mm shallower than elsewhere on the tyre. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tyre. **Worn out tyres have poor traction on wet roads.**

Checking Tyres

Models with 265/30ZR19 tyres

High speed driving

We recommend that you do not drive faster than the posted speed limits and conditions allow. If you drive at sustained high speeds (210 km/h), adjust the cold tyre pressures as shown below to avoid excessive heat buildup and sudden tyre failure.

Tyre Size	265/30ZR19 93Y
Pressure	Front: 280 kPa (2.8 bar, 41 psi) Rear: 230 kPa (2.3 bar, 33 psi)

Tyre Service Life

The life of your tyres is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tyres are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tyres reach five years old. All tyres, including the spare*. should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

Tyre and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tyres with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tyre pressure rating (as shown on the tyre's sidewall). Using tyres of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tyres in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

Tyre and Wheel Replacement

⚠WARNING

Installing improper tyres on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

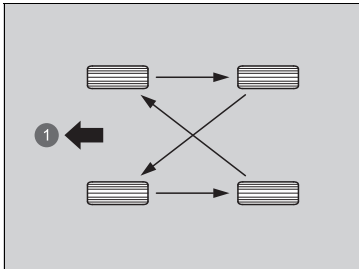
Always use the size and type of tyres recommended in the tyre information label on your vehicle.

* Not available on all models

Tyre Rotation

Rotating tyres according to the maintenance schedule helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tyre life.

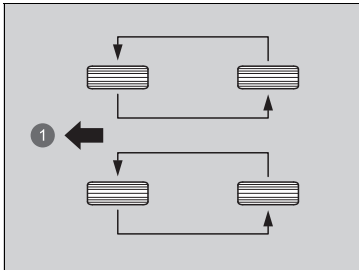
■ Tyres without rotation marks



Rotate the tyres as shown here.

❶ Front

■ Tyres with rotation marks

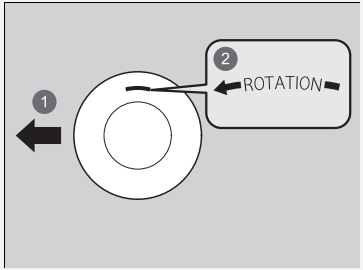


Rotate the tyres as shown here.

❶ Front

Tyre Rotation

Tyres with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tyres should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



❶ Front
❷ Rotation Mark

When the tyres are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.

Snow Traction Devices

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount winter tyres, or tyre chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tyre chains, winter tyres, or all season tyres when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tyres:
- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tyres.
- Mount the tyres to all four wheels.

Snow Traction Devices

⚠WARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tyre chains.

NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

When tyre chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

Models with 265/40R18 tyres

For tyre chains:

- Consult a dealer before purchasing any type of chains for your vehicle.
- Install them on the front tyres only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tyre clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

Original Tyre Size*1	Chain Type
235/40R18 95Y	**SCC Radial Cable SC1034**
265/30ZR19 93Y	**(Not Available)**

*1:Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

Snow Traction Devices

Use tyre chains only in an emergency or when they are legally required for driving through a certain area.

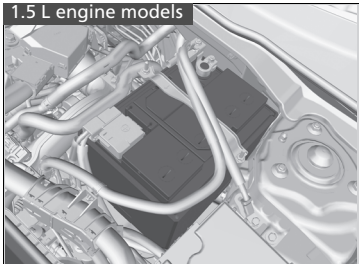
Use greater caution when driving with tyre chains on snow or ice. They may have less-predictable handling than good winter tyres without chains.

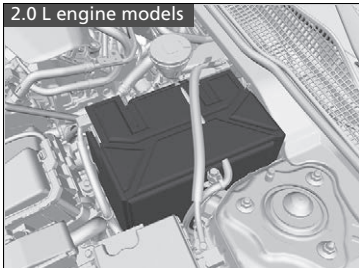
If your vehicle is equipped with summer tyres, be aware that these tyres are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.

2.0 L engine models

This vehicle is originally equipped with high performance tyres. If exposed to temperatures below approximately 7°C, the tyres will not be able to perform at their full potential. Do not use the high performance tyres if ambient temperatures are below -10°C: The tyres can become brittle and, as a result, may suffer from surface cracking.

Checking the Battery





The condition of the battery is monitored by a sensor located on the negative terminal of the battery. If there is a problem with this sensor, the driver information interface will display a warning message. If this happens, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The clock resets.*
  Clock P. 182

Battery

WARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or open flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do any battery maintenance.

WARNING

The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte) which is highly corrosive and poisonous.

Getting electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious burns. Wear protective clothing and eye protection when working on or near the battery.

Swallowing electrolyte can cause fatal poisoning if immediate action is not taken.

KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN

* Not available on all models

Charging the Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (-) cable first, and reconnect it last.

Battery

Emergency Procedures
Eyes: Flush with water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. (Water under pressure can damage the eye.) Call a physician immediately.
Skin: Remove contaminated clothing. Flush the skin with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.
Swallowing: Drink water or milk. Call a physician immediately.

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications.
Consult a dealer for more information.

The battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with Auto Idle Stop*.
Using a battery other than this specified type may shorten the battery life, and prevent Auto Idle Stop* from activating. If you need to replace the battery, make sure to select the specified type and size. Ask a dealer for more details.
➡ **Specifications** P. 720

* Not available on all models

Continued

Battery

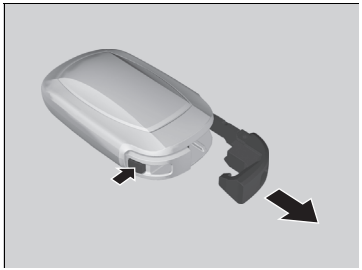
The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) **OFF***, Safety Support indicators may come on when you turn the power mode to on after reconnecting a battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Replacing the Remote Battery

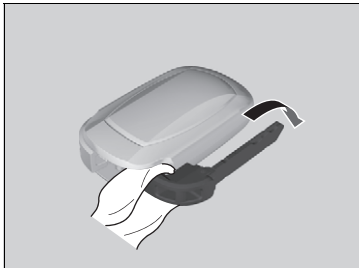
Keyless remote

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.



Battery type: CR2032

1. Remove the built-in key.



2. Remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the slot with key grip.
- ▶ Wrap a key grip with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.
- ▶ Remove carefully to avoid losing the buttons.

Continued

Replacing the Remote Battery

⚠WARNING

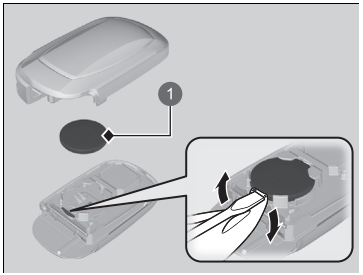
CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD
The battery that powers the remote transmitter can cause severe internal burns and can even lead to death if swallowed.
Keep new and used batteries away from children.
If you suspect that a child has swallowed the battery, seek medical attention immediately.

CAUTION: Danger of explosion if battery is incorrectly replaced. Replace only with the same or equivalent type.

CAUTION: Do not exposed to excessive heat such as sunshine, fire or the like, that can result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas during use, storage or transportation.

CAUTION: Do not dispose of a battery into fire or a hot oven, or give mechanically crushing or cutting of a battery, that can result in an explosion.

CAUTION: Do not subjected to extremely low air pressure at high altitude that may result in an explosion or the leakage of flammable liquid or gas.



1 Battery

3. Remove the battery by prying on the edge with flat-tip screwdriver. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.
▶ Wrap a flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.

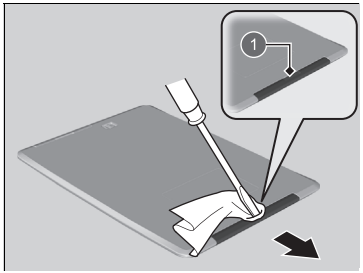
Replacing the Remote Battery

NOTICE
An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

According to Australian Standard;
⚠ **WARNING**
- The battery that powers the remote transmitter is hazardous – new and used batteries should be kept away from children.
- Lithium button/coin batteries can cause severe or fatal injuries in 2 hours or less if it is swallowed or placed inside any part of the body.
- Medical attention should be sought immediately if it is suspected the battery has been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body.

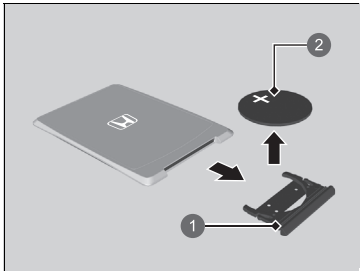
■ Card Key*



❶ Groove

Battery type: CR2412

1. Put the H logo side down of the card key.
2. Push to slide the groove of the battery holder using a flat-tip screwdriver and remove the battery holder.
▶ Wrap a flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratching the battery holder.



❶ Battery Holder
❷ Battery

3. Remove the battery. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.
4. To reinstall the battery holder, push the battery holder into the card key until it clicks.
▶ Make sure to install the battery holder in the correct side.

* Not available on all models

1.5 L engine models

Air Conditioning

For proper and safe operation of the climate control system, the refrigerant system should only be served by a qualified technician.

Never repair or replace the air conditioning evaporator (cooling coil) with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

Air Conditioning

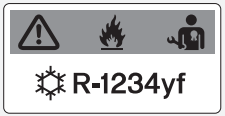
NOTICE

Vented refrigerant is harmful to the environment. To avoid refrigerant from venting, never replace the evaporator with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

Refrigerant in your vehicle's air conditioning system is flammable and can be ignited during servicing if proper procedures are not followed.

The air conditioner label is found under the bonnet:

Safety Labels P. 111
Specifications P. 720



: Caution
: Flammable Refrigerant
: Requires a qualified technician to service
: Air Conditioning System

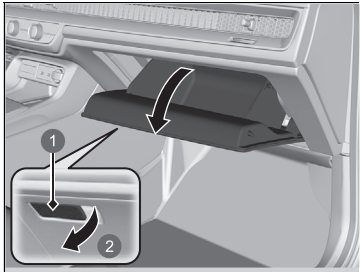
Dust and Pollen Filter

■ When to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter

Replace the dust and pollen filter according to your vehicle's recommended maintenance schedule. It is recommended to replace the filter even sooner if the vehicle has been driven in a dusty environment.

➡ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 602

■ How to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter



❶ Handle
❷ Pull

1. Open the glove box.

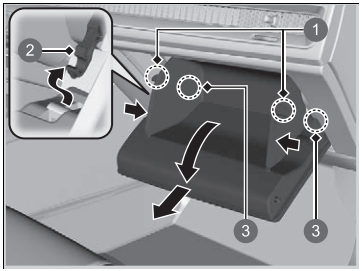
Dust and Pollen Filter

If the airflow from the climate control system deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced.

The dust and pollen filter collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air.

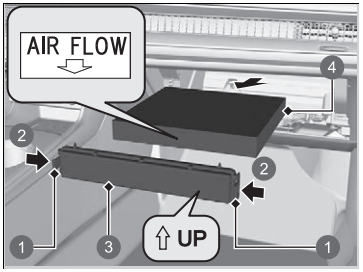
If you are not sure how to replace the dust and pollen filter, have it replaced by a dealer.

Continued



❶ Tabs
❷ Stopper
❸ Claws

2. Push the stopper on the driver's side of the glove box to detach it from the glove box.
3. Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel.
4. Pivot the glove box out of the way.
5. Remove the glove box by pulling out the claws.



❶ Tabs
❷ Push
❸ Cover
❹ Dust and Pollen Filter

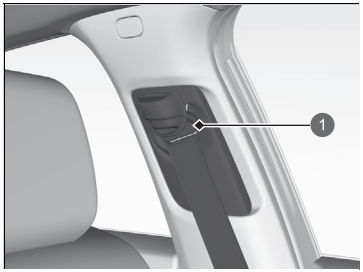
6. Push in the tabs on the corners of the filter case cover, and remove it.
7. Remove the filter from the case.
8. Install a new filter in the case.
▶ Put the **AIR FLOW** arrow directed side down.

Interior Care

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust before using a cloth.
Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt.
Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts. Let the belts air dry. Wipe the openings of the seat belt anchorages using a clean cloth.



1 Opening

Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle. Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches. Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.
If a silicone based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discolouration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles.
Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or petrol.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.
Do not place used cloths on top of resin based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

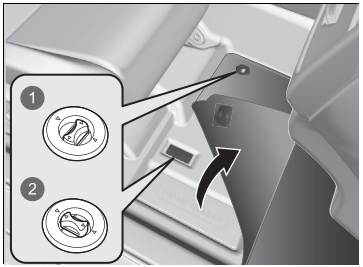
Be careful not to spill a liquid type air freshener.

Continued

Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

Floor Mats*



The driver's floor mat hooks over the floor anchors, which keep the mat from sliding forward. To remove a mat for cleaning, turn the anchor knobs to the unlock position. When reinstalling the mat after cleaning, turn the knobs to the lock position.
Do not put additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat.

1. Unlock
2. Lock

Cleaning the Window

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

Be careful not to spill fluids, such as water or glass cleaner, on or around the cover of both the front wide view camera and the rainfall/light sensor.

Floor Mats*

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchors.
Position any rear seat floor mats properly. If not properly positioned, the floor mats can interfere with the front seat functions.

* Not available on all models

Maintaining Genuine Leather*

To properly clean leather:

1. Use a vacuum or soft dry cloth first to remove any dirt or dust.
2. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a solution comprised of 90% water and 10% neutral soap.
3. Wipe away any soap residue with a clean damp cloth.
4. Wipe away residual water and allow leather to air dry in the shade.

Alcantara® Care*

After having dusted the material, moisten a soft cloth with clean lukewarm water, wring it dry and blot gently to remove any dirt. Once dry, lightly brush with a soft brush.

Maintaining Genuine Leather*

It is important to clean or wipe away dirt or dust as soon as possible. Spills can soak into leather resulting in stains. Dirt or dust can cause abrasions in the leather. In addition, please note that some dark coloured clothing can rub onto the leather seats resulting in discolouration or stains.

* Not available on all models

Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive. Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

■ Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap are stuck to painted surfaces.

■ Using an Automated Car Wash

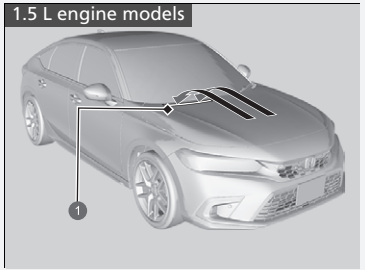
- Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.
- Fold in the door mirrors.
- For models equipped with automatic intermittent wipers, turn the wipers off.

■ Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.
- Do not spray water directly onto the camera or the area around it. Water may enter the lens and cause the camera to malfunction.

Washing the Vehicle

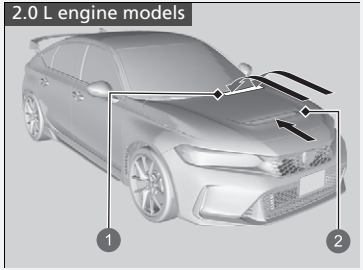
Do not spray water into the air intake and bonnet intake* vents. It can cause a malfunction.



1 Air Intake Vents

* Not available on all models

Washing the Vehicle



1 Air Intake Vents
2 Bonnet Intake Vent

Lock the doors when washing the vehicle.
Do not spray water onto the fuel fill door directly. A high-pressure spray may cause it to open.

If you need to lift the wiper arms away from the windscreen, first set the wiper arms to the maintenance position.

➡ **Changing the Front Wiper Blade** P. 633

Continued

Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps to protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

If you get petrol, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin coated parts, they may be stained or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

Maintaining Aluminium Wheels

Aluminium is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminium alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their lustre or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

Applying Wax

NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

■ Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.
Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.
However, if you see large amounts of water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windscreen. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any accessories over areas marked **SRS Airbag**, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on the sides of the rear seats*, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows.
  Accessories installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
  ➡ **Fuses** P. 708
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

⚠WARNING

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

When properly installed, mobile phones, alarms, two-way radios, radio antennas, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags and anti-lock brakes.

Honda Genuine accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.

* Not available on all models

Modifications

Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.

Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet your country's and local regulations.

The on-board diagnostic port (OBD-II/SAE J1962 connector) installed on this vehicle is intended to be used with automobile system diagnostic devices or with other devices that Honda has approved. Use of any other type of device may adversely affect the vehicle's electronic systems or allow them to be compromised, possibly resulting in a system malfunction, drained battery, or other unexpected problems.

Do not modify or attempt to repair any of the electrical components.

Handling the Unexpected

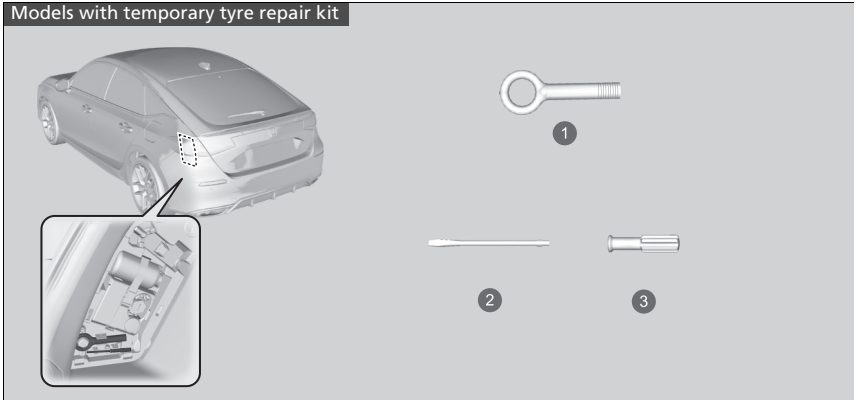
This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.

Tools 662
If a Tyre Goes Flat
Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre..... 664
Changing a Flat Tyre 679
Handling of the Jack..... 688
Engine Does Not Start
Checking the Engine..... 689
If the Keyless Remote/Card Key* Battery is Weak 691
Emergency Engine Start 693
Emergency Engine Stop 694
If the Battery Is Dead 695
Shift Lever Does Not Move..... 698
Overheating 699
Indicator, Coming On/Blinking
If the Engine oil pressure low Warning Appears 703
If the Charging System Indicator Comes On 704
If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks 704
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks 705
If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On..... 706
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On 707
Fuses..... 708
Emergency Towing..... 715
If You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door.. 716
If You Cannot Open the Hatch 717

* Not available on all models

Types of Tools

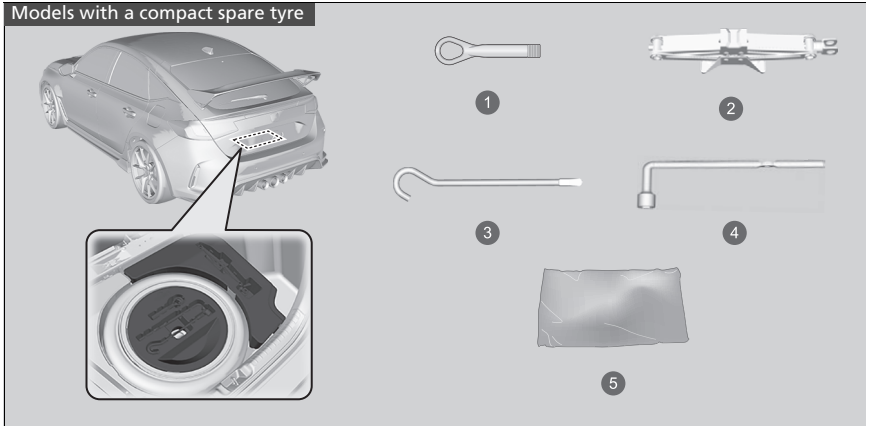
Models with temporary tyre repair kit



1. Detachable Towing Hook
2. Flat-tip Screwdriver
3. Grip

Types of Tools

The tools are stored in the luggage area.



1. Detachable Towing Hook
2. Jack
3. Jack Handle Bar
4. Wheel Nut Wrench/Jack Handle
5. Storage Bag

Models with temporary tyre repair kit

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre

If the tyre has a large cut or is otherwise severely damaged, you will need to have the vehicle towed. If the tyre only has a small puncture, from a nail for instance, you can use the temporary tyre repair kit so that you can drive to the nearest service station for a more permanent repair.

If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place.

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.

Continuously variable transmission models

2. Put the transmission into P.

Manual transmission models

2. Put the transmission into R.

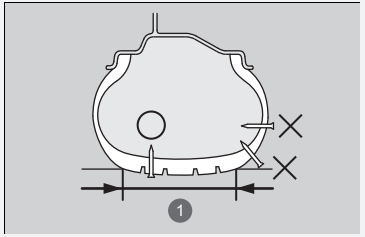
All models

3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre

The kit should not be used in the following situations. Instead, contact a dealer or a roadside assistant to have the vehicle towed.

- The tyre sealant has expired.
- More than one tyre is punctured.
- The puncture or cut is larger than 4 mm.
- The tyre side wall is damaged or the puncture is outside the contact area.



1 Contact Area

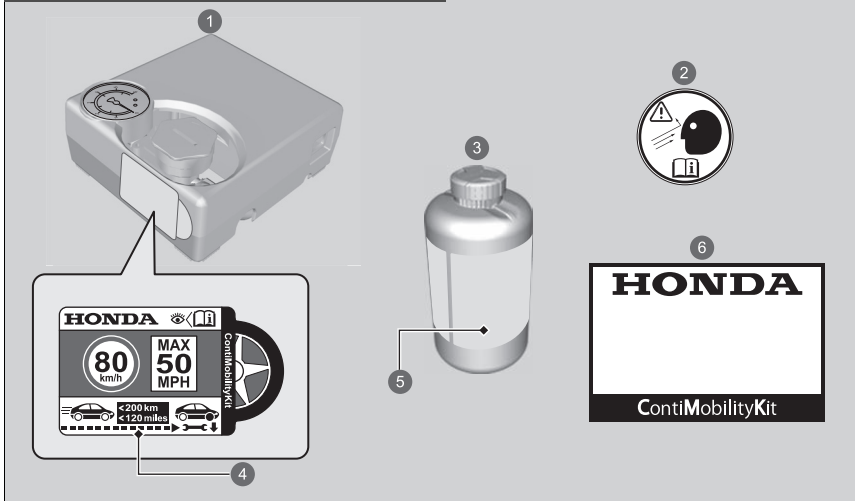
When the puncture is:	Kit Use
Smaller than 4 mm	Yes
Larger than 4 mm	No

- Damage has been caused by driving with the tyres extremely under inflated.
- The tyre bead is no longer seated.
- The rim is damaged.

Do not remove a nail or screw that punctured the tyre. If you remove it from the tyre, you may not be able to repair the puncture using the kit.

Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre

Australian, New Zealand and Vietanmese models



1. Air Compressor
2. Wheel Label
3. Sealant Bottle
4. Speed Restriction Label
5. Expiration Date
6. Handling Manual

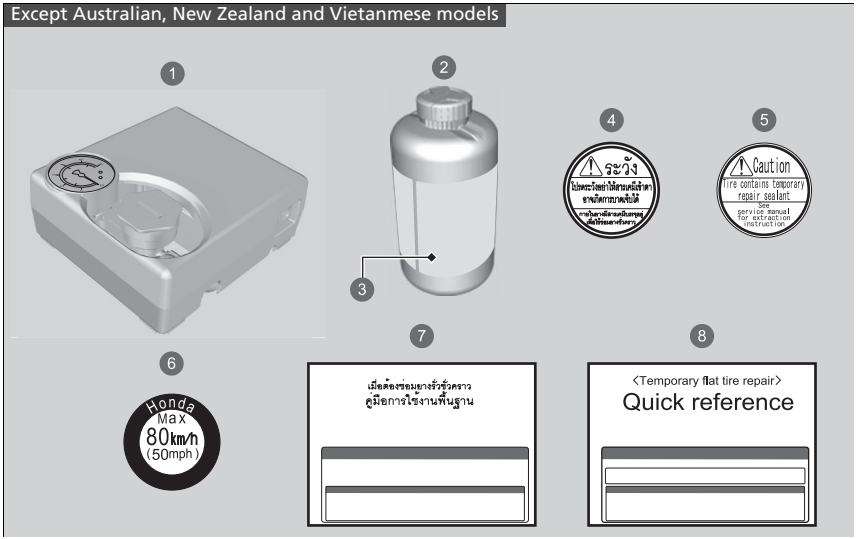
Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre

Australian, New Zealand and Vietanmese models

Speed restriction label are applied to the side of the temporary tyre repair kit.

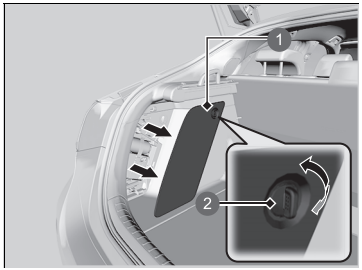
When making a temporary repair, carefully read the instruction manual provided with the kit.

Continued

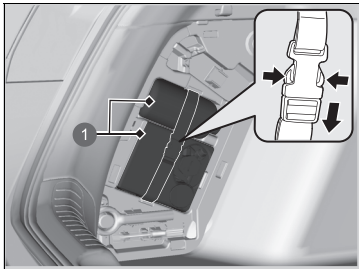


1. Air Compressor
2. Sealant Bottle
3. Expiration Date
4. Wheel Label*1
5. Wheel Label*2
6. Speed Restriction Label
7. Handling Manual*1
8. Handling Manual*2

*1: Thai models
*2: Hong Kong, Macanese, Malaysian and Philippine models



❶ Lid
❷ Knob

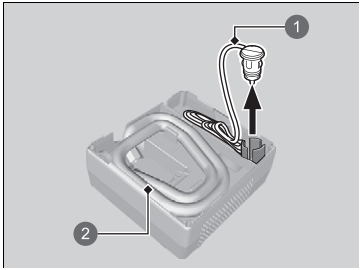


❶ Temporary Tyre Repair Kit

1. Remove the lid on left side of the luggage area by rotating the knob, then take the kit out from inside.
2. Place the kit, face up, on flat ground near the flat tyre, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.

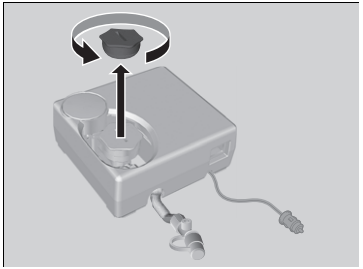
Continued

Injecting Sealant and Air



1. Take the air compressor hose and plug cord out of the back of the air compressor.

1 Plug Cord
2 Air Compressor Hose



2. Remove the cap from the air compressor.

Injecting Sealant and Air

⚠WARNING

Tyre sealant contains substances that are harmful and can be fatal if swallowed.

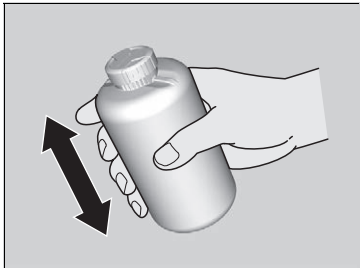
If accidentally swallowed, do not induce vomiting. Drink plenty of water and get medical attention immediately.

For skin or eye contact, flush with cool water and get medical attention if necessary.

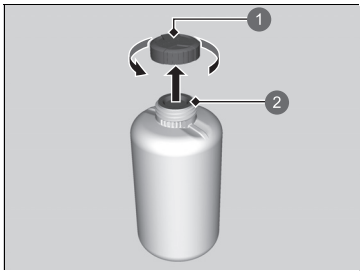
Keep the sealant bottle out of the reach of children.

In cold temperatures, the sealant may not flow easily. In this situation, warm it by keeping the bottle in the passenger compartment before using.

The sealant can permanently stain clothing and other materials. Be careful during handling and wipe away any spills immediately.



3. Shake the bottle well.



❶ Bottle Cap
❷ Not Removed

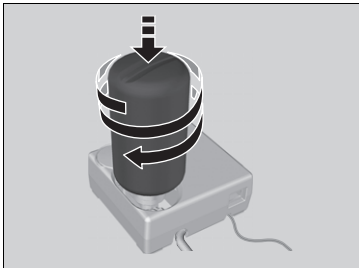
4. Remove the bottle cap.
▶ Do not remove the sealed cover.

Injecting Sealant and Air

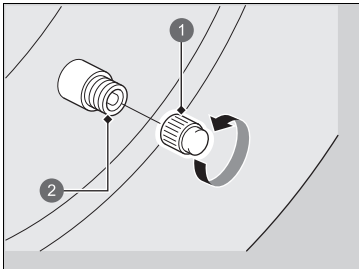
Do not remove the empty bottle after injecting the sealant.

See a Honda dealer for a replacement of sealant bottle and proper disposal of the empty bottle.

Continued

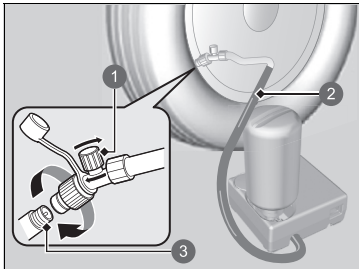


5. Screw the sealed bottle onto the air compressor.
▶ Screw the bottle tightly so that it does not become loose.

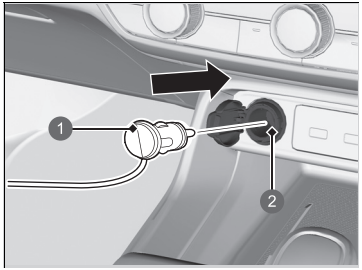


6. Unscrew the valve cap.

❶ Valve Cap
❷ Valve



1. Air Valve
2. Air Compressor Hose
3. Valve



1. Plug
2. Accessory Power Socket

7. Screw the air compressor hose onto the tyre valve.

▶ Make sure the air valve is closed and the air compressor is turned off.

8. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.

➔ **Accessory Power Socket** P. 245

9. Start the engine.

➔ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 110

Injecting Sealant and Air

⚠WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid buildup of toxic carbon monoxide.

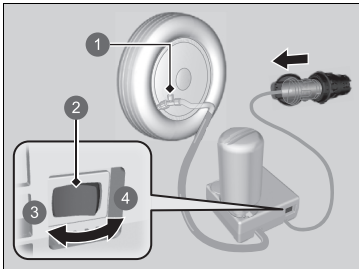
Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

Turn the air compressor off when connecting the air compressor hose.

You hear a motor sound coming from the activated air compressor. This is normal.

If the specified air pressure is not reached within 10 minutes, the tyre may be too severely damaged for the kit to provide the necessary seal and your vehicle will need to be towed.

Continued



1. Air Valve
2. Switch
3. OFF
4. ON

10. Turn on the air compressor and inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.
- ▶ The compressor starts injecting sealant and air into the tyre.
- ▶ Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

11. After the air pressure reaches to specified pressure, turn off the compressor.
- ▶ Check the air pressure gauge on the air compressor.
- ▶ If overinflated, release the air by turning the air valve. Be careful not to spill any sealant.

12. Unplug the plug from the accessory power socket.

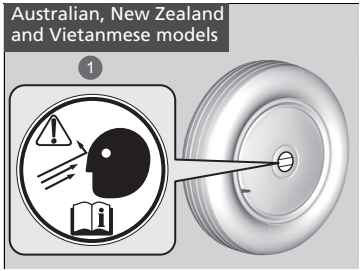
13. Unscrew the air compressor hose from the tyre valve. Install the hose cap.
- ▶ Be careful not to spill any sealant when the hose is disconnected. Wipe away any spills.

Injecting Sealant and Air

If you want to measure the air pressure using a gauge, turn the air compressor off first.

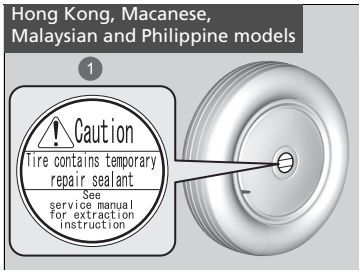
Inform the use of tyre sealant when you ask a Honda dealer or the road assistant service for replacing or repairing the flat tyre.

This air compressor is designed for the automotive tyre. Check the following:
- The power supply of the air compressor is limited to your vehicle's 12-volt DC accessory power socket.
- Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 10 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.
  Make it cool down when using the compressor continuously.



❶ Wheel Label

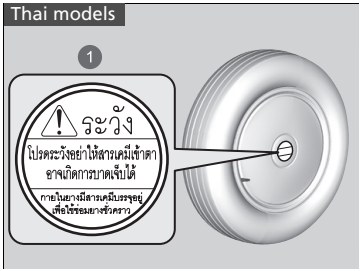
14. Apply the wheel label to the flat surface of the wheel.
▶ The wheel surface must be clean to ensure the label adheres properly.



❶ Wheel Label

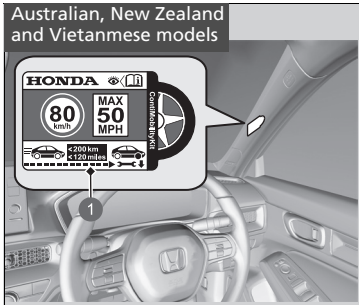
15. Store the temporary tyre repair kit in the luggage area.
▶ Do not remove the sealant bottle from the air compressor.

Continued

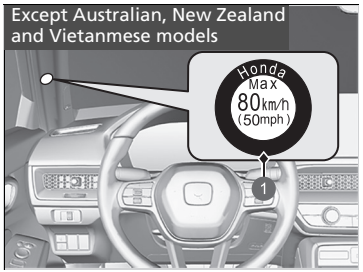


1 Wheel Label

Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre



❶ Speed Restriction Label



❶ Speed Restriction Label

1. Apply the speed restriction label to the location as shown.

2. Drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes or 3 to 10 kilometres.

▶ Do not exceed 80 km/h.

3. Stop the vehicle in a safe place.

Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre

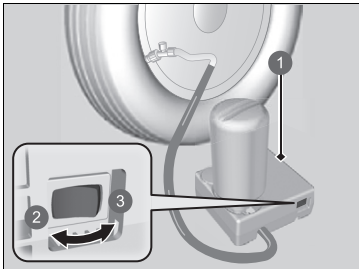
⚠WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid buildup of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Continued



1 Air Compressor
2 OFF
3 ON

4. Recheck the air pressure using the gauge on the air compressor.
▶ Do not turn the air compressor on to check the pressure.

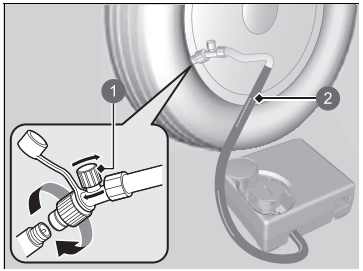
5. If the air pressure is
- Less than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi): Do not add air and continue driving. The leak is too severe. Call for help and have your vehicle towed.
  ➡ **Emergency Towing** P. 715
- Specified air pressure (See the label on driver's doorjamb.) or more: Continue driving until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 80 km/h.
- Greater than 130 kPa (1.3 bar, 19 psi), but less than specified air pressure (See the label on driver's doorjamb.): Inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.
  ➡ **Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre** P. 677

And repeat steps 2 to 4 until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 80 km/h.
▶ The distance to the nearest service station has to be within about 200 kilometres.

6. Repackage and properly stow the kit.

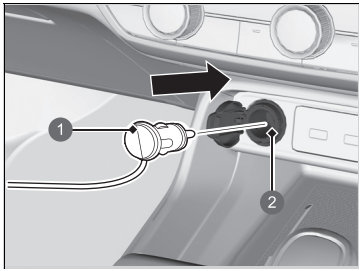
Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

You can use the kit to inflate a non-punctured under-inflated tyre.



❶ Air Valve
❷ Air Compressor Hose

1. Take the air compressor out of the luggage area.
2. Place the kit, face up, on flat ground near the tyre to be inflated, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.
3. Remove the valve cap.
4. Attach the air compressor hose onto the tyre valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.



❶ Plug
❷ Accessory Power Socket

5. Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
   ▶ Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.
   ➡ **Accessory Power Socket** P. 245
6. Start the engine.
   ➡ **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 110

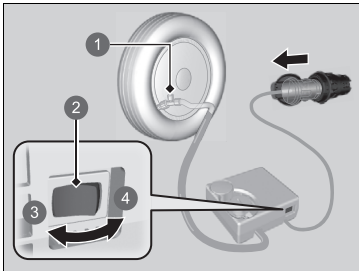
Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

⚠WARNING

Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid buildup of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

Continued



1. Air Valve
2. Switch
3. OFF
4. ON

7. Turn the air compressor switch on to inflate the tyre.
- ▶ The compressor starts to inject air into the tyre.
- ▶ If you have started the engine, leave it running while injecting air.

8. Inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.

9. Turn off the kit.
- ▶ Check the pressure gauge on the air compressor.
- ▶ If overinflated, turn the air valve to deflate.

10. Turn off the engine, then unplug the air compressor from the accessory power socket.

11. Unscrew the air compressor hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.

12. Store the air compressor in the luggage area.

Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

NOTICE

Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 10 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

Models with a compact spare tyre

Changing a Flat Tyre

If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place. Replace the flat tyre with a compact spare tyre. Go to a dealer as soon as possible to have the full-size tyre repaired or replaced.

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
2. Put the transmission into R.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Changing a Flat Tyre

Follow compact spare precautions:
Periodically check the tyre pressure of the compact spare. It should be set to the specified pressure.
Specified Pressure: 420 kPa (4.2 bar, 60 psi)

When driving with the compact spare tyre, keep the vehicle speed under 80 km/h. Replace with a full-size tyre as soon as possible.

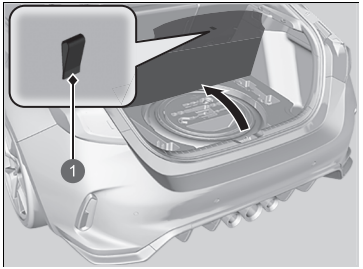
The compact spare tyre and wheel in your vehicle are specifically for this model. Do not use them with another vehicle. Do not use another type of compact spare tyre or wheel with your vehicle.

A compact spare tyre gives a harsher ride and less traction on some road surfaces. Use greater caution while driving.

The compact spare tyre is smaller than the regular tyre. Your vehicle's ground clearance reduces when the compact spare tyre is installed. Driving over road debris or bumps could possibly damage the underside of your vehicle.

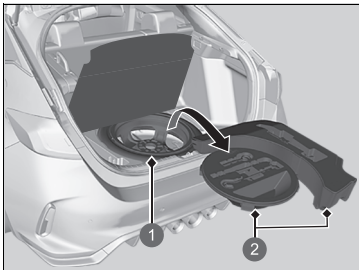
Continued

Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tyre



❶ Strap

1. Pull the strap on the floor lid and open the lid.



❶ Spare Tyre
❷ Tool Case

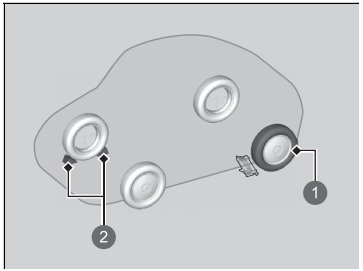
2. Take the tool case out of the luggage area.
3. Take the jack and wheel nut wrench out of the tool case.
4. Unscrew the wing bolt, and remove the spacer cone. Then, remove the spare tyre.

Changing a Flat Tyre

WARNING: The jack can only be used for helping an emergency vehicle breakdown, not for changing the regular seasonal tyre or any other normal maintenance or repair operation.

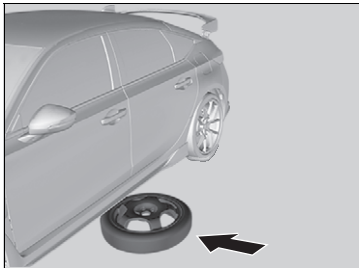
NOTICE

Do not use the jack if it doesn't work properly. Call your dealer or a professional towing service.



❶ The tyre to be replaced.
❷ Wheel Blocks

5. Place a wheel block or rock in front and rear of the wheel diagonal to the flat tyre.



6. Place the compact spare tyre (wheel side up) under the vehicle body, near the tyre that needs to be replaced.

Changing a Flat Tyre

NOTICE

Do not mount the compact spare on the front. If mounted on the front, the compact spare, smaller in size than the full-size tyre, may damage the differential.

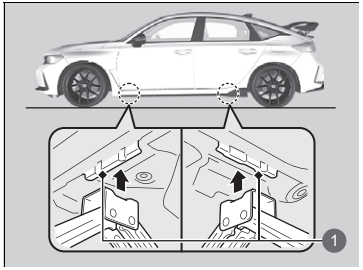
If either front tyre goes flat, remove the rear tyre on the same side, and mount the compact spare on the rear and the rear tyre on the front.

Do not use more than one compact spare tyre at the same time.

Continued

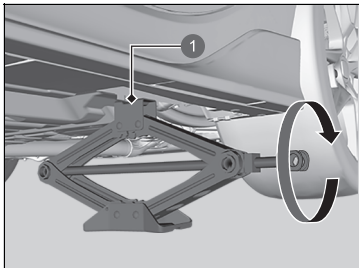
7. Loosen each wheel nut about one turn using the wheel nut wrench.

How to Set Up the Jack



❶ Jacking Points

1. Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tyre to be changed.



❶ Jacking Point

2. Turn the end bracket clockwise as shown in the image until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.
▶ Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.

Continued

How to Set Up the Jack

⚠WARNING

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

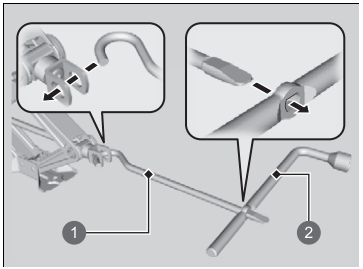
Follow the directions for changing a tyre exactly, and no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

WARNING: The jack shall be placed on a flat and stable surface on the same level as the vehicle is parked.

Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

Use the jack provided in your vehicle.
Other jacks may not support the weight (“load”) or may not fit the jacking point.

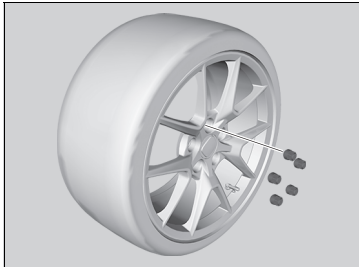
The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely:
- Do not use while the engine is running.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.



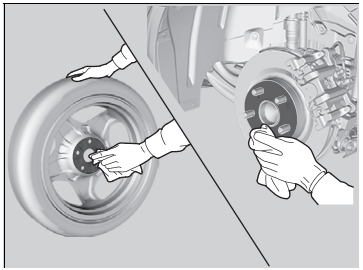
1. Jack Handle Bar
2. Wheel Nut Wrench as Jack Handle

3. Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tyre is off the ground.

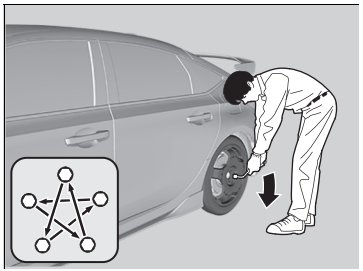
Replacing the Flat Tyre



1. Remove the wheel nuts and flat tyre.



2. Wipe the mounting surfaces of the wheel with a clean cloth.
3. Mount the compact spare tyre.
4. Screw the wheel nuts until they touch the lips around the mounting holes, then stop rotating.



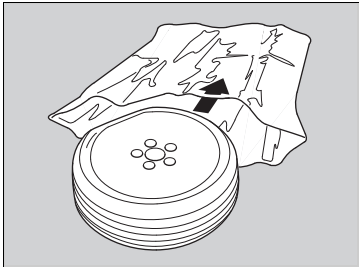
5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack. Tighten the wheel nuts in the order indicated in the image. Go around, tightening the nuts, two to three times in this order.
Wheel nut torque:
127 N·m (13 kgf·m, 94 lbf·ft)

Continued

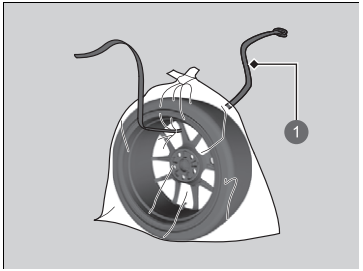
Replacing the Flat Tyre

Do not over tighten the wheel nuts by applying extra torque using your foot or a pipe.

Storing the Flat Tyre



1. Put the flat tyre in the storage bag provided with your vehicle.
   ▶ The storage bag is in the tool case.
2. Knot the top of the storage bag.
3. Securely put the jack, jack handle bar and wheel nut wrench back in the tool case.



4. Bore through the bag, and pass the holding belt through the hole of the bag and the wheel of the flat tyre as shown.

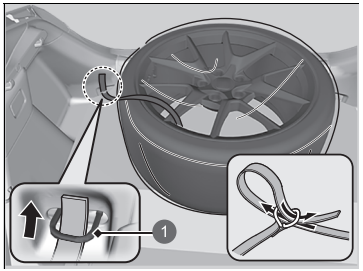
1 Belt

Storing the Flat Tyre

⚠WARNING

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and can seriously injure the occupants.

Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

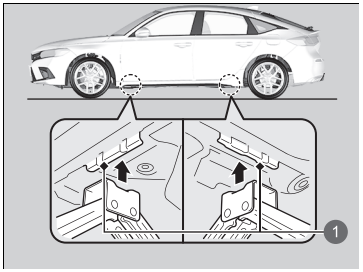


1 Rear Anchorage

5. Place the flat tyre in the luggage area, and thread the belt through the rear anchorage as shown.
6. Pass the belt through the ring, and tighten the belt to secure the flat tyre in place.

Models with temporary tyre repair kit

Your vehicle has jacking points as shown.
When replacing your tyres, consult a dealer.



1 Jacking Points

Checking the Engine

If the engine does not start, check the starter.

Starter condition	Checklist
Starter doesn't turn or turns over slowly. The battery may be dead. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.	**Check for a message on the driver information interface.** If the **To start, touch start button with emblem side of remote** message appear ➡ **If the Keyless Remote/Card Key* Battery is Weak P.** 691
	Check the fuses. Check all fuses, or have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Inspecting and Changing Fuses** P. 712
The starter turns over normally but the engine doesn't start. There may be a problem with a fuse. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.	**Review the engine start procedure.** Follow its instructions, and try to start the engine again. ➡ **Starting the Engine** P. 397
	Check the immobilizer system indicator. When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the engine cannot be started. ➡ **Immobilizer System** P. 201 ➡ **Immobilizer System Indicator** P. 123
	Check the fuel level. There should be enough fuel in the tank. ➡ **Fuel Gauge** P. 135
	Check the fuses. Check all fuses, or have your vehicle checked by a dealer. ➡ **Inspecting and Changing Fuses** P. 712
	If the problem continues: ➡ **Emergency Towing** P. 715

* Not available on all models

Continued

If you cannot start the engine after checking all the items in the list above, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle or booster battery to jump start it.

➡ **If the Battery Is Dead** P. 695

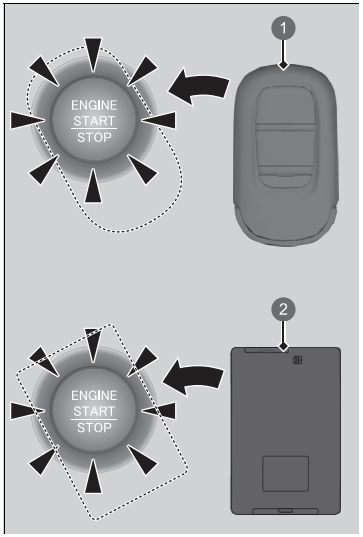
Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for more than 15 seconds.

Depending on the situation, it may be possible to temporarily start the engine using the emergency start procedure.

➡ **Emergency Engine Start** P. 693

If the Keyless Remote/Card Key* Battery is Weak

If the beeper sounds, the **To start, touch start button with emblem side of remote** message appears on the driver information interface, the **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes, and the engine won't start, start the engine as follows:

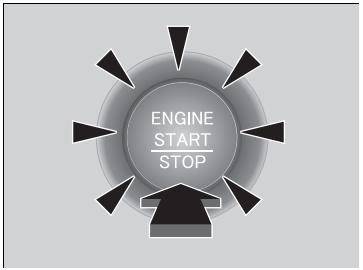


1. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
   ▶ The beeper sounds and the **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes for about 30 seconds.
2. Touch the centre of the **ENGINE START/STOP** button with the **H** logo on the keyless remote or card key* while the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is flashing. The buttons on the keyless remote or card key* should be facing you.
   ▶ The beeper sounds, and the **ENGINE START/STOP** button stays on for about 10 seconds.

❶ Keyless Remote
❷ Card Key*

* Not available on all models

Continued



3. Depress the brake pedal (continuously variable transmission) or clutch pedal (manual transmission) and press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is on.

▶ The engine starts.

▶ If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.

Continuously variable transmission models

Emergency Engine Start

If the engine does not start using the normal engine starting procedure, you may be able to start it using the emergency starting procedure below.

Do not use this procedure if it is not an emergency.

1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.
2. Check that the transmission is in P, then set the power mode to ACCESSORY.
3. Firmly depress the brake pedal, then press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for at least 15 seconds.

This should be considered a system malfunction even if you are able to start the engine using the above procedure.
Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

Emergency Engine Start

Refer to the following if you cannot move the shift lever out of the P position.

Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 698

Emergency Engine Stop

The **ENGINE START/STOP** button may be used to stop the engine due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must stop the engine, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button three times.

The steering wheel will not lock. However, because turning off the engine disables the power assist the engine provides to the steering and braking systems, it will require significantly more physical effort and time to steer and slow the vehicle. Use both feet on the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle and stop immediately in a safe place. With manual transmission models you can also downshift the transmission to utilize engine braking.

Continuously variable transmission models

The power mode is in ACCESSORY when the engine is stopped.
To change the mode to VEHICLE OFF, put the transmission into P after the vehicle comes to a complete stop. Then, press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice without depressing the brake pedal.

Manual transmission models

The power mode changes to VEHICLE OFF.

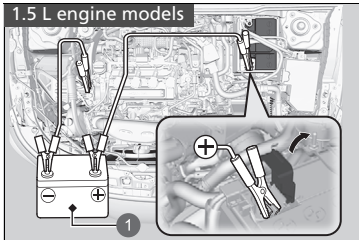
Emergency Engine Stop

NOTICE

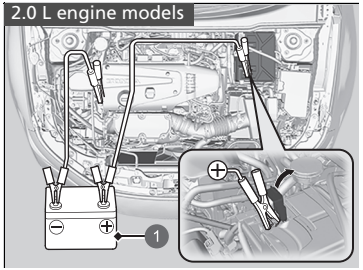
Do not press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the engine to be turned off.
If you press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while driving, the beeper sounds.

Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the engine, then open the bonnet.



❶ Booster Battery



❶ Booster Battery

1. Open the cover on the positive ⊕ terminal.
2. Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's battery ⊕ terminal.
3. Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery ⊕ terminal.
   - ▶ Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
   - ▶ When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.

Continued

If the Battery Is Dead

⚠WARNING

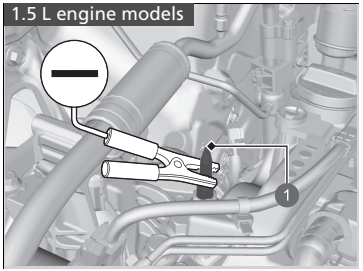
A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

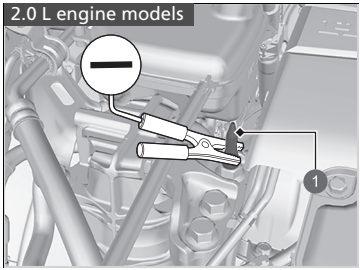
NOTICE

If a battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen battery can cause it to rupture.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.



1 Stud Bolt



1 Stud Bolt

4. Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery ⊖ terminal.
5. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the stud bolt as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
6. If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its rpm slightly.
7. Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

If the Battery Is Dead

Battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.

■ What to Do After the Engine Starts

Once your vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

1. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's ground.
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊖ terminal.
3. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's battery ⊕ terminal.
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery ⊕ terminal.

Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

If the Battery Is Dead

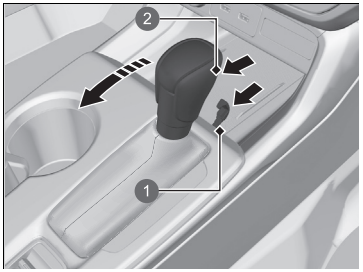
The Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow*, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF*, Safety Support indicators may come on when you turn the power mode to on after reconnecting a battery.
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. Each indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

* Not available on all models

Continuously variable transmission models

Follow the procedure below if you cannot move the shift lever out of the P position.

Releasing the Lock



1 Shift Lock Release Slot
2 Release Button

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
3. Remove the built-in key from the keyless remote.
4. Insert the key into the shift lock release slot.
5. While pushing the key in, press the shift lever release button, and place the shift lever into N.
   ▶ The lock is now released. Have the shift lever checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

1.5 L engine models

How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- The **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** message appears on the driver information interface.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

■ First thing to do

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.

2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.

▶ **No steam or spray present:** Keep the engine running and open the bonnet.

▶ **Steam or spray is present:** Turn off the engine and wait until it subsides. Then, open the bonnet.

How to Handle Overheating

⚠WARNING

Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

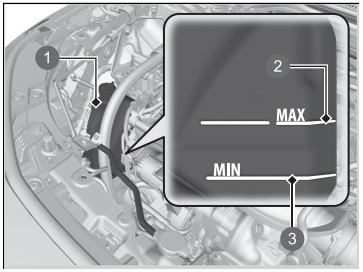
Do not open the bonnet if steam is coming out.

NOTICE

Continuing to drive with the **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** message on the driver information interface may damage the engine.

Continued

■ Next thing to do



❶ Reserve Tank
❷ **MAX**
❸ **MIN**

1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and stop the engine once the **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** message on the driver information interface disappears.
   ▶ If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately stop the engine.
2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.
   ▶ If the coolant level in the engine coolant reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
   ▶ If there is no coolant in the engine coolant reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

■ Last thing to do

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, restart it and check the driver information interface.

If the **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** message does not appear, resume driving. If it appears again, contact a dealer for repairs.

How to Handle Overheating

⚠WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

2.0 L engine models

How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- The temperature gauge is at the H mark or the engine suddenly loses power.
- The **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** message appears on the driver information interface.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

■ First thing to do

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.

2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.

▶ **No steam or spray present:** Keep the engine running and open the bonnet.

▶ **Steam or spray is present:** Turn off the engine and wait until it subsides. Then, open the bonnet.

Continued

How to Handle Overheating

⚠WARNING

Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the bonnet if steam is coming out.

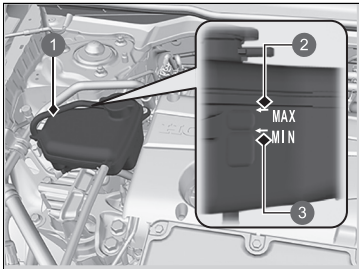
NOTICE

Continuing to drive with the temperature gauge at the H mark may damage the engine.

NOTICE

Continuing to drive with the **Engine temperature too hot. Do not drive. Allow engine to cool.** message on the driver information interface may damage the engine.

■ Next thing to do



❶ Reserve Tank
❷ **MAX**
❸ **MIN**

1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and stop the engine once the temperature gauge goes down.
   ▶ If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately stop the engine.
2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.
   ▶ If the coolant level in the engine coolant reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
   ▶ If there is no coolant in the engine coolant reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the reserve tank cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

■ Last thing to do

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, restart it and check the temperature gauge. If the temperature gauge has gone down, resume driving. If it has not gone down, contact a dealer for repairs.

How to Handle Overheating

⚠WARNING

Removing the reserve tank cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the reserve tank cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

If the Engine oil pressure low Warning Appears

■ **Reasons for the warning to appear**

Appears when the engine oil pressure is low.

■ **What to do as soon as the warning appears**

1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.
2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

■ **What to do after parking the vehicle**

1. Stop the engine and let it sit for approximately three minutes.
2. Open the bonnet and check the oil level.
   ▶ Add oil as necessary.
   ➔ **Oil Check** P. 613
3. Start the engine and check the **Engine oil pressure low** warning.
   ▶ The warning disappears: Start driving again.
   ▶ The warning does not disappear within 10 seconds: Immediately stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs.

If the Engine oil pressure low Warning Appears

NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

If the Charging System Indicator Comes On

■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

Comes on when there is a problem with the charging system.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

Stop in a safe place and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the engine. Restarting the engine may rapidly discharge the battery.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

■ **Reasons for the indicator lamp to come on or blink**

- Comes on when there is a problem with the engine emissions control system.
- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.

■ **What to do when the indicator lamp comes on**

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

■ **What to do when the indicator lamp blinks**

Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 50 km/h or less. Have your vehicle inspected.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks

(Red)

■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on while driving**

Depress the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. If necessary, downshift the transmission to slow the vehicle using engine braking.

■ **Reasons for the indicator to blink**

- There is a problem with the electric parking brake system.

■ **What to do when the indicator blinks**

- Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks

Have your vehicle repaired immediately.
It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary downshift the gears.

If the brake system indicator (red) and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking.
Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work.
Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

➡ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On** P. 707

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On

■ **Reasons for the indicator to come on**

- Comes on when there is a problem with the EPS system.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place and restart the engine.
  If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

- If **Do not drive** displays on the driver information interface, immediately stop in a safe place and contact a dealer.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On

(Red)

(Amber)

■ **If the brake system indicator (red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, release the parking brake manually or automatically.**

➡ **Parking Brake** P. 555

- If the brake system indicator (red) continuously comes on or blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, stop the vehicle in a safe place and have it inspected by a dealer immediately.
  ▶ Preventing the vehicle from moving.

  Continuously variable transmission models
  Put the transmission into P.

  Manual transmission models
  Put the transmission into 1 or R.

- If only the brake system indicator (red) is turned off, avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On

If you apply the parking brake, you may not be able to release it.

If the brake system indicator (red) and the brake system indicator (amber) come on at the same time, the parking brake is working.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work because it is checking the system.

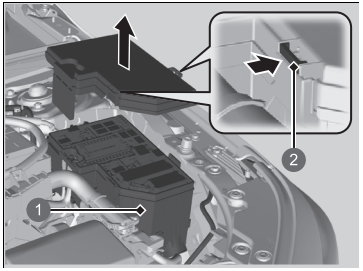
If you repeatedly operate the electric parking brake in a short period of time, the brake stops operating to prevent heating of the system and the indicator blinks.
It returns to its original state in approximately 1 minute.

Fuse Locations

If any electrical devices are not working, set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

Engine Compartment Fuse Box

Located near the battery. Push the tabs to open the box.
Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.



1 Fuse Box
2 Tab

Circuit protected and fuse rating

		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		Battery	125 A
2	–	–	40 A
	–	–	40 A
		Fuse Box Option	60 A
	–	–	40 A
		Fuse Box Option2	40 A
		DC/DC2*	(30 A)
		Fuse Box Main	60 A
3	–	–	40 A
	–	–	40 A
	–	–	40 A
		Rear Defroster	40 A
	–	–	40 A
		Blower Motor	40 A
	–	–	40 A
4	–	–	30 A
		ABS/VSA Motor	40 A
		DC/DC*	(30 A)
	–	–	30 A
		IG Main	30 A
	–	–	30 A
		Relay Module2	30 A
5		Starter Magnetic SW	30 A
		Front Wiper	30 A
		EPS	70 A
		Relay Module1	30 A*1
		RFC	50 A*2
		ABS/VSA FSR	40 A
		Main Fan	30 A*1
		Relay Module1	30 A*2
		Fuse Box Main2	40 A
6		Sub Fan	30 A*1
	–	–	–*2
7		IG Main2	30 A
8	–	–	–*1
		Active Exhaust Valve	7.5 A*2
9		–	(30 A)
10		AUDIO SUB	(7.5 A)
11	–	–	–
12	–	–	–
13		–	(10 A)

*1:1.5 L engine models
*2:2.0 L engine models

* Not available on all models

		Circuit Protected	Amps
14	–	–	–
15		Front Fog Lights*	(10 A)
16		MG Clutch	10 A*1 (10 A)*2
17		Washer	15 A
18		Horn	10 A
19		BACKUP	15 A
20		AUDIO	(15 A)
21	– 	– RFC RLY CL+	–*1 7.5 A*2
22		DBW	15 A
23		–	(20 A)
24		BACKUP FI-ECU	10 A
25		IGP	15 A
26		TCU*	(15 A)
27		LCM L	(15 A)
28	 –	INJ –	(15 A)*1 –*2
29		Stop Lights	10 A
30		LCM R	(15 A)
31		IG Coil	15 A
32	–	–	–
33		Hazard	15 A

		Circuit Protected	Amps
34		AUDIO SUB VST*	(7.5 A)
35	–	–	–
36		AUDIO VST MAIN*	(30 A)
37		BACKUP2	(30 A)*1
38	–	–	–
39	–	–	–
40		VBACT*1 –*2	(10 A)
41		IGPS[LAF]	10 A
42		IG2 MON2 –	7.5 A*1 (7.5 A)*2
43	–	–	–*2
44		–	(30 A)*2

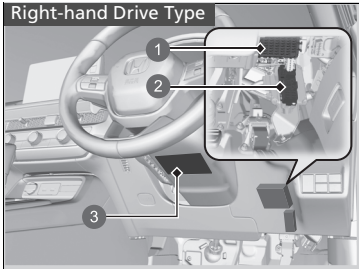
*1:1.5 L engine models
*2:2.0 L engine models

* Not available on all models

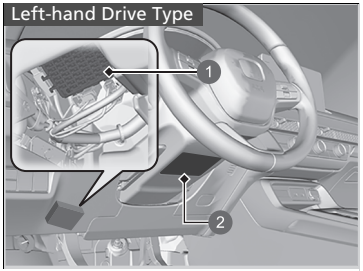
Continued

Interior Fuse Box

Located under the dashboard.
Fuse locations are shown on the label under the steering column.
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.



1. Fuse Box
2. Sub Fuse Box*
3. Fuse Label



1. Fuse Box
2. Fuse Label

Circuit protected and fuse rating

		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		Driver's Side Power Window	20 A
2		Passenger's Side Power Window	20 A
3		Rear Right Side Power Window	20 A
4		Rear Left Side Power Window	20 A
5		Option	10 A
6		SRS	10 A
7		Hatch MTR	10 A
8	–	–	–
9		Front Accessory Socket	20 A
10		Door Lock	20 A
11		METER	10 A
12		Option3 (ST CUT)	10 A
13		Option2 (RR WIP)	(10 A)
14		Option6 (VB SOL)	10 A
15		–	(10 A)
16		–	(20 A)
17		–	(10 A)
18	–	–	–
19	–	–	–

* Not available on all models

		Circuit Protected	Amps
20		Rear Fog Light*	(10 A)
21		–	(20 A)
22		keyless access system	10 A
23		–	(10 A)
24		–	(7.5 A)
25		IMG	10 A
26		SRS	10 A
27		ST CUT RLY	20 A
28		Option5	10 A
29		Fuel Pump	15 A
30		Left Side Door Unlock	10 A
31		Right Side Door Unlock	10 A
32	–	–	–
33	–	–	–
34	–	–	–
35	–	–	–
36		–	(20 A)
37		–	(15 A)
38	–	–	–
39		Right Side Door Lock	10 A
40		Driver's Power Seat (REC / RR H)*	(20 A)

		Circuit Protected	Amps
41		Driver's Power Seat (SLIDE / FR HI)*	(20 A)
42		–*1 Back Lights*2	(10 A)
43		AIRCON	10 A
44		Daytime Running Lights	10 A
45		ACC	10 A
46		ACC KEY LOCK	10 A
47		Left Side Door Lock	10 A
48		Front Seat Heaters*	20 A
49		Passenger's Power Seat (REC)*	(20 A)
50		–	(10 A)
51		–	(10 A)
52		–	(20 A)
53		Passenger's Power Seat (SLIDE)*	(20 A)
54		Option1 / Fuel Lid	10 A
55		AUDIO AMP*	(30 A)
56		Adaptive Damper System*	(30 A)

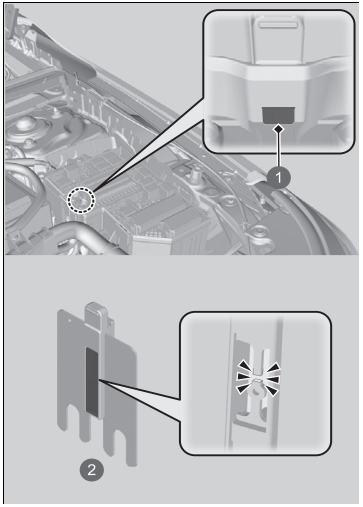
Sub Fuse Box

		Circuit Protected	Amps
A		BACKUP2 MAIN	(10 A)*1
B		AUDIO SUB VST	(7.5 A)*1
C		VST ACC	(10 A)*1
D		IG1 RELAY1	(10 A)*1
E		AUDIO VST MAIN	(15 A)*1
F		EOP	(20 A)*1
G	–	–	–*1
H		IG1 RELAY2	(10 A)*1

*1:1.5 L engine models
*2:2.0 L engine models

* Not available on all models

Inspecting and Changing Fuses



❶ Hole
❷ Main Fuse

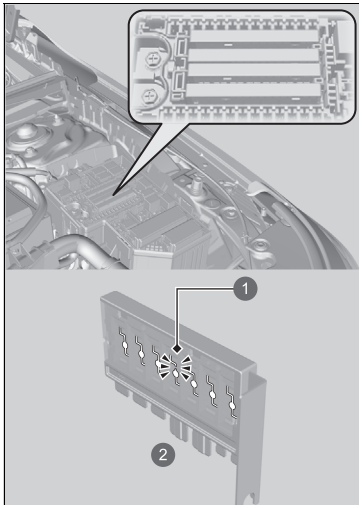
1. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). Turn headlights and all accessories off.
2. Remove the fuse box cover.
3. Check the large fuse in the engine compartment.
▶ Look at the fuse through the hole.
▶ If the fuse is blown, have it replaced by a dealer.

Inspecting and Changing Fuses

NOTICE
Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage on the fuse label.
➡ **Fuse Locations** P. 708
Replace a fuse with a spare fuse of the same specified amperage.

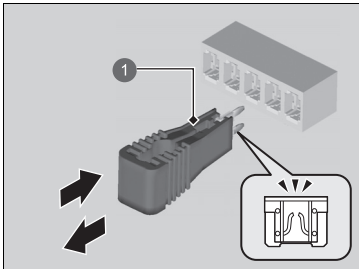
There is a fuse puller on the back of the engine compartment fuse box cover.



❶ Blown Fuse
❷ Combined Fuse

4. Check the combined fuses in the engine compartment fuse box.
▶ Look into the space between the fuses.
▶ If the fuse is blown, have it replaced by a dealer.

Continued



1 Fuse Puller

5. Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.
▶ If there is a blown fuse, remove it with the fuse puller and replace it with a new one.

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

■ Flatbed equipment

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.
This is the best way to transport your vehicle.

■ Wheel lift equipment

The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tyres and lift them off the ground. The rear tyres remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

Emergency Towing

NOTICE
Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

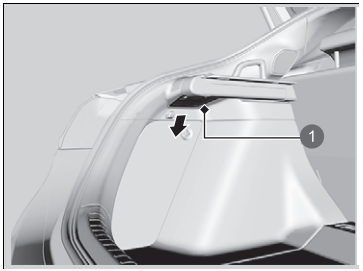
Make sure the parking brake is released. If you cannot release the parking brake, your vehicle must be transported by the flatbed equipment.
Parking Brake P. 555

NOTICE
Improper towing such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain.
It is very dangerous since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

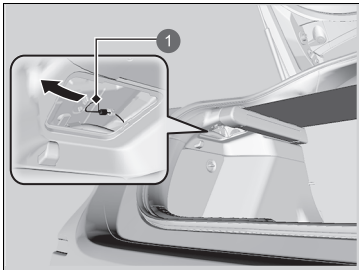
What to Do If Unable to Unlock the Fuel Fill Door

If you cannot unlock the fuel fill door, use the following procedure.



1. Open the hatch and remove the cover on the left side of luggage area.

1 Cover



2. Pull the release cord toward you.
   ▶ The release cord unlocks the fuel fill door when it is pulled.
3. Open the fuel fill door.
   ➔ **How to Refuel** P. 584

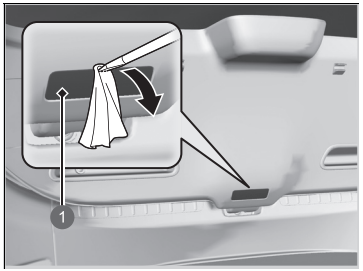
1 Release Cord

If You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door

After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

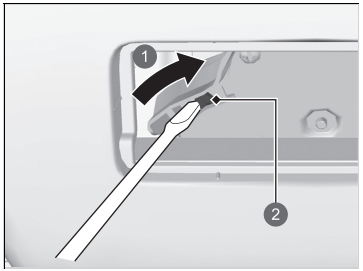
What to Do If Unable to Open the Hatch

If you cannot open the hatch, use the following procedure.



❶ Cover

1. Use a flat-tip screwdriver and remove the cover on the back of the hatch.
   ▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



❶ Sliding
❷ Lever

2. To open the hatch, push the hatch while sliding the lever with the flat-tip screw driver.

If You Cannot Open the Hatch

After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have your vehicle checked.

When you open the hatch from inside, make sure there is enough space around the hatch, and it does not hit anyone or any object.

Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

Specifications 720
Identification Numbers
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number 724
Devices that Emit Radio Waves* 726
Open Source Licence 730

* Not available on all models

1.5 L engine models

Vehicle Specifications

Model	Civic	
Curb Weight	1,369 kg	
Maximum Permissible Weight	1,840kg	
Maximum Permissible Axle Weight	Front	980 kg
	Rear	870 kg

Engine Specifications

Type	Water-cooled in-line 4-cylinder DOHC
Bore x Stroke	73.0 x 89.5 mm
Displacement	1,498 cm^3
Compression Ratio	10.3 : 1
Spark Plugs	NGK DILKAR8P8SY

Fuel

Type	Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher
Fuel Tank Capacity	47.0 L

Battery

Capacity	48Ah (5)/60Ah (20)

Idle Stop:
The battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed. If you need to replace the battery, make sure to select the specified type (LN2). Ask a dealer for more details.

Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	1.5 L

Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam)		LED
Headlights (High Beam)		LED
Fog Lights		LED
Front Turn Signal Lights		LED
Position/Daytime Running Lights		LED
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)		LED
Brake/Tail-lights		LED
Taillights		LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights		21 W (Amber)
Back-Up Lights		16 W
High-Mount Brake Light		LED
Rear Licence Plate Light		LED
Interior Lights		
	Map Lights	LED
	Ceiling Light	LED
	Vanity Mirror Lights	2 W
	Centre Pocket Light	LED
	Luggage Area Light	5 W
	Glove Box Light	LED
	Foot Lights	LED
	Ambient Lights	LED

■ Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFO-1234yf (R-1234yf)
Charge Quantity	445 – 495 g

■ Brake Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

■ Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda HCF-2	
Capacity	Change	3.7 L

■ Engine Oil

Recommended	Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30 ACEA A5/B5, API service SM or higher grade 0W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30	
Capacity	Change	3.2 L
	Change including filter	3.5 L

■ Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity	5.71 L (change including the remaining 0.65 L in the reserve tank)

■ Tyre

Regular	Size	235/40R18 95Y
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb
Wheel Size	Regular	18 × 8J

■ Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Solid disc
Parking	Electric Parking Brake

■ Vehicle Dimensions

Length		4,560 mm
Width		1,802 mm
Height		1,415 mm
Wheelbase		2,733 mm
Track	Front	1,537 mm
	Rear	1,577 mm

Continued

2.0 L engine models

■ Vehicle Specifications

Model	Civic TYPE R	
Curb Weight	1,422 kg*1 1,423 kg*2 1,424 kg*3 1,428 kg*4 1,429 kg*5 1,438 kg*6	
Maximum Permissible Weight	1,800 kg	
Maximum Permissible Axle Weight	Front	1,010 kg
	Rear	800 kg

*1: Hong Kong and Macanese models
*2: Thai models
*3: Malaysian and Vietnamese models
*4: Philippine models
*5: Australian and New Zealand models
*6: Indonesian models

■ Engine Specifications

Type	Water-cooled in-line 4-cylinder DOHC
Bore x Stroke	86.0 x 85.9 mm
Displacement	1996 cm^3
Compression Ratio	9.8 : 1
Spark Plugs	NGK ILZKAR8J8SY

■ Fuel

Type	Except Thai models Unleaded premium petrol, research octane number 95 or higher Thai models Unleaded premium petrol/gasohol up to E10 (90% petrol and 10% ethanol), research octane number 95 or higher
Fuel Tank Capacity	47.0 L

■ Battery

Capacity	48Ah (5)/60Ah (20)

■ Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	1.5 L

■ Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam)		LED
Headlights (High Beam)		LED
Front Turn Signal Lights		LED
Position/Daytime Running Lights		LED
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)		LED
Brake/Tail-lights		LED
Taillights		LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights		21 W (Amber)
Back-Up Lights		16 W
Rear Fog Light*		LED
High-Mount Brake Light		LED
Rear Licence Plate Light		LED
Interior Lights		
	Map Lights	LED
	Ceiling Light	LED
	Vanity Mirror Lights	2 W
	Centre Pocket Light	LED
	Luggage Area Light	5 W
	Glove Box Light	LED
	Foot Lights	LED
	Ambient Lights	LED

* Not available on all models

■ Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
Charge Quantity	435 - 485 g*1 445 - 495 g*2

*1: Left-hand Drive Type
*2: Right-hand Drive Type

■ Brake/Clutch Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

■ Manual Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda MTF	
Capacity	Change	2.2 L

■ Engine Oil

Recommended	**Models with gasoline particulate filter**	
	Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20 ACEA C2/C3/C5 0W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30	
	Models without gasoline particulate filter	
	Honda Genuine Motor Oil 0W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30 API service SN or higher grade ACEA A5/B5 0W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30	
Capacity	Change	5.0 L
	Change including filter	5.4 L

Refer to the following page to determine whether your vehicle is equipped with a gasoline particulate filter.

➔ **Recommended Engine Oil** P. 611

■ Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity	6.65 L*1 (change including the remaining 0.75 L in the reserve tank) 6.63 L*2 (change including the remaining 0.75 L in the reserve tank)

*1: Left-hand Drive Type
*2: Right-hand Drive Type

■ Tyre

Regular	Size	265/30ZR19 93Y
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb
Compact Spare*	Size	T125/70R18 99M
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb
Wheel Size	Regular	19 x 9 1/2J
	Compact Spare*	18 x 4T

■ Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Solid disc
Parking	Electric Parking Brake

■ Vehicle Dimensions

Length		4,593 mm*1,2 4,595 mm*3 4,606 mm*4
Width		1,890 mm
Height		1,407 mm*1,2,4 1,405 mm*3
Wheelbase		2,734 mm*1,4 2,735 mm*2,3
Track	Front	1,624 mm*1,4 1,626 mm*2 1,625 mm*3
	Rear	1,623 mm*1,4 1,614 mm*2 1,615 mm*3

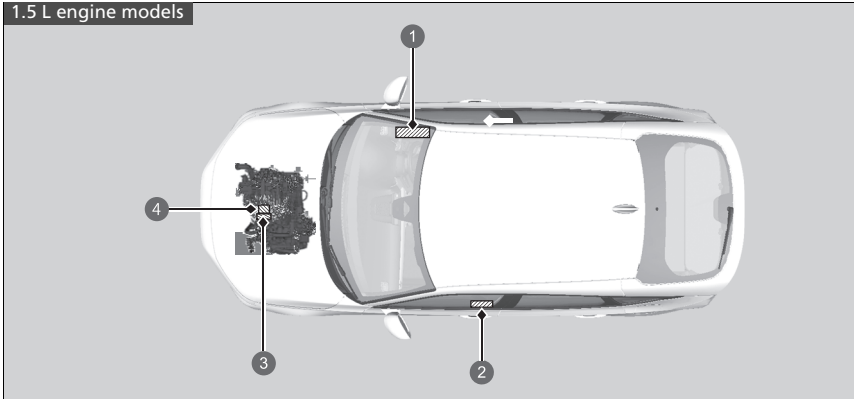
*1: Indonesian, Malaysian and Thai models
*2: Philippine and Vietnamese models
*3: Hong Kong and Macanese models
*4: Australian and New Zealand models

* Not available on all models

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle.
The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number and transmission number are shown as follows.

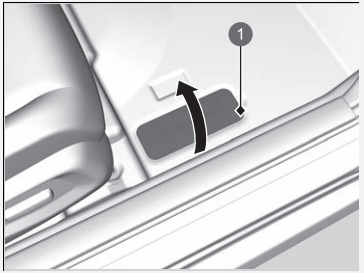
1.5 L engine models



1 Vehicle Identification Number*
2 Built Date Label*
3 Continuously Variable Transmission Number
4 Engine Number

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.

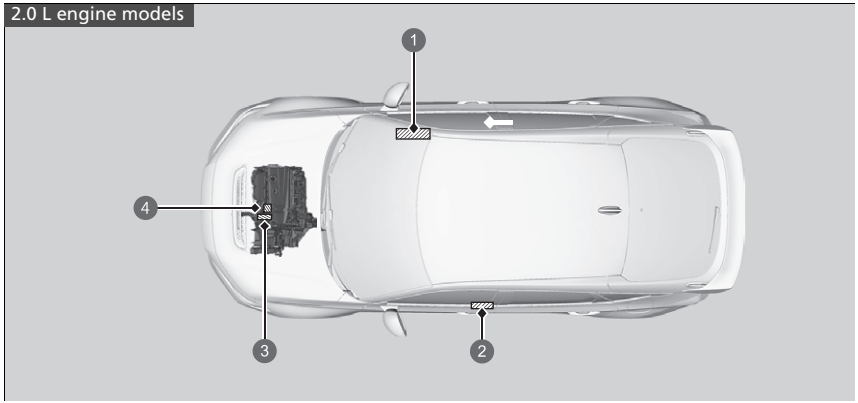


1 Cover

Australian models

The built date* is the calendar month and the year in which the body shell and power train sub-assemblies are conjoined and the vehicle is driven or moved from the production line.

* Not available on all models



1. Vehicle Identification Number*
2. Certification Label*/Vehicle Identification Number*/Engine Number*
3. Manual Transmission Number
4. Engine Number

* Not available on all models

The following products and systems on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

Indonesian models

Keyless Access System	
FOB	Card Key
The web-address of QR Code is: https://sertifikasi.postel.go.id/valid?section=4f94ec92c3a7c44073065befddad1b22S3r107620S3r07b0b99ff69237359f67408f220423ba	The web-address of QR Code is: :https://sertifikasi.postel.go.id/valid?section=0d153544317d014415cc5335b18ec1d5S3r95668S3rfc385fdbaf8ac136f37b6592461fdf5c

Philippine models

Keyless Access System		
BCM	FOB	Card Key
No.ESD-RCE-2023291	No.ESD-RCE-2022596C	
NTC Type Accepted	NTC Type Accepted	NTC Type Accepted No.: ESD-RCE-2023320

* Not available on all models

Thai models

Keyless Access System		
BCM	FOB	Card Key
เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้ ได้รับยกเว้น ไม่ต้องได้รับใบอนุญาตให้มี ใช้ซึ่งเครื่องวิทยุคมนาคม หรือตั้งสถานีวิทยุคมนาคมตามประกาศ กสทช. เรื่อง เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคม และสถานีวิทยุคมนาคมที่ได้รับยกเว้นไม่ต้องได้รับใบอนุญาต วิทยุคมนาคมตามพระราชบัญญัติวิทยุคมนาคม พ.ศ. 2498 กสทช. | โทรคมนาคม กำกับดูแลเพื่อประชาชน Call Center 1200 (โทรฟรี)	เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้ ได้รับยกเว้น ไม่ต้องได้รับใบอนุญาตให้มี ใช้ซึ่งเครื่องวิทยุคมนาคม หรือตั้งสถานีวิทยุคมนาคมตามประกาศ กสทช. เรื่อง เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคม และสถานีวิทยุคมนาคมที่ได้รับยกเว้นไม่ต้องได้รับใบอนุญาต วิทยุคมนาคมตามพระราชบัญญัติวิทยุคมนาคม พ.ศ. 2498 กสทช. | โทรคมนาคม กำกับดูแลเพื่อประชาชน Call Center 1200 (โทรฟรี)	เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคมนี้ ได้รับยกเว้น ไม่ต้องได้รับใบอนุญาตให้มี ใช้ซึ่งเครื่องวิทยุคมนาคม หรือตั้งสถานีวิทยุคมนาคมตามประกาศ กสทช. เรื่อง เครื่องวิทยุคมนาคม และสถานีวิทยุคมนาคมที่ได้รับยกเว้นไม่ต้องได้รับใบอนุญาต วิทยุคมนาคม ตามพระราชบัญญัติวิทยุคมนาคม พ.ศ. 2498 กสทช. | โทรคมนาคม กำกับดูแลเพื่อประชาชน Call Center 1200 (โทรฟรี)

Thai models

TCU
Inspection and certification of telecommunications equipment and devices This telecommunication equipment conforms to Technical Standard or Technical Requirement of National Broadcasting and Telecommunications Commission (NBTC). Safety Criteria and Measures for the Use of Radiocommunication Equipment on Human Health This radiocommunication equipment has the electromagnetic field strength in compliance with the Safety Standard for the Use of Radiocommunication Equipment on Human Health announced by the National Telecommunications Commission.

Vietnamese models

Keyless Access System		
BCM	FOB	Card Key
HONDAVN A00092011 ICT	HONDAVN A00092011 ICT	HONDAVN A00092011 ICT

TCU	Blind spot information system/Cross Traffic Monitor
HONDAVN A00092011 ICT	HONDAVN C0154150222AE01A3 ICT

Meter Open Source Licence

The software embedded in this product includes open source software. Refer to the following website for details regarding the open source software.
https://www.nippon-seiki.co.jp/business_ic_meter/

TCU Open Source Licence*

Free/Open Source Software Information
This product contains Free/Open Source Software (FOSS).
The licence information and/or the source code of such FOSS can be found at the following URL.
https://www.denso.com/global/en/opensource/tcu/honda/

* Not available on all models

Numbers

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode 407

A

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) 567
Indicator 119
Accelerator Position/Braking Pressure Meter 174
Accessories and Modifications 658
Accessory Power Socket 245
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow 473, 490
Indicator (Amber) 129
Indicator (White/Green) 129
Adding
Coolant 616, 618
Engine Oil 615
Washer 623
Additives, Engine Oil 610, 611
Adjustable Speed Limiter 431
Adjusting
Armrest 235
Front Head Restraints 233
Front Seats 226, 227
Headlights 455
Mirrors 224
Rear Seats 230
Steering Wheel 223
Temperature 136
Adjusting the Sound 279
Agile Handling Assist 447
Air Conditioning System (Climate Control System) 250
Changing the Mode 253
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows 254
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode 253
Sensors 257
Using Automatic Climate Control 250
Air Pressure 721, 723
Airbags 54
After a Collision 57
Airbag Care 69
Event Data Recorder 1
Front Airbags (SRS) 56
Indicator 68, 120
Knee Airbags 59
Sensors 54
Side Airbag 63
Side Curtain Airbag 66
AM/FM Radio 286
Ambient Meter 135
Android Auto 309
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 567
Indicator 119
Apple CarPlay 305
Armrest 235
Audio 145
Audio Remote Controls 265
Audio System 260
Adjusting the Sound 279
AM/FM Radio 286
Android Auto 309
App Shortcut Function 269
Apple CarPlay 305
Audio Remote Controls 265
Audio System Function 262
Audio/Information Screen 268
Basic Operation 262
Bluetooth® Audio 301
Clock Setup 276
DAB 291
Display Setup 280
Error Messages 352
FLAC/PCM/WAVE/MP4/AVI/MKV/ASF/WMV 297
General Information 353
How to Update 281
How to Update Wirelessly 284
How to Update with a USB Device 285
iPod 294
Limitations for Manual Operation 275
MP3/WMA/AAC 297
Radio Data System (RDS) 289
Selecting an Audio Source 274
Start Up 261
Status Area 274
System Updates 281
System Updates Settings 282
USB Flash Drives 297, 353
USB Ports 264
Wallpaper Setup 277

Wi-Fi Connection 304
Audio/Information Screen 268
Auto High-Beam 214
Indicator 122
Auto Idle Stop 414
Indicator (Green) 124
OFF Indicator 124
Suspend Indicator 125
System Indicator (Amber) 124
Automatic Brake Hold 561
Indicator 117, 561
Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function 225
Average Fuel Economy 143, 165
Average Speed 144, 168

B

Battery 642
Charging System Indicator 117, 704
If the Battery Is Dead 695
Maintenance (Checking the Battery) 642
Maintenance (Replacing) 645
Belts (Seat) 43
Beverage Holders 239
Blind Spot Information System 449
Bluetooth® Audio 301
Booster Seats (For Children) 108
Brake System 555
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 567
Automatic Brake Hold 561
Brake Assist System 568
Foot Brake 560
Indicator 116
Parking Brake 555
Brightness Control (Instrument Panel) 220
Bulb Replacement 625
Back-Up Lights 629
Brake Lights 626
Front Fog Lights 625
Front Turn Signal Lights 625
Headlights 625
High-Mount Brake Light 630
Luggage Area Light 631
Position/Daytime Running Lights 625
Rear Fog Light 630
Rear Licence Plate Light 630
Rear Turn Signal Light 626
Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights 625
Taillight 626, 629
Vanity Mirror Light 631
Bulb Specifications 720, 722

C

Carbon Monoxide Gas 110
Carrying Luggage 393, 395
Certification Label 724
Changing Bulbs 625
Charging System Indicator 117, 704
Child Restraint System 73
Booster Seats 108
Child Restraint System for Infants 76
Child Restraint System for Small Children 78
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt 101
Larger Children 107
Rear-facing Child Restraint System 76
Selecting a Child Restraint System 79
Using Tether 103
Child Safety 73
Childproof Door Locks 197
Cleaning the Exterior 654
Cleaning the Interior 651
Climate Control System 250
Changing the Mode 250
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows 254
Dust and Pollen Filter 649
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode 253
Sensors 257
Using Automatic Climate Control 250
Clock 138, 155, 182
CMBS (Collision Mitigation Braking System) 460
Coat Hooks 241
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) 460
Console Compartment 238
Continuously Variable Transmission 404
Creeping 404

Fluid 620
Kickdown 404
Operating the Shift Lever 26, 405, 406
Shift Lever Does Not Move 698
Shifting 405
Controls 181
Coolant (Engine) 616, 618
Adding to the Radiator 617
Adding to the Reserve Tank 616, 618
Low Temperature Indicator 120
Overheating 699
Creeping 404
Cross Traffic Monitor 577
Cup Holders 239
Current Mode for ACC with Low Speed Follow, the LKAS, and Traffic Jam Assist 138
Customize Display 153, 158, 178
Customized Features 313, 321

D

DAB 291
Daytime Running Lights 213
Dead Battery 695
Defaulting All the Settings 331
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows 254
Devices that Emit Radio Waves 726
Dimming
Headlights 208
Rearview Mirror 224
Dipstick (Engine Oil) 613
Display Audio System 261
Display Setup 280
Door Mirrors 225
Doors 183
Auto Door Locking 198
Auto Door Unlocking 198
Door Open Message 42
Keys 183
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside 195
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside 187
Drive Mode Switch 421
Driver Attention Monitor 147, 170
Driver Information Interface ... 140, 155, 160
Accelerator Position/Braking Pressure Meter 174
Audio 145
Clock 155
Customize Display 153, 158, 178
Driver Attention Monitor 147, 170
Fuel 142, 163
G-Meter 175
Information 154, 180
Maintenance 151, 176
Navigation 145, 168
No Content 154
Odometer 163
Phone 145
Range 142, 163
Safety Support 152, 177
Seat Belts 151, 176
Speed & Time 144, 166
Speed Alarm 146, 169
Stopwatch 156
Switching the Display 140, 161
Trip Meter 142, 163
Turbo Gauge 174
Warnings 180
Driving 391
Braking 555
Continuously Variable Transmission 404
Shifting Gear 405
Starting the Engine 397
Dust and Pollen Filter 649

E

ECON Mode Indicator 126
Elapsed Time 144, 168
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System 706
Indicator 121, 706
Emergency 715
Emergency Stop Signal 569
Engine
Coolant 616, 618
If the Battery Is Dead 695
Oil 610, 611
Starting 397
Switch Buzzer 205

Engine Coolant 616, 618
Adding to the Radiator 617
Adding to the Reserve Tank 616, 618
Low Temperature Indicator 120
Overheating 699
Engine Oil 610, 611
Adding 615
Checking 613
If the Engine oil pressure low Warning Appears 703
Low Oil Pressure Warning 703
Recommended Engine Oil 610, 611
Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning 703
Engine Start/Stop Button 205
EPS (Electric Power Steering) System 121, 706
Exhaust Hazard (Carbon Monoxide) 110
Exterior Care (Cleaning) 654
Exterior Mirrors 225

F

Features 259
Filter
Dust and Pollen 649
Flat Tyre 664, 679
Floor Mats 652
Fluids
Engine Coolant 616, 618
Transmission 620
Windscreen Washer 623
FM/AM Radio 286
Folding Down the Rear Seats 230
Foot Brake 560
Front Airbags (SRS) 56
Front Fog Light Indicator 122
Front Head Restraints 233
Front Seat Heaters 249
Front Seats 226
Adjusting 226, 227
Front Wide View Camera 553
Fuel 583
Average Fuel Economy 143, 165
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions 586
Gauge 135
Instant Fuel Economy 143, 165
Low Fuel Indicator 119
Range 143, 165
Recommendation 583
Refueling 583
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions 586
Fuel Fill Cap 27, 584
Fuel Fill Door 27, 584
Fuses 708
Inspecting and Changing 712
Locations 708, 710

G

Gauges 135
Gear Shift Lever Positions
Continuously Variable Transmission 405
Glass (care) 656
Glove Box 237
G-Meter 175

H

Hands-Free Telephone System 332
Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Recent calls 342
Automatic Transferring 343
Favourite Contacts 344
HFT Buttons 332
HFT Menus 336
HFT Status Display 334
Limitations for Manual Operation 335
Making a Call 348
Options During a Call 351
Phone Settings Screen 338
Phone Setup 339
Receiving a Call 350
Ringtone 343
Hatch 199
Light Bulb 631
Unable to Open 717
Hazard Warning Button 6, 7
Head Restraints 233
Headlights 208
Aiming 625
Daytime Running Lights 213
Dimming 208
High Beams 209

Operating 208
Position Lights..... 208
Heated Door Mirror..... 222
Heaters 249
HFT (Hands-Free Telephone)..... 332
High Beam Indicator..... 122
High Beams 209
Honda LogR..... 363
About Honda LogR 363
Auto Score Mode..... 367
Customize 384
Data Log Mode..... 373
Initial Settings 364
Performance Monitor..... 365
Honda Sensing 456
Honda TRK 664

I

Identification Numbers..... 724
Engine and Transmission..... 724
Vehicle Identification..... 724
Illumination Control 220
Knob 220
Immobilizer System..... 201
Indicator 123
Indicators..... 114
+R Mode 126
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) 119
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Interval ... 130
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow 129
Adjustable Speed Limiter 128
Auto High-Beam..... 122
Auto Idle Stop 124
Auto Idle Stop OFF 124
Auto Idle Stop Suspend 125
Auto Idle Stop System 124
Automatic Brake Hold 117
Automatic Brake Hold System..... 117
Charging System 117
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) (Amber)..... 131
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) (Grey)..... 131
COMFORT Mode 126
ECON Mode 126
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System 121
Front Fog Light 122
Gear Position 118
High Beam 122
Immobilizer System..... 123
INDIVIDUAL Mode 126
Intelligent Speed Limiter 128
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 130
Lights On..... 121
Low Fuel..... 119
Low Temperature 120
M (7-speed manual shift mode)/shift 118
Malfunction Indicator Lamp..... 117
NORMAL Mode 126
Parking Brake and Brake System..... 116
Rear Fog Light..... 122
Road Departure Mitigation (Amber)..... 131
Road Departure Mitigation (Grey)..... 131
Road Departure Mitigation Ready to Assist..... 131
Road Departure Mitigation System Steering Assist Auto OFF..... 132
Safety Support (Amber)..... 132
Safety Support (Green/Grey)..... 134
Seat Belt Reminder 119
Security System Alarm 123
Shift Down..... 119
Shift Position 118
Shift Up..... 119
SPORT Mode 126
Supplemental Restraint System..... 120
System Message..... 127
Transmission System..... 118
Turn Signal and Hazard Warning 121
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System 120
VSA OFF..... 121, 445
Information 154, 180
Instant Fuel Economy..... 143, 165
Instrument Panel 113
Brightness Control..... 220
Intelligent Speed Limiter 437
Interior Convenience Items..... 236
Interior Lights..... 236
Interior Rearview Mirror..... 224
iPhone 353

iPod 294, 353

J

Jack (Wheel Nut Wrench) 683
Jump Starting 695

K

Key 183
Number Tag 185
Rear Door Won't Open 197
Remote Transmitter 192
Types and Functions 183
Key Number Tag 185
Kickdown 404
Knee Airbags 59

L

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 508
Indicator (Amber) 130
Indicator (White/Green) 130
Lead Car Departure Notification System 549
Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/ Android Auto 361
Lights 208, 625
Bulb Replacement 625
Daytime Running Lights 213
Headlights 208
High Beam Indicator 122
High Beams 209
Interior 236
Light Switches 208
Lights On Indicator 121
Position Lights 208
Limited Slip Differential (LSD) 448
Load Limits 395
Locking/Unlocking 183
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking 198
Childproof Door Locks 197
From Inside 195
From Outside 187
Keys 183
Using a Key 193
Low Battery Charge 704
Low Fuel Indicator 119
Lower Anchorages 95
Lubricant Specifications Chart 721, 723
Luggage (Load Limit) 395
Luggage Area Cover 243
Luggage Hook 241

M

Maintenance 151, 176, 589
Battery 642
Cleaning 651
Coolant 616, 618
Oil 613
Precautions 590
Radiator 617
Remote Transmitter 645
Replacing Light Bulbs 625
Safety 591
Schedule 602
Transmission Fluid 620
Tyres 636
Under the Bonnet 606
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 117, 704
Maximum Permissible Weight 395
Meters, Gauges 135
Mirrors 224
Adjusting 224
Door 225
Exterior 225
Interior Rearview 224
Modifications (and Accessories) 658
MP3/WMA/AAC 297
Multi-View Rear Camera 581

N

Navigation 145, 168
No Content 154
Numbers (Identification) 724

O

Odometer 136, 165
Oil (Engine) 610, 611
Adding 615
Checking 613

Engine Oil Pressure Low Warning 703
Oil Monitor System 593
Recommended Engine Oil 610, 611
Viscosity 610, 611
Open Source Licences 356
Opening
Hatch 717
Opening/Closing
Bonnet 608
Power Windows 203
Other Interior Convenience Items 245
Outside Temperature 136
Overheating 699

P

Paddle Shifters
(7-Speed Manual Shift Mode) 407, 409
Parking Brake 555
Parking Brake and Brake System
Indicator 116
Parking Sensor System 572
Passing Indicators 208
Petrol 27, 583
Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions 586
Gauge 135
Information 583
Instant Fuel Economy 165
Low Fuel Indicator 119
Refueling 583
Phone 145
Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio 301
Pop-up Hood System 70
Pop-up Hood System Care 72
Position Lights 208
Precautions While Driving 401
Rain 403
Pregnant Women 51
Puncture (Tyre) 664, 679

R

Radiator 617
Radio (AM/FM) 286
Radio Data System (RDS) 289
Range 143, 165
RDS (Radio Data System) 289
Rear Demister 222
Rear Seat Reminder 231
Rear Seats (Folding Down) 230
Rear Wiper/Washer 219
Rearview Mirror 224
Refueling 389, 583
Fuel Gauge 135
Low Fuel Indicator 119
Petrol 583, 720, 722
Regulations 726
Remote Transmitter 192
Replacement
Battery 645
Bulbs 625
Fuses 708, 710
Tyres 679
Wiper Blade Rubber 633
Resetting a Trip Meter 143, 165
Rev Indicators 138
Rev Match System 411
Road Departure Mitigation 530
On and Off 537

S

Safe Driving 37
Safety Check 42
Safety Labels 111
Safety Message 0
Safety Support 152, 177
Indicator (Amber) 132
Indicator (Green/Grey) 134
Seat Belts 43, 151, 176
Adjusting the Shoulder Anchorage 50
Checking 52
Fastening 48
Installing a Child Restraint System with a
Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt 101
Pregnant Women 51
Reminder 45
Warning Indicator 45, 119
Seats 226
Adjusting 226
Front Seat Heaters 249
Front Seats 226
Rear Seat Reminder 231

Rear Seats 230
Security System 201
Immobilizer System Indicator 123
Security System Alarm Indicator 123
Select Lever 405
Operation 405
Releasing 698
Won't Move 698
Selecting a Child Restraint System 79
Setting the Clock 182
Shift Lever 405
Shift Position Indicator 406
Shifting (Transmission) 405
Shoulder Anchorage 50
Side Airbags 63
Side Curtain Airbag 66
Spark Plugs 720, 722
Specifications 720
Specified Fuel 583
Speed Alarm 146, 169
Speed Limiter, Adjustable 431
Speed Limiter, Intelligent 437
Speedometer 135
SRS Airbags/sn(Airbags) 56
Start/Stop Button 205
Starting the Engine 397
Does Not Start 689
Engine Switch Buzzer 205
If the Battery Is Dead 695
Steering Wheel 223
Adjusting 223
Stopping 570
Stopwatch 156
Storage Items 237
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) 56
Switches
(Around the Steering Wheel) 6, 8, 205
Switching the Display 140, 161
System Message Indicator 127
System Updates 281

T

Tachometer 135
Temperature
Low Temperature Indicator 120
Outside Temperature Display 136
Temperature Gauge 136
Temperature Sensor 136, 257
Temporary Repair Kit (TRK) 664
Tie-down Anchorages 242
Time (Setting) 182
Tools 662
Towing a Trailer 396
Towing Your Vehicle
Emergency 715
Traffic Sign Recognition System 137, 543
Transmission 405
7-Speed Manual Shift Mode 407
Continuously Variable Transmission 405
Fluid 620
Number 724
Shift Position Indicator 118, 406
Trip Meter 143, 165
TRK (Temporary Repair Kit) 664
Troubleshooting 661
Blown Fuse 708, 710
Brake Pedal Vibrates 32
Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door 34
Emergency Towing 715
Engine Won't Start 689
Noise When Braking 34
Overheating 699
Puncture/Flat Tyre 679
Rear Door Won't Open 33
Shift Lever Won't Move 698
Warning Indicators 114
Turbo Engine Vehicle 587
Turbo Gauge 174
Turn signals
Indicators (Instrument Panel) 121
Tyres 636
Air Pressure 721, 723
Checking and Maintaining 636
Inspection 636
Puncture (Flat Tyre) 679
Rotation 639
Temporary Repair Kit (TRK) 664
Tyre Chains 640
Wear Indicators 637
Winter 640

U

Unlocking the Doors 187
Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside 195
USB Flash Drives 297, 353
USB Ports 264

V

Vanity Mirrors 11
Vehicle Identification Numbers 724
Vehicle Information 139
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) 444
  OFF Indicator 121
  Off Switch 445
  System Indicator 120
Viscosity (Oil) 610, 611, 721, 723
VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist) 444

W

Wallpaper 277
Warning Indicator On/Blinking 703
Warning Labels 111
Warnings 180
Watts 720, 722
Wear Indicators (Tyre) 637
Wheel Nut Wrench (Jack Handle) 684
Wi-Fi Connection 304
Window Washers 217
  Adding/Refilling Fluid 623
  Switch 217
Windows (Opening and Closing) 203
Windscreen 217
  Cleaning 656
  Defrosting/Defogging 254
  Washer Fluid 623
  Wiper Blades 633
  Wipers and Washers 217
Winter Tyres 640
  Tyre Chains 640
Wipers and Washers 217
  Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades 633
Wireless Charger 246
WMA 297
Worn Tyres 636